NEW FIRST LATIN READER

HENDERSON AND LITTLE

3 1761 03937 2800

THE COPP, CLARK CO. LIMITED TORONTO CANADIAN TEXT BOOKS

Presented to the
LIBRARY *of the*
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
by

ESTATE OF THE LATE
PROFESSOR J.R.
COCKBURN

Cecilia [illegible]

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/newfirstlatinrea00henduoft

NEW

FIRST LATIN READER

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

PRINCIPAL, COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, ST. CATHARINES

AND

R. A. LITTLE, B.A.

CLASSICAL MASTER, COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, LONDON

TORONTO

THE COPP, CLARK, COMPANY, LIMITED

PA
2095
H45

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand nine hundred and six, by The Copp, Clark Company, Limited, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

LIBRARY
FEB - 9 1966
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

1048021

PREFACE

The prescription of work for Examination in Latin for Pass Matriculation for the years 1907, 1908, 1909, and for Junior Teachers' Certificates for the year 1907, and presumably for the years 1908-1909, is defined by the Calendar of 1906-1907 of the University of Toronto as follows :—

Translation at sight of passages of average difficulty from Caesar, upon which special stress will be laid.

Translation from a prescribed portion of Vergil's Aeneid, with questions thereon.

Questions on Latin accidence.

Translation into Latin of English sentences to illustrate the common rules of Latin syntax, upon which special stress will be laid. The vocabulary will be taken from the prescribed portion of Caesar.

Examination upon a short prescribed portion of Caesar, to test the candidate's knowledge of Latin syntax and his power of idiomatic translation, etc.

The following are the texts prescribed :—
Caesar, Bellum Gallicum, Book IV., chaps. 20-38, and Book V., chaps. 1-23 ; Vergil, Aeneid, Book II., vv. 1-505.

Two papers will be set : (1) Translation at sight, Vergil and accidence. (2) Translation into Latin, syntax, and idiomatic translation from prescribed Caesar, etc.

An examination of the present book will show that these requirements have been kept steadily in view.

This book contains :—

(1) Full introduction to the reading of Caesar.

(2) Text of Caesar's Bellum Gallicum prescribed, with vocabulary of the more difficult and unusual words at the bottom of each page.

(3) Notes explaining fully every difficulty in the text with references to the New First Latin Book.

(4) Two sets of Exercises on the prescribed Caesar.

(5) Introduction to Vergil.

(6) Text of Vergil, Aeneid, Book II. The whole of Aeneid, Book II., has been given to meet the needs of those reading for Honor Matriculation and for Senior Teachers' Certificates.

(7) Full notes on the whole of Vergil, Aeneid, Book II.

(8) Upwards of fifty selected passages from Bellum Gallicum, I-VI., representing the most interesting and important parts of this great work, and also giving a running commentary of the whole.

(9) Complete Vocabulary, in the preparation of which special care has been taken.

The authors take this opportunity of expressing their gratitude to the many fellow-teachers who have so kindly aided them with hints and suggestions in the preparation of the book.

JOHN HENDERSON.
R. A. LITTLE.

August 15th, 1906.

TO

REV. WILLIAM ROBERTSON, A.M.

"justissimus unus
qui fuit et servantissimus aequi."

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATIONS



Caius Julius Caesar


4 Long West 2 0 Longitude 2 East from 4 Greenwich 6 8 10
Map No. 1.
GAUL
IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR.
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.
10 20 40 60 80 100
54
52
50
MONA I.
BRITANNIA
Cenimagni
Trinobantes
Cassi
Tamesis Fl.
Ancalites
Segontiaci
Bibroci
Cantium
Deal
(Dover)
GERMANIA
Batavi
Rhenus Fl.
Insula Batavorum
Vacalus
Mosa Fl.
Usipetes
Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Suevi
Cherusci
Bacenis
Silva
Menapii
Eburones
Aduatuca
Rhenus Fl.
IV. 17
Morini
Geidumni
Centrones
Grudii
Levaci
Scaldis Fl.
Pleumoxii
Portus Itius
Atrebates
Nervii
Aduatuci
Oppidum Aduatucorum
Mosa
II. 18
Nemetocenna
Sabis Fl.
Segni
Condrusi
Germani
Arduenna Silva
Paemani
Cisrhenani
Caeroesi
Treveri
Mosella Fl.
IV. 12
Ambiani
Samara Fl.
Samarobriva
Veromandui
Bibrax
BELGAE
Caleti
Bratuspantium
Bellovaci
Axona Fl.
II. 10
Suessiones
Noviodunum
Remi
Durocortorum
Ambivariti
Mediomatrici
Moenus Fl.
Vangiones
Nemetes
Sedusii
Unelli
Lexovii
Veliocasses
Isara Fl. (Oise)
Matrona
Sequana
Tricasses
MONS


ARMORICA
Curiosolitae
Diablintres
Aulerci
Veneti
Condate
Redones
Namnetes
Andes
(Cenomani)
Carnutes
Senones
Vellaunodunum
Genabum
Agedicum
Melodunum
Tricasses
Lingones
Alesia
Mandubii
Leuci
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Boii
Rauraci
Venetus
Dubis Fl.
Vesontio
Liger Fl.
Turones
Noviodunum
Avaricum
CELTAE
SIVE
GALLI
Bituriges
Lemovices
Pictones
Limonum
Vigena Fl.
Boii
Gorgobina
Decetia
Elaver Fl.
Noviodunum
Aulerci
Bibracte
Cabillonum
Arar Fl.
Matisco
Sequani
Jura M.
Lemanus L.
Helvetii
Seduni
Veragri
Nantuates
Octodurus
Genava
Lepontii
Salassi
Ambarri
Allobroges
Rhodanus
Vienna
OCEANUS
ATLANTICUS
Santones
Carantonus Fl.
Lemovices
Gergovia
Vellavii
Arverni
Petrocorii
Duronius Fl.
Nitiobriges
Garumna
Cadurci
(Eleutheri)
Uxellodunum
Gabali
Helvii
Ruteni
Cavari
Isara (Isere)
Vocontii
Ceutrones
ALPES
Graioceli
Ocelum
Caturiges
GALLIA CITERIOR
AQUITANI
Vocates
Cocosates
Tarusates
Sontiates
Ptianii
Elusates
Tarbelli
Atur Fl.
Sibuzates
Gates
Ausci
Bigerriones
Garumni
Tarnis Fl.
Tolosa
(Tectosages)
Carcasso
Narbo Martius
Atax Fl.
Illiberis
Arecomici
CEVENNA MONS
PROVINCIA
Druentia Fl.
Massilia
MARE INTERNUM
Cantabri
PYRENAEI M.
HISPANIA

INTRODUCTION

I

The Life of Caius Julius Caesar

"*The noblest man that ever lived in the tide of times.*"—SHAKESPEARE

Birth

Caius Julius Caesar[1] was born July 12th, 100 B.C.[2] He was thus six years younger than Cicero, the orator, and than Pompey, his rival in politics and war. His family was not only one of the oldest but also one of the most respected of the patrician families of Rome. On his father's side, it traced its origin to Iülus, son of Aeneas, the founder of the Roman line, and on his mother's side, it claimed, as an ancestor, Ancus Martius, one of the early kings.

His family

Caesar father

Little is known of Caesar's father except that he held at one time the office of *praetor*, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, 84 B.C. To Aurelia, his mother, a woman of primitive frugality in the management of her household, but characterized by a lofty ambition and a firm belief in the noble destiny of her son, was entrusted the direction of his education. What the Gracchi owed to their mother Cornelia, Caesar owed to Aurelia. Mother and son showed mutual reverence, and undoubtedly Caesar's future life was largely affected by his mother's influence.

Caesar's mother

---

[1] A Roman citizen had regularly *three* names: the *praenomen* (*Caius*) answering to our Christian name, marking the individual: the *nomen* (*Julius*), designating the clan or *gens*: *cognomen* (*Caesar*) telling the family. Sometimes another *cognomen* was added for honorary distinction as *Africanus* to Publius Cornelius Scipio.

[2] Mommsen argues that Caesar was born 102 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the *lex annalis* which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the office of *quaestor* before he was 31, of *aedile* before 37, of *praetor* before 40, of *consul* before 43. By referring to the chronology of Caesar's life the plausibility of the argument appears. But (1) the law was often broken as it had been in the case of Pompey; (2) Suetonius says that Caesar was 16 when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius, and Appian say that Caesar was 54 when he was assassinated.

Related to Marius

His aunt Julia was married to Caius Marius, who saved Italy in the war against the Cimbri and Teutones, and was the sturdy supporter of the popular party against the narrow senatorial faction led by Cornelius Sulla. Though aristocratic by birth, Caesar was no doubt led through the influence of Marius to side with the popular party.

Flamen Dialis

At the age of 14, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*flamen Dialis*), and by virtue of this office he became a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. In 83 B.C., at the age of 17, he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sulla. Soon afterwards Sulla returned from Asia and proscribed Marius and all his adherents. As the nephew of Marius and the husband of Cornelia, Caesar was especially an object of displeasure. He was ordered to divorce Cornelia, but refused to obey. Accordingly a price was set upon his life, and it was only through the earnest intercession of his friends that he was pardoned.

Marries Cornelia

Serves his first campaign 80–78 B.C.

In consequence of having thwarted the will of the imperious Sulla, Caesar found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to Asia, where he served with distinction at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sulla's death, 78 B.C., he returned to Rome to resume his studies.

Goes to Rhodes 76–75 B.C.

Oratory and military skill were in Rome the two great avenues to success. To improve his skill in oratory, Caesar went to Rhodes, 76 B.C., to study rhetoric and oratory under Apollonius Molon, the most celebrated teacher of that time. On the way thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates and Caesar was detained till a heavy ransom was paid. During his detention he is said to have joined these marauders in their sports and to have told them half-jestingly that he would, when liberated, have them hanged. This threat he made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molon for two years.

Quaestor 68 B.C.

Caesar began his political career in 68 B.C., by gaining the *quaestorship*, and by virtue of this office he was connected with the public treasury and entitled to a seat in the senate.

In 65 B.C., he was elected to the office of *curule aedile*, which had charge of public buildings and the oversight of public festivals and games. While holding this office he increased his popularity and also his debts by the costly gladiatorial shows which he gave. He also more than ever identified himself with the popular party by his devotion to the memory of Marius. He caused the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sulla, to be replaced.

Curule aedile 65 B.C.

In 63 B.C., a year memorable for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar was elected *pontifex maximus* against the strong opposition of the *optimates*. This office, though not a civil office, conferred great power and dignity on Caesar. In 62 B.C., he was elected *praetor*, an office chiefly of a judicial nature. On resigning this office, he went to Spain, as *propraetor*, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts.

Pontifex maximus 63 B.C.

Praetor

On his return from Spain, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the *First Triumvirate*. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic class; Caesar, of the democratic; while Crassus represented the monied interests.

First Triumvirate 60 B.C.

In 59 B.C., Caesar became consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During this year, Caesar passed an Agrarian law for the division of lands among the poor of Italy. The object of the bill was to restore to the peasant freeholders lands of which they had been dispossessed by the rich. He also caused to be passed a body of laws called *Leges Juliae*, the object of which was to guard the rights of individuals, to secure justice in the courts, to improve public and private morality, and to obtain generally good government for the state. Before laying down his consulship, he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for five years with pro-consular powers over the two Gauls and over Illyricum.

Consul

Laws passed

Goes to Gaul

II

The Conquest of Gaul

The Gauls

The Gauls were a Celtic race, of the same stock as the Welsh, the Erse or Celts of Ireland, and the Highlanders of Scotland. When the Romans became acquainted with them, they were in a primitive state of civilization. They are described as a tall, blue-eyed, fair-haired race, nomadic in their habits, pasturing their flocks and herds, and paying little heed to agriculture. They dwelt in open villages or collections of primitive huts without fortifications. The clan system prevailed amongst them; at the head of each clan was the chief, and they never got beyond this form of government. According to Mommsen, they had shaken all states but founded none. Though individually a match for the Romans in physical strength and personal courage, they had not the qualities to endure a campaign or to make any permanent use of their conquests. According to Cato, the Elder, they cared for little else than for wit and war. The influence of the chief depended on his fame as a warrior or his skill as an orator. They lived by plundering each other or their common enemies. They excelled, however, in horsemanship, and were active warriors, but were better fitted for aggressive than for defensive war.

Danger from the Gauls

The Romans had been defeated at the Alia in 390 B.C., and the city had been plundered and burned by this race. Again, in the days of Marius, it was saved only by the skill of that general at Vercellae, 101 B.C.

Rome had succeeded in gaining dominion over all the surrrounding nations with one exception. She had successively got into her power Sicily, Sardinia, Spain, Africa, Greece, Asia Minor, Syria, Egypt. The only nation around the Mediterranean not under her power was Gaul.

Caesar's Province

Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina and Illyricum were the three provinces given to Caesar by the Senate. Gallia Cisalpina comprised that part of *Italy north of the Rubicon and the Macra;* Illyricum included a part of *Croatia*, the whole of *Dalmatia*, *Bosnia*, and part of *Albania*; Gallia

Roman Provincia

Transalpina included the whole of *France*, *Belgium*, and

parts of *Holland, Switzerland* and *Germany.* In the southern part was the *Provincia* around the southern part of the Rhone. This was acquired by the Romans in 121 B.C., and Narbo Martius (now *Narbonne*) was made the capital of the *Provincia,* a word which still survives in the word *Provence.* The rest of Gallia Transalpina was divided into three parts. Aquitania included the country *between the Pyrenees and the Garonne;* Gallia Celtica the land *between the Garonne and the Seine;* all *between the Seine and Marne* on the south *and the Rhine* on the north was called Gallia Belgica. The Aquitani were akin to the *Basques;* the rest of Gaul outside the *Provincia* was inhabited by people of Celtic origin, comprising about sixty tribes, which were always at war with each other or their common enemies.

Divisions of Gaul

Just before the days of Caesar two factions existed in the country, one headed by the Haedui, who were in league with the Romans, and the other headed by the Arverni and the Sequani. The Haedui, proud of the alliance with Rome, had been lording it over the others, and as a counterbalance for the support of the Romans the Arverni and the Sequani had invited the aid of the neighboring Germans.

Parties in Gaul

The immediate cause of Caesar's departure was the news that reached Rome that the *Helvetii* were setting out from Switzerland on an expedition into Gaul, just as the Cimbri had done about fifty years before. They had left their homes, burned their towns and villages, passed through the territories of the Sequani and were plundering those of the Haedui. Their presence was a standing menace to the Roman *Provincia.* Caesar left Rome with five legions and by rapid marches soon overtook the enemy and defeated them at Bibracte (now *Autun*).

Cause of Caesar's departure

First Campaign 58 B.C. B. I.

Defeat of the Helvetii

Not content with protecting the Province against its invaders, Caesar now accepted the invitation of the Haedui to drive out of Gaul the Germans under Ariovistus. This leader had made overtures to Caesar to divide Gaul between them, but the proposal was rejected by Caesar. Ariovistus was defeated near the modern town of *Bâsle,* and the Romans by their victory extended their territory as far as the Treviri.

Ariovistus

Defeat of Ariovistus

Second Campaign 57 B.C. B. II.

The second year in Gaul was occupied with a war against the Belgae. Alarmed at the encroachments of the Romans, the tribes between the Seine and the Rhine had formed a league against Caesar. Only the Remi were favorable to him. After reducing the weaker tribes, Caesar marched against the Nervii, one of the most warlike of the Gallic tribes, and fought a desperate battle, which was won only by his skill and personal daring. So signal was this victory that a public thanksgiving of fifteen days, an unprecedented honor, was granted to Caesar. By this victory all Eastern Gaul, from the Mediterranean to the English Channel, was now in the hands of the Romans.

Defeat of the Nervii

Third Campaign 56 B.C. B. III.

During the spring of the third year in Gaul, Caesar saw clearly that his work there could not be completed at the expiration of the five years, which would end in December, 54 B.C. He did not wish to run the risk of having his policy reversed by the Senate as Pompey's had been in the war against Mithridates, nor did he desire to leave his veterans unprovided for, or to have the laws passed in his consulship ignored or repealed. There were now signs of the coming struggle. Cicero had already assailed the acts of the triumvirs and dissensions were arising between Pompey and Crassus. The influence of Pompey and the optimates was gradually being eclipsed by the brilliant successes of Caesar in Gaul. At Luca, Caesar held a conference with Pompey and Crassus, at which it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should be consuls for the year 55 B.C., that Pompey should receive the command of the two Spains (*Hispania citerior et ulterior*) for five years at the end of 53 B.C., and Crassus the government of Syria for the same period, and that Caesar should remain in Gaul till December 31, 49 B.C., and that he should stand for the consulship of the following year 48 B.C. Caesar would thus lay down his consulship a year before Crassus or Pompey.

Conference at Luca

Conquest of the Veneti

In the third campaign Caesar completed the conquest of Gaul. He defeated the Veneti, a daring, sea-faring people of north-western Gaul. He then turned his army against the Morini and Menapii, two tribes in the neighborhood of *Calais.* Though the Gauls had been defeated, still the

spirit of the nation was not broken, and only lacked an opportunity to rise against the conquerors.

Fourth Campaign 55 B.C. B. IV.

The news on the German frontier called out Caesar earlier than usual during the spring of this year. The Usipetes and Tencteri, two German tribes, had been driven out of their territories by the Suevi, and had crossed the Rhine with the intention of settling in Eastern Gaul. Caesar defeated them with great slaughter after detaining the ambassadors who had come to sue for peace. After this victory, Caesar decided to cross the Rhine to strike terror into the hearts of the inhabitants. In ten days he built a bridge in the neighborhood of *Cologne*, and, crossing the river, remained about eighteen days on the eastern side. He then crossed back, broke down the bridge, and returned to Gaul. He then resolved to cross the channel and invade Britain. With two legions (the *seventh* and the *tenth*), and eighty ships he set out from Port Itius (probably *Boulogne*), and landed, probably, at *Deal*. Beyond securing the submission of a few British tribes in the southern part of the Island, the invasion effected nothing, for the season was too far advanced to permit a regular campaign. A public thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed, not without opposition, for Cato proposed that Caesar should be given up to the Germans in consequence of his treacherous acts towards the ambassadors of the Usipetes and the Tencteri.

Crosses the Rhine

First Invasion of Britain 55 B.C.

Fifth Campaign. Second Invasion of Britain 54 B.C. B. V.

The expedition against Britain had flattered the vanity of the Romans. The island was said to abound with rich mines, and the sea with pearls. Here, therefore, was a rich field for Roman enterprise. Accordingly he wished to complete the conquest he had begun in the previous summer. Again he started from *Port Itius* with five legions and landed at the same place as in the previous year. The Britons had put in supreme command Cassivellaunus, chief of the Trinobantes, whose state lay north of the *Thames*. Caesar advanced north, crossed the *Thames*, probably above *London*, defeated the *Britons*, and advanced as far as *St. Albans*. After taking hostages and determining the amount of tribute Britain should pay yearly, Caesar returned to the Continent. Caesar's absence from Gaul had been attended with danger to the Roman cause, for a rebellion was maturing in Gaul. This

Caesar helped to foster by arranging his legions at considerable distances from each other—a policy he was compelled to pursue in consequence of the scarcity of corn in Gaul. Accordingly the Eburones, a Gallic tribe, attacked the camp of Sabinus and Cotta and cut to pieces their command. They next besieged Quintus Cicero, the brother of the orator, who was stationed among the Nervii. Cicero was relieved by the timely aid of Caesar.

Uprising in Gaul

Sixt. Campaign 53 B.C. B. VI.

The defeat of Sabinus and Cotta had inspired the nation of Gaul to make an effort to regain its independence. Caesar strengthened his army by levying two new legions in Cisalpine Gaul and receiving another from Pompey, who was now at Rome. He defeated in turn several tribes in North-Eastern Gaul. As the chief of these tribes, the Treviri, had been aided by the Germans, Caesar determined to cross the Rhine again. After receiving the submission of the Ubii, he devastated the lands of the Suevi, and, on his return to Gaul, he laid waste the lands of the Eburones.

A second time across the Rhine

Seventh Campaign 52 B.C. B. VII.

This year was marked by a general uprising of Gaul. Even the Haedui, the former friends of the Romans, joined in the general revolt. At the head of the insurgents was Vercingetorix, the chief of the Arverni, and by far the best general Caesar had ever met in his Gallic campaign. Caesar's success in this, as in all his campaigns, was due to the unexampled rapidity of his movements. With incredible celerity he concentrated his forces and attacked the enemy before they were aware of his presence. After capturing several towns, he attacked Vercingetorix, who had strongly fortified himself at Gergovia (near *Clermont*). Caesar was unsuccessful in his attempt to take this town. Vercingetorix then took up his position at Alesia, but Caesar finally compelled its surrender, and soon after the Arverni and Haedui surrendered.

Eighth Campaign 57 B.C. B. VIII.

The last campaign was spent by Caesar in reducing several of the minor states, and in employing himself with the details of the pacification of Gaul. His policy towards the Gauls was conciliatory, and after so many years of fighting, Caesar left the province of Gaul loyal to the Roman cause, and patiently submissive to the Roman yoke.

III

Life of Caesar after the Conquest of Gaul

While these stirring events were occurring in Gaul, equally stirring events were taking place at Rome. The conference at Luca was a hollow truce, and it was evident that a rupture was imminent. The first break in the link that bound the triumvirate together was the death of Julia, the daughter of Caesar and wife of Pompey. Another link was broken by the death of Crassus who was slain at Carrhae in an expedition against the Parthians. By his removal the state was now at the mercy of Caesar and Pompey. While Caesar, however, was actively reducing the province of Gaul and gaining fresh laurels with every conquest, Pompey, instead of setting out to his province of Spain, remained inactive in the city resting on the honors he had gained in the Mithridatic war.

Death of Julia 54 B.C.

Death of Crassus 53 B.C.

The state of affairs at Rome showed clearly the need of an absolute ruler to put down the lawlessness that prevailed. During the years 54 B.C. and 53 B.C., bloody brawls had been of frequent occurrence between the two old foes Clodius and Milo and their hired gladiators. Finally Clodius was slain. During the funeral of Clodius, the senate-house was burned, and in consequence of the constant riots of the two factions the Senate met and appointed Pompey sole consul. Milo was tried and sent to Massilia.

Need of a strong ruler

Pompey now became the sturdy supporter of the aristocratic party. After the death of Julia he married Cornelia, daughter of Metellus Scipio, whom he had as his colleague in the consulship in the following August. Pompey now brought forward an old law that no one could become consul while absent from Rome. This would have compelled Caesar to resign his command at the end of 49 B.C. At the same time Pompey would, by virtue of the agreement made at the conference of Luca, still be at the head of the army, since his term of office would not expire till a year after the expiration of the time of Caesar's command. Marcellus, the consul, also proposed that Caesar should give up his military power since all Gaul had been subdued. Cato,

Breaks with Pompey

the uncompromising foe of Caesar, also declared that in case Caesar should appear in Rome, he would bring him up for trial for his acts in Gaul. The quarrel was evidently begun by the Senate and not by Caesar. It would have been in vain for Caesar to give up his command and retire into private life while Pompey was invested with the imperium and at the head of his legions at Rome. The tribune Curio laid before the Senate the proposal of Caesar, that the latter would disband his legions if Pompey would do the same. The proposal was made on January 1st, 49 B.C., when the new consuls, L. Cornelius Lentulus, and C. Claudius Marcellus, took office. With difficulty Marc Antony (afterwards the triumvir), and L. Cassius Longinus, at that time tribunes of the *plebs*, obtained a hearing for the proposal of Caesar. At length, after a stormy debate, the motion was passed "that Caesar should disband his soldiers by a certain day, and if he did not, he should be declared a public enemy." This meant a declaration of war. Five days after the consuls were invested with dictatorial power, and Pompey was appointed to carry on the war in case Caesar did not obey.

Final order of the Senate

Caesar was at Ravenna when the news of the action of the Senate reached him. He was not long in maturing his plans. At midnight he left Ravenna with one legion and crossed the Rubicon, a small stream that divided his province from Italy proper. To do so without the permission of the Senate was equivalent to a declaration of war. Town after town succumbed to him, and by the beginning of February he had Umbria and Picenum at his feet. To all opponents he granted amnesty. In this respect the conduct of Caesar in carrying on the war against his fellow-citizens was in striking contrast with his policy in his Gallic campaign. By the middle of February he was reinforced by two other legions from Gaul.

Caesar crosses the Rubicon

Pompey and the chiefs of the aristocracy, on hearing the action of Caesar, were thrown into consternation, and abruptly left Rome. Pompey hastened to Brundusium and afterwards crossed over to Epirus. Caesar with his troops, which now numbered six legions, followed Pompey to Brundusium, but lack of ships prevented his further advance at that time.

Pompey flees to Greece

He had now Gaul and Italy on his side, and he decided to go over to Spain, which soon fell under his power. Most of the soldiers of Pompey's army in Spain enlisted under Caesar's banners.

Having acquired possession of Spain, Gaul, and Italy, Caesar embarked in the beginning of 48 B.C. at Brundusium, and finally the two armies met at Pharsalia when Caesar, in spite of disparity in numbers, gained a signal victory. Pompey fled to Lesbos, to Cyprus, and finally to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered as he was being conveyed to the shore. Caesar pursued Pompey to Alexandria. A dispute at that time for the throne of Egypt arose between Ptolemy and his sister Cleopatra. Caesar sided with Cleopatra and established her on the throne.

Defeat of Pompey at Pharsalia 48 B.C.

Death of Pompey

After settling the affairs of Egypt, he marched northward against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates, whom he defeated at Zela. His laconic despatch to the Roman Senate—*veni, vidi, vici*—is well known. By the battle of Thapsus in Africa, 46 B.C., he crushed the only opposition left of Pompey's party in that country.

Victory at Zela

On his return to Rome he was made dictator for ten years. He then celebrated his four triumphs—over Gaul, Egypt, Pontus and Numidia—purposely avoiding all reference to the civil wars. His dictatorship was marked by many reforms.

Returns to Rome

In Spain an insurrection broke out, which, however, he crushed by the decisive battle at Munda, 45 B.C. On his return he was granted a triumph. The Senate at once began to shower honors on him. He was styled Father of his Country (*pater patriae*), statues of him were erected in the temples, his effigy was placed on coins, the month *Quinctilis* was changed to *Julius*. By his office of Imperator for life he was the supreme ruler of the Roman world. He was *consul* for ten years, *dictator* and *praefectus morum* for life and practically all the offices of the state were centred in him.

Honors granted to Caesar

It may be said that he used his power mercifully. No proscriptions followed his assumption of absolute power. His mind was bent on schemes for the benefit of the Roman

Plans of Caesar

world. He proposed to codify the Roman laws, to establish public libraries, to enlarge the harbor of Ostia, drain the Pomptine marshes, and cut a canal through the Isthmus of Corinth.

No doubt Caesar wished to perpetuate his power in his own family. Having no legitimate children, he made his sister's grandson, Octavius, his successor. He wished also to have the title as well as the power of king, and accordingly it was agreed that at the *Lupercalia*, Marc Antony should offer Caesar a diadem in public; but Caesar, seeing that the people were opposed to this, refused to accept the offer.

Conspiracy formed

Meanwhile a conspiracy was afoot. It was probably started by C. Cassius, a personal foe, and included upwards of sixty persons, many of whom had taken active part in the war against Caesar. Among the most prominent of the conspirators was M. Junius Brutus, who had fought against him at Pharsalia, but was pardoned and had since been raised to the praetorship. It was arranged to assassinate Caesar 15th March—the Ides of March. This plan was carried out, and Caesar fell at the base of Pompey's statue pierced with twenty-three wounds.

Death of Caesar 44 B.C.

IV

Character of Caesar

Caesar's death was a loss, not merely to Rome, but to the civilized world. Had his master genius executed the plans he had in mind, the whole of future history would have been changed. With his death were renewed those civil wars that brought carnage and disorder to the Roman world. Equally gifted as a jurist, statesman, historian and general, his versatility of genius was remarkable. His successes as a general were all achieved after his fortieth year. According to Cicero he might have been a great orator; his Commentaries prove that he was a great historian. His true greatness is shown by the entire absence of vanity. Power he loved above all things, and in employing the means to attain this, he probably was no worse or no better than the other Roman political leaders of his day.

V

Works of Caesar

(1) *Extant;* (*a*) *Commentarii de Bello Gallico,* in *seven* books. This work contains an account of the Conquest of Gaul, from 58 B.C. to 52 B.C. In the beginning of the first book we have the Conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, while the opening of the seventh refers to the death of Clodius as lately taking place. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers, to complete the narrative.

(*b*) *Commentarii de Bello Civili,* in *three* books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African and Spanish campaigns was afterwards added in three books. *Hirtius* probably wrote the account of the *Alexandrine* campaign; *Oppius,* that of the *African;* the account of the *Spanish* war was written probably by a *Centurion* of Caesar's army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) *Lost Works;*

(*a*) *Anticato.* A reply to Cicero's panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, 46 B.C.

(*b*) *De Analogia,* or as Cicero calls it, *De Ratione Latine Loquendi,* dedicated to Cicero, and written while Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(*c*) *Libri Auspiciorum* or *Auguralia,* written 63 B.C. when Caesar was *Pontifex maximus.*

(*d*) *De Astris,* written also 63 B.C.

(*e*) *Apothegmata* or *Dicta Collectanea,* a collection of witticisms made at different times.

(*f*) *Poemata,* nearly all written in his youth. To these belong *Œdipus, Laudes Herculis,* and *Iter* (describing his going to Spain in 46 B.C.).

VI

The Roman Army

Infantry

The legion (*legio*) numbered in Caesar's time from 3,000 to 5,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry (*peditatus*) was divided into 10 cohorts (*cohortes*); each cohort into 3 maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple into 2 centuries (*centuriae*). The cavalry (*alae, equitatus*) was divided into 10 *turmae*, each *turma* into 3 *decuriae* or squads. Generally, the effective strength of a legion was 3,600 infantry; so that a cohort would number 360 men; a maniple, 120; a century, 60; a *turma*, 30; a squad of cavalry, 10. The variation in number of the legion would arise from furloughs, sickness, losses in battle, for usually such losses were not filled by new recruits, since such recruits were usually formed into new legions. Legions were numbered according to their enrolment.

Cavalry

Acies triplex

The usual formation in battle was the *acies triplex*. Four cohorts formed the first line, three the second, and three the third, thus:—

4   3   2   1

   7   6   5

10   9   8

The men usually stood 10 deep, so that each cohort would have a front of from 30 to 40 men. We have no means of knowing the space between the different cohorts, or even between the maniples. The cavalry was usually posted on the wings (*alae*); so were the light-armed troops (*velites*), such as the slingers (*funditores*) and bowmen (*sagittarii*).

Light armed

Artisans

Attached to the army were the engineers and artisans (*fabri*), often formed into a separate company under a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*). These were employed in building bridges, building vessels, constructing winter quarters, repairing weapons. When Caesar was in Britain, the *fabri* were scattered among the legions, and not formed as a separate corps. (*B.* V, 11.)

The artillery of the Romans (*tormenta*) consisted of large engines formed on the principle of the cross-bow. These were *catapultae*, *ballistae*, and *scorpiones*. The *catapultae* hurled large arrows and darts; the *ballistae* threw large stones, while the *scorpiones* were smaller than the *catapultae* and had a less range. In sieges the battering-ram (*aries*) was often used. ***Artillery***

VII

The Officers of the Army

The officers of the army were:—

The *Commander* (*imperator*, *dux belli*) appointed by the Senate. He possessed the *imperium*, and his power was practically unlimited in the field. He usually received the title *imperator* after his first successful battle with the enemy. ***Imperator***

Under him were the *legati* or staff officers appointed by the Senate. They were of senatorial rank, *i.e.*, they had held before their appointment a curule office, as consul, praetor, chief aedile, or censor. The Senate appointed them and also determined the number. Caesar at first had six and afterwards ten. ***Legati***

The *quaestores* were elected annually by the people. They were attached to the general or the governor of a province. They managed all financial affairs connected with the army, had charge of the money chest, paid the soldiers, provided the food and clothing. They corresponded to the modern quartermaster or paymaster. ***Quaestores***

The *tribuni militum* were six in number to each legion, appointed by the Senate. They were not all exercising this power at once. Probably one held the command for two months. They kept the roll-call, attended to the levying, discipline, equipment of the troops, presided at court-martials, and took part in the council of war. ***Tribuni Militum***

The *centuriones* were sixty in number in each legion, and were appointed by the general. The six centurions of the first cohort were admitted to the council of war. These were called *primipili*. The centurions carried a wand (*vitis*) as a badge of office. ***Centuriones***

VIII

Arms



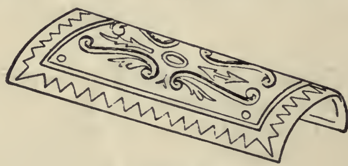
Offensive armor

The arms of a Roman soldier were of two kinds, offensive and defensive.

(a) *Offensive weapons.* The regular soldier (*miles legionarius*) was armed with (1) a short sword (*gladius*), about two feet long and double-edged. It was kept in a light scabbard hung from a belt (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder to the right side. The other offensive weapon was (2) the javelin (*pilum*), a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, into which was fitted a long slender iron shank ending in a barbed head.

Defensive armor

(b) *Defensive weapons* consisted of (1) helmet (*cassis* of bronze or *galea* of leather) surmounted with a white crest;



SCUTUM.



CLIPEUS.

(2) cuirass (*lorica*), or coat of mail made of leather or strips of metal fastened on the leather; (3) shield (*scutum*) rectangular in shape, about four feet long and two wide; made of wood, slightly curved, and covered with leather. In early days the *clipeus* also was used, but was discarded when the Roman soldiers received pay. The soldier had beneath his armor his tunic (*tunica*), a thick, sleeveless, woolen garment reaching to the knees. In severe weather he wore his cloak (*sagum*) of heavy, woolen stuff, fastened with a broach (*fibula*) on the right shoulder. Around his waist was a strong leather belt (*cingulum*). On his feet were heavy half-boots (*caligae*).

IX

Standards



Standards

Any standard was called by the general term *signum*. The standard of the legion was the eagle (*aquila*). This was of gold, silver, or bronze on a wooden staff. It was generally carried by the first centurion (*primipilus*). To lose the eagle was regarded as the greatest disgrace. The standards of the cohorts or maniples were called *signa*. These were of various designs, sometimes a dog, horse, wolf, serpent, figure of victory, etc. The standard of the cavalry was called *vexillum*, a square or oblong banner.

(1) *Aquila*

(2) *Signa*

(3) *Vexillum*

X

The Musical Instruments

Musical instruments

The musical instruments of the army were (1) *tuba*, trumpet; straight and deep-toned, and used to give the order for the advance or retreat; (2) *bucina* and *cornu* crooked, having a shrill tone, and generally used to indicate a change in the watch; (3) *lituus*, formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

XI

The Army on the March

The army on the march may be divided into :—

Divisions of army on the march

(1) *agmen primum*, or van; (2) *exercitus, agmen legionum*, or main body; (3) *agmen novissimum*, or rear. The van was generally composed of light-armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay till the main body arrived. The main body, with the baggage train (*impedimenta*), followed. The rear consisted of cavalry, or light-armed skirmishers. The average march (*iter justum*) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On a forced march (*iter magnum*) fifty miles were often covered. On the march the legionary carried his pack (*sarcina*), in which he had to carry his corn (*frumentum*), cooking utensils *vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two stakes (*valli*).

XII

The Army in Camp

Metatores

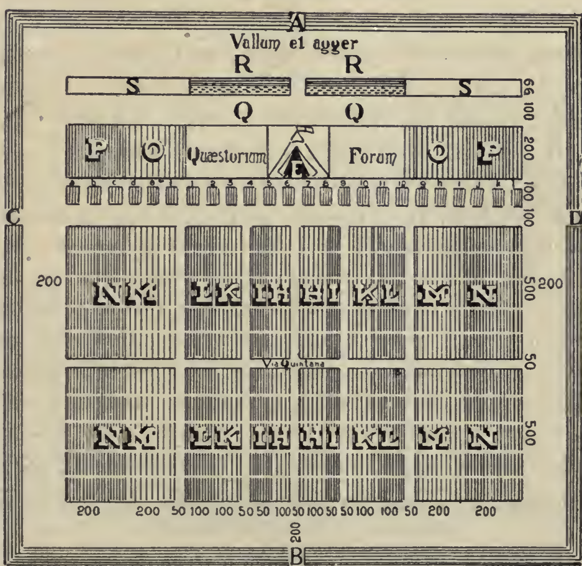
When an army was on the march, men (*metatores*) were sent forward to select a place suitable for a camp. If possible, high ground (*locus superior*) was selected. The camp was square or oblong. An embankment (*vallum*), formed from the ground thrown up from the ditch (*fossa*), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) *porta praetoria*, near the *praetorium*, or the general's tent, facing the enemy; (2) *porta decumana*, opposite to this; (3) *porta principalis*

Gates of the Camp

sinistra, on the left; (4) *porta principalis dextra,* on the right. Connecting the two latter was the *via principalis,* and parallel to the street was the *via quintana.* Connecting the *porta praetoria* and *porta decumana* was the *via praetoria.*

The subjoined cut will explain this.

PLAN OF A CONSULAR CAMP



This is the camp described by Polybius :—

The lines across the cavalry, etc., denote the divisions of troops or maniples.
A Praetorian gate.
B Decuman gate.
C Porta principalis sinistra.
D Porta principalis dextra.
E Praetorium.
H Roman cavalry.
I Triarii.
K Principes and Velites.
L Hastati and Velites.
M Cavalry of allies.
N Infantry of allies.
O Consul's and Quaestor's horse guards.
P do. foot guards.
Q Extraordinary cavalry of the allies.
R do. foot of the allies.
S Strangers and occasional allies.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 The twelve tribunes.
a b c d e f g h i j k l, The prefects of allies.
*** The figures on the right, and bottom, are the measures of length in feet.

The average pay of the legionary in Caesar's time was 12½ cents; that of the centurion was 25 cents. Often their pay was increased from the sale of booty.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER QUARTUS

Caesar determined to invade Britain; his reasons for crossing.

20. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat; et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque

---

Note.—The numeral after a verb shows the conjugation. If a verb is regular, the conjugation is simply indicated.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., small.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining.

septentriōnēs, -um, M., the seven stars forming the constellation of the Great Bear, hence the North.

vergō, 3, no pf., no sup., incline, slope.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early.

contendō, 3, **-dī, -tum,** v. intr., proceed.

subministrō, 1, furnish secretly.

dēficiō, 3, **-fēcī, -fectum,** v. intr., be insufficient.

modo, adv., only.

perspiciō, 3, **-spexī, -spectum,** v. tr., observe, become thoroughly acquainted with.

aditus, ūs, M., approach, landing place.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.

temere, adv., without reason.

illō, adv., thither.

incolō, 3, **coluī,** no sup., v. tr., live in, inhabit.

quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

Sends Volusenus, who returns and reports to him.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus, Caium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem, jubet convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito, et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit; et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem

---

ūsus, ūs, M., experience.
institūtum, -ī, N., custom, usage.
reperiō, 4, repperī, repertum, v. tr., find out, learn.

---

cognoscō, 3, cognōvī, cognitum, v. tr., learn, ascertain.
mandō, 1, v. intr. (governs dat.), command, instruct.
explōrō, 1, v. tr., investigate.
inde, adv., thence, from that point.
trājectus, ūs, M., passage.
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., carry through, report.
complūrēs, -plūria, adj., pl., several.
polliceor, 2, pollicitus, v. dep., promise.
obtemperō, 1 (governs dat.), obey.
līberāliter, adv., kindly.
sententia, -ae, F., feeling, sentiment.
ūnā, adv.; **unā cum,** along with.
Atrebātēs, -ium, M., pl., the Atrebates.
constituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtum, v. tr., establish.
probō, 1, v. tr., approve of.
fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful.

arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

Caesar levies hostages from the Morini.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus

---

magnī (gen. of value), of great value.
habeō, 2, v. tr., hold, consider.
facultās, -ātis, F., opportunity.
ēgredior, -dī, ēgressus, v. dep., go out, disembark.
committō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., intrust.
audeō, 2, ausus sum, v. semi-dep., dare.

---

excūsō, 1, v. tr., excuse, justify.
consuētūdō, -inis, F., custom.
imperītus, -a, -um (governs gen.), adj., unacquainted with.
satis, adv., enough, sufficiently.
opportūnē, adv., opportunely.
accidō, 3, accidī, v. intr., happen.
accidit, accidĕre, accidit, v. impers., it happens.
tergum, -ī, N., back.
relinquō, 3, -līquī, -lictum, v. tr., leave, leave behind.
tantulus, -a, -um, adj., trifling.
occupātiō, -ōnis, F., business, engagement.
antepōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., place before, prefer.
jūdicō, 1, v. tr., judge, decide.

circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quominus in eundum portum pervenire possent; has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

Caesar reaches Britain.

23. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi jussit. A quibus cum id paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium

---

cōgō, 3, coēgī, coactum, v. tr., force, collect.

contrahō, 3, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., bring together.

existimō, 1, v. intr., think, consider.

praetereā, adv., besides.

quaestor, -ōris, M., quarter-master.

praefectus, -ī, M., captain.

distribuō, 3, -uī, -ūtum, v. tr., divide.

accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., am added.

nanciscor, 3, nactus, v. dep., obtain.

tempestās, -ātis, F., storm, weather.

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtum, v. tr., loosen, set sail.

conscendō, 3, -dī, -sum, v. tr., go on board.

paulō, adv., a little.

tardē, adv., slowly.

administrō, 1, v. tr., carry out.

attingō, 3, attigī, no sup., v. tr., reach.

expōnō, 3, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., draw up.

copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus augustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim, legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

The natives attack the Romans.

24. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi

---

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., armed.
conspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., observe, espy.
nātūra, -ae, F., character.
adeō, adv., so, to such an extent.
angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, precipitous.
contineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentum, v. tr., hem in.
adjiciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw upon.
nequāquam, adv., by no means.
ancora, -ae, F., anchor.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, v. irreg., be done.
ostendō, 3, -dī, -tum, v. tr., show, point out.
ratiō, -ōnis, F., method.
māximē, adv., especially.
instābilis, -e, adj.. unsteady.
mōtus, -ūs, M., motion.
nūtus, -ūs, M., nod.
ventus, -ī, M., wind.
aestus, -ūs, M., tide.
tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum, v. tr., raise up, weigh.
apertus, -a, -um, adj., open.
plānus, -a, -um, adj., level.

---

at, conj., but.
essedāriī, -ōrum, M., pl., charioteers.
plērumque, adv., generally.
consuescō, 3, -suēvī, -suētum, v. intr., become accustomed.

prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illi aut ex arido aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis, audacter tela conjicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, utebantur.

Caesar's device; bravery of the standard-bearer of the 10th legion; Roman advance.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat babaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis

---

prohibeō, 2, v. tr., prevent.
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.
impedītus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as adj., hampered.
opprimō, 3, **-pressī, -pressum**, crush, weigh down.
simul, adv., at one and the same time.
dēsiliō, 4, **-siluī, -sultum**, v. intr., leap down.
fluctus, -ūs, M., wave.
consistō, 3, **-stitī**, no sup., come to a stand.
aridus, -a, -um, dry.
paululum, adv., a short distance.
prōgredior, -dī, -gressus, advance.
membrum, -ī, N., limb.
expedītus, -a, -um, adj., free.
conjiciō, 3, **-jēcī, -jectum**, v. tr., throw, hurl.
insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj., trained.
incitō, 1., spur on.
omnīnō, adv., wholly.
imperītus, -a, -um (governs gen.), adj., unskilled in.
alacritās, -ātis, F., eagerness.
studium, -ī, N., zeal.
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., on foot, on land.

---

animadvertō, 3, **-vertī, -versum**, v. tr., notice.
speciēs, -ēī, F., appearance.
inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., strange, unfamiliar.
paulum, adv., a little, a short distance.
removeō, 2, **-mōvī, -mōtum**, v. tr., remove.
rēmus, -ī, M., oar.

incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque, nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere; ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero." Hoc cum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

Rout of the enemy.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque

---

funda, -ae, F., sling.
tormentum, -ī, N., engine.
propellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive forward.
summoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., dislodge.
figūra -ae, F., shape.
cunctor, 1, v. dep., waver, hesitate.
altitūdō, -inis, F., height.
contestor, 1, v. dep., invoke.
ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., turn out, happen.
commīlitō, -ōnis, M., comrade.
prōdō, 3, prōdidī, prōditum, v. tr., betray.
certē, adv., at least.
officium, -ī, N., duty.
praestō, 1, -stitī, -stitum, v. tr., show, perform.
prōjiciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw forward.
dedecus, -oris, N., disgrace.
admittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., incur.
universī, -ae, -a, adj. pl., all together, in a body.
item, adv., likewise.
appropinquō, 1 (governs dat.), approach.

---

uterque, utraque, utrumque, pro. adj., either, both.
ordō, -inis, M., rank.
firmiter, adv., steadily.
insistō, 3, -stitī, no sup., stand.

signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt; neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

Several states submit to Caesar.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturos quaeque imperasset sese facturos polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem

---

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, rel. pron., whoever, whatever.
signum, -ī, N., standard.
occurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum (governs dat.), meet.
aggregō, 1, v. tr., join, unite.
perturbō, 1, v. tr., disorder, throw into confusion.
vērō, conj., but, on the other hand.
vadum, -ī, N., ford.
aliquis, aliquae, aliquid, adj. pron., any.
singulāris, -e, adj., singly.
adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, v. dep., attack.
scapha, -ae, F., light boat.
speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj., spy, scouting.
nāvigium, -ī, M., boat.
compleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill, man.
labōrō, 1, v. intr., be in trouble.
subsidium, -ī, N., support, reinforcement.
pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former.
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., (governs dat.), am lacking.

supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Fate of the eighteen cavalry troop ships.

28. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coörta est, ut

---

suprā, adv., above.
dēmonstrō, 1, v. tr., show, point out.
modō, in the manner of.
mandātum, **-i**, N., order.
dēferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, v. tr., deliver.
comprehendō, 3, **-dī**, **-sum**, v. tr., seize.
vinculum, **-ī**, N., chain.
culpa, **-ae**, F., blame, fault.
ignoscō, 3, **ignōvī**, **ignōtum**, v. intr., (governs dat.) pardon.
queror, **querī**, **questus**, v. dep., complain.
ultrō, adv., of one's own accord.
continens, **-ntis**, (sc. *terra*) continent.
arcessō, 3, **arcessīvī**, **arcessītum**, v. tr., send for, summon.
remigrō, 1, v. intr., go back, return.
commendō, 1, v. tr., intrust.

---

confirmō, 1, v. tr., establish.
lēnis, **-e**, adj., gentle.
coorior, **-orīrī**, **-ortus**, v. dep., arise.

nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

A storm and high tides wreck Caesar's transports.

29. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat; et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

---

eōdem, adv., to the same place.
necessāriō, adv., of necessity.
prōvehō, 3, -vexī, -vectum, v. tr., carry forward, carry out.

---

efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., make, render.
subdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, v. tr., draw up on shore, beach.
dēligō, 1, v. tr., bind.
afflictō, 1, v. tr., shatter.
administrō, 1, v. tr., manage.
auxilior, 1, v. dep., aid.
frangō, 3, frēgī, fractum, v. tr., wreck, shatter.
fūnis, -is, M., rope, cable.
armāmentum, -ī, N., tackle.
inūtilis, -e, adj., useless.
perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., panic.
reficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., repair.
constat, constāre, constitit, v. impers., it is agreed.
oportet, -ēre, oportuit, v. impers., it behoves, ought.
prōvideō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsum, v. tr., foresee, provide.

Conspiracy of British Chiefs.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae jusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se collocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis, aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque, rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their intentions; forms plans accordingly.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex

---

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, v. dep., converse.
intellegō, 3, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., perceive.
paucitās, -ātis, F., fewness.
exiguitās, -ātis, F., smallness.
hōc, for this reason.
factū, supine in -u, to be done.
rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war.
commeātus, -ūs, M., supplies.
reditus, -ūs, M., return.
interclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., cut off.
nēmō, acc. **nēminem,** no one.
posteā, adv., afterwards.
transeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, v. tr., go across, cross over.
confīdō, 3, confīsus sum, v. semi-dep., trust.
rursus, adv., again.
conjūrātiō, -ōnis, F., league.
paulātim, adv., gradually.
discēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., go away, depart.
clam, adv., secretly.

---

nōndum, adv., not yet.
ēventus, -ūs, M., accident.
intermittō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, v, tr., cease, stop.
suspicor, 1, v. dep., suspect.
cāsus, -ūs, M., emergency.
subsidium, -ī, N., resource.

agris cotidie in castra conferebat, et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur; et quae ad eas res erant usui ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, cum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

Sudden attack of the British.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renuntiarunt, pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici animadvertit.

---

cotīdiē, adv., daily.
afflīgō, 3, **--flīxī**, **-flictum**, v. tr., shatter.
māteria, **-ae**, F., timber.
aes, **-aeris**, N., metal.
āmittō, 3, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, v. tr., lose.
commodē, adv., conveniently.

---

frūmentor, 1, v. dep., forage.
suspīciō, **-ōnis**, F., suspicion.
ventitō, 1, v. intr., come often, come and go.
statiō, **-ōnis**, F., outpost, guard.
pulvis, **-eris**, M., dust.
ineō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum**, v. tr., go into, enter upon, form.
succēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, v. intr., take the place of.
armō, 1, v. tr., arm.
confestim, adv., immediately.
prōcēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, v. intr., advance.
premō, 3, **pressī**, **pressum**, v. tr., press, press hard.
aegrē, adv., with difficulty.
sustineō, 2, **-tinuī**, **-tentum**, v. tr., hold out, withstand.
confertus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., in close array, crowded together.

Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

The British mode of fighting.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione

---

dēmetō, 3, -messuī, -messum, v. tr., reap.
noctū, adv., in the night time.
dēlitescō, 3, -lituī, no sup., lie hid, hide one's self.
dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., scattered.
metō, 3, messuī, messum, v. tr., reap.
occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., engaged.
incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, confused.
esseda, -ae, F., chariot.
circumdō, -dăre, -dedī, -datum, v. tr., surround.

---

prīmō, adv., at first.
perequitō, 1, v. intr., ride through, drive through.
terror, -ōris, M., fright, terror.
strepitus, -ūs, M., noise, din.
rota, -ae, F., wheel.
turma, -ae, F., squadron [of cavalry].
insinuō, 1, v. tr., cause to go into; insinuant sē, they work their way into.
dēsiliō, 4, -siluī, -sultum, v. intr., leap down.
proelior, 1, v. dep., fight.
aurīga, -ae, M., charioteer.
interim, adv., meanwhile.
paulātim, adv., gradually.
receptus, -ūs, M., retreat.
mōbilitās, -ātis, F., mobility.
stabilitās, -ātis, F., steadiness.
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily.
exercitātiō, -ōnis, training, practice, exercise.

efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

Caesar acts on the defensive: severe storms keep the Romans within their camp.

34. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedi-

---

dēclīvis, -e, adj., sloping.
praeceps, -cipitis, adj., headlong, steep.
incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as an adj., at full speed.
brevī (sc. *tempore*), in a short time.
moderor, 1, v. tr., control.
flectō, 3, **flexuī, flexum**, v. tr., turn.
tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole, tongue.
citō, adv. (**citius, citissimē**), quickly, swiftly.

---

novitās, -ātis, F., strangeness, novelty.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, opportune.
namque, conj., for.
timor, -ōris, M., fear.
lacessō, 3, **-sīvī, sītum**, v. tr., harass, provoke, attack.
aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to another, unfavorable.
contineō, 2, **-uī, -tentum**, v. tr., hem in, keep.
discēdō, 3, **cessī, -cessum**, v. intr., go away, depart, scatter.
continuus, -a, -um, adj., successive.
prohibeō, 2, v. tr., prevent, keep from.
praedicō, 1, v. tr., announce, boast.

caverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

Defeat and pursuit of the enemy.

35. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde, omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis, se in castra receperunt.

Caesar makes peace; sets sail for Gaul.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi

---

praeda, -ae, F., booty, plunder.
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., constant, unbroken; **in perpetuum,** forever.
expellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive out.
cōgō, 3, coēgī, coactum, v. tr., collect.

---

celeritās, -ātis, F., speed.
effugiō, 3, -fūgī, -fugitum, v. tr., escape.
constituō, 3, -uī, -ūtum, v. tr., draw up, post.
committō, 3, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., engage, engage in.
spatium, -ī, N., distance.
tantus—quantus, as great as.
cursus, -ūs, M., running.
occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut down, kill, slay.
deinde, adv., then, next, afterwards.
incendō, 3, -dī, -sum, v. tr., set on fire, burn.

---

anteā, adv., before, previously.
duplicō, 1, v. tr., double, demand . . . double.
propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near.
aequinoctium, -ī, N., equinox.
infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak.

navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Sudden attack of the Morini.

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes, abjectis armis, terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

---

subjiciō, 3, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, v. tr., place near, expose.
incolumis, **-e**, adj., safe.
onerārius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., of burden; **nāvis onerāria**, a transport.
infrā, adv., below.
dēferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, v. tr., carry down.

---

expōnō, 3, **-posuī**, **-positum**, v. tr., land, disembark.
trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, num. adj., 300.
contendō, 3, **-dī**, **-tum**, v. intr., proceed, hasten.
pacātus, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. p. used as adj., at peace.
circumsto, 1, **-stetī**, **-stātum**, v. tr., surround.
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, v. irreg., not.. wish, am unwilling.
orbis, **-is**, M., circle.
dēfendō, 3, **-dī**, **-sum**, v. tr., defend, protect.
vulnus, **-eris**, N., wound.
accipiō, 3, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, v. tr., receive.
posteāquam, conj., after.
vērō, adv. conj., in truth, but, however.
conspectus, **-ūs**, M., sight.
abjiciō, 3, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, v. tr., throw away.

Conquest of the Morini and Menapii.

38. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

---

rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war.
siccitās, -ātis, F., dryness.
palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.
perfugium, -ī, N., refuge.
ferē, adv., almost, about.
potestās, -ātis, F., power.
frūmentum, -ī, N., corn; pl., crops.
succīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut down.
abdō, 3, abdidī, abditum, v. tr., hide, conceal.
hībernus, -a, -um, adj., winter, wintry; **hīberna, -ōrum,** N., pl. (sc. *castra*), winter camp, winter quarters.
eō, adv., thither.
omnīnō, adv., in all.
neglegō, 3, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., neglect.
supplicātiō, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.
dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētum, v. tr., decree.

LIBER QUINTUS

Caesar orders a fleet to be built. The Pirustae give hostages.

1. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem jumentorum transportandam, paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat

---

ut, conj., as.
quotannīs, adv., yearly.
consuēscō, 3, -suēvi, -suētum, v. intr., become accustomed; **consuēvī**, I am accustomed.
praeficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., (governs acc. and dat.), place over, place in command of.
cūrō, 1, v. tr., care for (see general vocab.)
modus, -ī, M., measure, size.
forma, -ae, F., shape, plan.
onerō, 1, v. tr., load.
subductiō, -ōnis, F., drawing up on shore, beaching.
humilis, -e, adj., low.
eō, adv., for this reason.
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., change.
jūmentum, -i, N., baggage animal, beast of burden.
actuārius, -a, -um, adj., driven by oars (as well as sails), rowing, fast sailing.
humilitās, -ātis, F., lowness.
multum, adv., much.
adjūvō, 1, -jūvī, -jūtum, v. tr., aid, help.
apportō, 1, v. tr., bring.
conventus, -ūs, M., assize.
peragō, 3, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., conduct, hold.
incursiō, -ōnis, F., raid, inroad.

certumque in locum convenire jubet. Qua re nuntiata, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certum diem adduci jubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

The soldiers praised for their zeal. Fleet ordered to rendezvous at Portus Itius.

2. His confectis rebus, conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summa omnium rerum inopia, circiter sexcentas ejus generis, cujus supra demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti

---

certus, -a, -um, adj., stated, definite, certain.
doceō, 2, **-uī, doctum,** v. tr., teach, inform, tell.
publicus, -a, -um, public, common.
parātus, -a, -um, p. p. p. used as adj., ready.
ratiō, -ōnis, F., account, claim.
injūria, -ae, F., wrong, injustice.
satisfaciō, 3, **-fēcī, -factum,** v. tr., satisfy, meet.
percipiō, 3, **-cēpī, -ceptum,** v. tr., take in, hear.
nisi, conj., unless, if . . . not.
ita, adv., so.
persequor, 3, **-secūtus,** v. tr., follow up, pursue.
arbiter, -trī, M., arbitrator, assessor.
līs, lītis, F., law suit, damages.
aestimō, 1, v. tr., value, estimate, assess.
poena, -ae, F., punishment, penalty.

---

revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum, v. semi-dep., turn back, return.
circueō, -īre, -iī, -itum, v. tr., go around, visit.
singulāris, -e, adj., remarkable, extraordinary.
studium, -ī, N., zeal, enthusiasm.
inopia, -ae, F., want, lack, scarcity.
sexcentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., 600.
suprā, adv., above.

octo invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus, atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trajectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

The Treveri and their rival chieftains.

3. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; e quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum

---

inveniō, 4, **vēnī**, **-ventum**, v. tr., find.
instruō, 3, **-struxī**, **-structum**, v. tr., draw up, build, equip.
dēdūco, 3, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**, v. tr., draw down (into water), launch.
collaudō, 1, v. tr., commend, praise.
negōtium, -ī, N., business, work.
praesum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, v. intr. (governs dat.), be in charge of.
fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, v. irreg., am done, become.
ostendō, 3, -dī, -tum, v. tr., show.
commodus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., fit, handy, suitable, convenient.
trājectus, **-ūs**, M., passage.
circiter, adv., about.
videor, 2, **vīsus**, v. dep., seem, appear.
expedītus, **-a**, **-um**. adj., free, ready for action.
octingenti, **-ae**, **-a**, num. adj., 800.
concilium, **-ī**, N., council.
sollicitō, 1, tamper with, stir up.

---

longē, adv., by far.
plūrimum, adv., very, most.
valeō, 2, v. intr., am strong, have power.
tangō, 3, **tetigī**, **tactum**, v. tr., touch, border on.
principātus, **-ūs**, M., leadership.
simul atque, conj., as soon as.
adventus, **ūs**, M., arrival.

est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit; quaeque in Treveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti, et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

---

officium, **-i**, N., duty, allegiance.
dēficiō, 3, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, v. intr., fail, revolt.
confirmō, 1, v. tr., assure.
aetās, **-ātis**, F., age.
abdō, 3, **-didī**, **-ditum**, v. tr., hide, conceal.
ingens (gen. **ingentis**), adj., large, huge, immense.
initium, **-ī**, N., beginning.
instituō, 3, **-uī**, **-ūtum**, v. tr., draw up, decide, begin.
fāmiliāritās, **-ātis**, F., intimacy, friendship.
prīvātim, adv., privately, individually.
quoniam, conj., since.
consulō, 3, **-suluī**, **-sultum**, v. tr., with acc. consult; intr. with dat. consult for, consult the interests of.
dēserō, 3, **-seruī**, **-sertum**, v. tr., desert.
idcircō, adv., for this reason.
quō, conj., in order that.
nōbilitās, **-ātis**, F., nobility.
discessus, **-ūs**, M., departure.
imprūdentia, **-ae**, F., thoughtlessness.
labor, 3, **lapsus**, v. intr., slip, glide away, revolt.
fortūnae, **-ārum**, F., pl., fortunes, interests.

Cingetorix honored and Indutiomarus offended.

4. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum, hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius, principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito ejus a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, qui jam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

---

intellegō, 3, -**lexī**, -**lectum**, v. tr., perceive, am aware.
quā dē causā, for what reason.
institūtus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. p. used as an adj., appointed, predetermined.
dēterreō, 2, v. tr., keep from, deter.
consūmō, 3, -**sumpsī**, -**sumptum**, v. tr., spend.
propinquus, -**ī**, M., relative.
nōminātim, adv., by name, specially, individually.
ēvocō, 1, v. tr., summon.
consōlor, 1, v. dep., console, comfort, cheer.
nihilō secius, none the less.
singillātim, adv., one by one, individually.
conciliō, 1, v. tr., win over, reconcile.
cum . . . tum, both . . . and.
meritum, -**ī**, N., service, deserts.
interest, -**esse**, -**fuit**, v. impers., it is of interest, importance.
magnī interesse, to be of great importance.
ēgregius, -**a**, -**um**, adj., remarkable, signal.
voluntās, -**ātis**, F., goodwill.
factum, -**ī**, N., act, deed.
graviter ferō, am offended at, am annoyed at.
grātia, -**ae**, F., favor, influence.
minuō, 3, -**uī**, -**ūtum**, v. tr., lessen.
inimīcus, -**a**, -**um**, adj., unfriendly, hostile.
multō, adv., much.
dolor, -**ōris**, M., grief, resentment.
exardescō, 3, -**arsī**, -**arsum**, v. intr., be kindled, burst forth.

Caesar prepares to sail.

5. His rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit quadraginta naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero millium quattuor, principesque ex omnibus civitatibus, ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Dumnorix gives trouble.

6. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Haeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus

---

rejiciō, 3, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw back.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, pl. adj., very few.

locō, in the place of, as.

dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētūm, v. tr., decree, determine, decide.

absum, -esse, -fuī, v. irreg., am absent.

mōtus, -ūs, M., rising.

---

unā cum, along with.

in prīmīs, among the first, especially.

rēs novae, F. pl., new things, change, revolution.

accēdēbat huc quod, to this was added the fact that.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -latum, v. tr., report, offer.

dictum, -ī, N., saying, statement.

recūsō, 1, v. tr., refuse, object.

dēprecor, 1, v. dep., protest.

audeō, 2, ausus sum, v. semi-dep. dare.

hospes, -itis, M., guest, friend.

precēs, precum, pl. F., (see Vocab.) prayer, request.

petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare, non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

Death of Dumnorix.

7. Qua re cognita, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Haeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti

---

partim, adv., partly.
insuētus, -a, -um, adj. (governs gen.), unaccustomed, unused.
timeō, 2, **uī,** no sup., fear, am afraid.
rēligiō, -ōnis, F., religious feeling, religious scruple.
impediō, 4, v. tr., prevent.
obstinātē, adv., resolutely.
impetrō, 1, v. tr., obtain a request.
adimō, 3, **-ēmī, -emptum,** v. tr., take away, remove.
sēvocō, 1, v. tr., call aside.
singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one by one.
territō, 1, v. tr., terrify, alarm.
spoliō, 1, v. tr., despoil, rob.
necō, 1, v. tr., kill, murder.
fidem interpōnō, pledge one's word.
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, N., oath.
ex ūsū, in the interests of.
commūnis, -e, adj., common.
administrō, 1, v. tr., carry out.

---

tribuō, 3, **-uī, -ūtum,** v. tr., assign, give.
coerceō, 2, restrain, check.
āmentia, -ae, F., madness, folly.
prōspiciō, 3, **-spexī, -spectum,** v. tr., foresee, take care, take precautions.
noceō, 2, v. intr. (governs dat.), injure, harm.

quinque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. At, omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum a castris, insciente Caesare, domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar, intermissa profectione, atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim, revocatus, resistere ac se manu defendere, suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Haedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

Caesar's second landing in Britain, 54 B.C.

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus

---

commoror, 1, v. dep., delay.
Cōrus, -ī, M., north-west wind.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F., sailing, navigation.
flō, 1, v. intr., blow.
operam dō ut, take pains to.
nihilō secius, none the less.
conscendō, 3, **-dī, -sum,** v. tr. and intr., go on board.
insciens (gen. **inscientis**), adj., not knowing, ignorant.
intermittō, 3, **-mīsī, -missum,** v. tr., stop, delay.
profectiō, -ōnis, F., departure.
insequor, 3, **-secūtus,** v. dep., pursue, overtake.
retrahō, 3, **-traxī, -tractum,** v. tr., bring back.
sānus, -a, -um, adj., sane.
prō sānō, like a sane man.
praesens (gen. **praesentis**), adj., present.
neglegō, 3, **-lexi, -lectum,** v. tr., neglect, disregard.
clāmitō, 1, v. intr., shout often.
circumsistō, 3, **-stetī,** no sup., v. tr., surround.

tueretur, et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit; et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit; et longius delatus aestu, orta luce, sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus: sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

---

tueor, 2, tuitus, v. dep., protect, defend.
rēs frūmentāria, F., corn supply.
pār (gen. **paris**), adj., equal.
lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild.
Āfricus, -ī, M., south-west wind.
prōvehō, 3, -vexī, -vectum, v. tr., carry forward.
sinistra, -ae (sc. **manus**), F., left hand, left.
orior, orīrī, ortus, v. dep., rise, arise.
rēmus, -ī, M., oar.
quā (sc. **parte**), where.
ēgressus, -ūs, M., landing, landing place.
admodum, adv., very.
vectōrius, -a, -um, adj., adapted for carrying.
vectōrium nāvigium, transport ship.
rēmigō, 1, v. intr., row.
adaequō, 1, v. tr., equal.
merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., mid-day.
manus, -ūs, F., hand, band.
annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., of last year.
prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., private.
commodum, -ī, N., convenience, advantage.
amplius, adv., more (than).
octingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., 800.

The Britons oppose his march inland.

9. Caesar, exposito exercitu, et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa jam ante praeparaverant: nam, crebris arboribus succisis, omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine facta, et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes

---

expōnō, 3, **-posuī**, **-positum**, v. tr., land, disembark.

consīdō, 3, **-sēdī**, **-sessum**, settle, encamp.

vigilia, **-ae**, F., watch.

eō, adv., for this reason.

mollis, **-e**, adj., soft.

dēligō, 1, v. tr., bind.

conspicor, 1, v. dep., see, behold.

repellō, 3, **-pūlī**, **-pulsum**, v. tr., drive back, repulse.

ēgregiē, adv., admirably, excellently.

domesticus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., domestic, civil.

praeparō, 1, v. tr., prepare beforehand.

crēber, **-bra**, **-brum**, adj., frequent, numerous.

succīdō, 3, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum**, v. tr., cut down.

introitus, **-ūs**, M., entrance.

praeclūdō, 3, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum**, v. tr., close, shut.

rārus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., thin, few, in small bodies.

prōpugnō, 1, v. intr., fight.

mūnītiō, **-ōnis**, F., fortification.

ingredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus**, v. dep., go into, enter.

testūdō, **-inis**, F., testudo (see Vocab.)

adjiciō, 3, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, v. tr., throw up, throw against.

longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Bad news of the fleet.

10. Postridie ejus diei, mane, tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte, maxima coorta tempestate, prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore ejectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Labienus builds new ships. Cassivellaunus.

11. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere jubet; ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat,

---

vetō, 1, **vetuī**, **vetitum**, v. tr., forbid.
ignōrō, 1, v. tr., not to know, am ignorant of.

---

manē, adv., in the morning.
tripertītō, adv., in three divisions.
expedītiō, **-ōnis**, F., foray.
aliquantus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., somewhat; **aliquantum**, neut. sing., some distance.
extrēmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., last; **extrēmī**, **-ōrum**, M. pl., the rear.
prōspectus, **-ūs**, M., sight, view.
coorior, **-orīrī**, **-ortus**, v. dep., arise.
afflīgō, 3, **-flīxī**, **-flictum**, v. tr., dash down, shatter.
ejiciō, 3, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, v. tr., throw out, cast.
fūnis, **-is**, M., rope, cable.
subsistō, 3, **-stitī**, no sup., v. tr., make a stand, hold out.
gūbernātor, **-ōris**, M., pilot, steersman.
patior, **patī**, **passus**, v. dep., endure, stand.
concursus, **-ūs**, M., collision.
incommodum, **-ī**, N., inconvenience, loss, damage.

---

resistō, 3, **restitī**, no sup., v. intr. (governs dat.), resist, withstand.
litterae, **-ārum**, F. pl., letter, despatch.

coram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit, et ex continenti alios arcessi jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus, castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur.. Eo cum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

---

cōram, adv., face to face, before one's eyes.
perspiciō, 3, **-spexī**, **-spectum**, v. tr., see, perceive.
reficiō, 3, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, v. tr., repair.
negōtium, **-ī**, M., trouble.
faber, **-brī**, M., workman.
dēligō, 3, **-lēgī**, **-lectum**, v. tr., choose, select.
arcessō, 3, **-cessīvī**, **-cessītum**, v. tr., summon.
opera, **-ae**, F., work, service.
subdūcō, 3, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, v. tr., draw up on shore, beach.
conjungō, 3, **-junxī**, **-junctum**, v. tr., join together.
nocturnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., of the night.
nē . . . quidem, not even.
summa, **-ae**, F., whole; **summa imperii**, supreme command.
dīvidō, 3, **-vīsī**, **-vīsum**, v. tr., divide, separate.
continens (gen. **continentis**), adj., continuous, incessant.
intercēdō, 3, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, v. intr., intervene, occur.

The people.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt; maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgis transierant (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi permanserunt, atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo, creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia; pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

---

incolō, 3, **-coluī**, **-cultum**, v. tr., live in, inhabit.
nascor, **nascī**, **natus**, v. dep., am born.
memōria, **-ae**, F., memory, tradition.
prōdō, 3, **-didī**, **-ditum**, v. tr., hand down.
inferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **illātum**, v. tr., bring against; **bellum inferō**, make war on.
transeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum**, v. tr., go across, cross.
infinītus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., boundless, countless.
consimilis, **-e**, adj., similar.
pecus, **-oris**, N., cattle (collectively).
aes, **aeris**, N., metal, bronze.
tālea, **-ae**, F., bar.
ferreus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., iron.
pondus, **-eris**, N., weight.
exāminō, 1, test, weigh.
nummus, **-ī**, M., coin.
plumbum, **-ī**, N., lead; **plumbum album**, tin.
mediterrāneus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., central.
importō, 1, v. tr., import.
māteria, **-ae**, F., timber.
quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** or **quodque**, indef., pron., each.
praeter, prep. (governs acc.), except.
fāgus, **-ī**, F., beech.
abiēs, **-ietis**, F., fir.
lepus, **-oris**, M., hare.
gallīna, **-ae**, F., hen.
anser, **-eris**, M., goose.
gustō, 1, taste.
fās, indecl. noun, right, divine law.
alō, 3, **aluī**, **altum**, v. tr., rear.
voluptās, **-ātis**, F., pleasure.
temperātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., temperate.
remissus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., mild.

The island.

13. Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subjectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est objecta terra, sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

---

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., triangular.
angulus, -ī, M., angle.
appellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive to, steer towards.
sol oriens, rising sun, east.
merīdiēs, -ēī, M., mid-day, south.
pertineō, 2, -uī, -tentum, v. intr., extend.
occidens sol, setting sun, west.
dīmidium, -ī, N., half.
transmissus, -ūs, M., passage.
praetereā, adv., besides.
subjectus, -a, -um, p. p. p., used as adj., lying near.
brūma, -ae, F. (=**brevissima,** sc. **diēs**), shortest day, winter solstice.
percontātiō, -ōnis, F., inquiry.
reperiō, 4, repperī, repertum, v. tr., find out.
mensūra, -ae, F., measurement.
septingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., 700.
circuitus, -ūs, M., circumference.
viciēs, num. adv., twenty times.

Manners and customs.

14. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

More fighting, a surprise; death of a tribune.

15. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis, cupidius insecuti, nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione

---

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., civilized.
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, pl. adj., most, the majority.
serō, 3, sēvī, satum, v. tr., sow, plant.
lac, lactis, N., milk.
carō, carnis, F., flesh.
pellis, -is, F., skin, hide.
vitrum, -ī, N., woad.
caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., sky-blue, blue.
horridus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful, frightful.
aspectus, -ūs, M., aspect.
capillus, -ī, M., hair.
promissus, -a, -um, adj., flowing, long.
rādō, 3, rāsī, rāsum, v. tr., shave,
lābrum, -ī, N., lip.
dēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., ten by ten, ten apiece.
duodēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., twelve by twelve, twelve apiece.
dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead away, marry.

---

conflīgō, 3, -flixī, -flictum, v. tr., strike, engage.
compello, 3, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive.
cupidē, adv., eagerly.
nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, pl. adj., some.
imprūdens (gen. **imprūdentis**), off one's guard.

castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt, impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt; duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi, pluribus submissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

British mode of fighting.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minos aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

---

subsidium, -ī, N., support, reinforcement.
perexiguus, -a, -um, adj., very small.
consistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum, v. intr., take one's stand.
audacter, adv., boldly (audācius, audācissimē).
perrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break through.

---

dīmicō, 1, v. intr., fight, struggle.
gravitās, -ātis, F., weight.
cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum, v. intr., go, withdraw, retreat.
aptus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suited.
propterea, adv., for this reason; propterea quod, because.
consultō, adv., purposely.
dēsiliō, 4, -siluī, -sultum, v. intr., leap down.
dispār (gen. disparis), unequal.
ratiō, -ōnis, F., plan, method.
accēdēbat huc ut, to this was added the fact that.
deinceps, adv., in turn.
integer, -gra, -grum, adv., whole, fresh, vigorous.
dēfatigātus, -a, -um, adj., wearied.

The Britons repulsed.

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere, et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt; magnoque eorum numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt; neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae

---

ostendō, 3, **-dī**, **-sum** (or **-tum**), v. tr., show, display.
lēniter, adv., gently.
pābulor, 1, v. dep., forage.
pābulātor, **-ōris**, M., forager.
advolō, 1, v. intr., fly at.
absistō, 3, **-stitī**, no sup., v. intr., keep away from.
quoad, conj., until.
confīdō, 3, **confīsus sum**, v. semi-dep., trust.
colligō, 3, **-lēgī**, **-lectum**, v. tr., collect, rally.
prōtinus, adv., forthwith.

---

aegrē, adv., with difficulty.
acūtus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., sharp.
sūdes, **-is**, F., stake.
praefīgō, 3, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum**, v. tr., fix or place in front of.

sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent, ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Tactics of Cassivellaunus.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat; paulumque ex via excedebat, locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros ejecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

---

tegō, 3, texī, tectum, v. tr., cover, protect.
perfuga, -ae, M., deserter.
exstō, -stāre, no pf., no sup., v. intr., stand out of.
mandō, 1, v. tr., consign.

---

contentiō, -ōnis, F., struggle.
servō, 1, v. tr., guard, watch.
silvester, -tris, -tre, adj., woody.
occultō, 1, v. tr., hide.
līberē, adv., freely.
sēmita, -ae, F., path, by-path.
vagor, 1, v. dep., wander.
patior, patī, passus, v. dep., allow.
incendium, -ī, N., fire.
tantum ... quantum, as much ... as, as far ... as.

The Trinobantes submit to Caesar.

20. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens, Caesaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cujus pater Immanuentius in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

So do other tribes. A British "town."

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus; locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus; multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

---

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., strong.
adulescens, -ntis, M., young man.
vītō, 1, v. tr., avoid.
dēfendō, 3, **-dī, -sum**, v. tr., defend, protect.
praesum, -esse, -fuī, v. irreg., am at the head of, am in command of.
imperātum, -i, N., command.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., embassy.
palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh, swamp.
incursiō, -ōnis, F., attack, raid.
paulisper, adv., for a short time.
moror, 1, v. dep., delay.
comprēhendō, 3, **-dī, -sum**, v. tr., seize, arrest.

Four Kentish kings defeated. Cassivellaunus treats for peace.

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat, et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

---

nāvālis, -e, adj., naval.

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen; **dē imprōvīsō,** unexpectedly.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, v. dep., attack, assail.

nōbilis, -e, adj., noble.

incolumis, -e, adj., safe.

dētrīmentum, -ī, N., loss, damage.

maximē, adv., especially.

etiam, adv., also.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, F., revolt.

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, v. irreg., survive, remain.

extrahō, 3, -traxī, -tractum, v. v. tr., draw out, spend.

vectīgal, -ālis, N., tax, tribute.

pendō, 3, pependī, pensum, v. tr., weigh out, pay.

interdīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictum, v. tr., forbid.

Caesar returns to Gaul

23. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno, ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit, omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

---

dēpereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, v. irreg., perish, am lost.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F., voyage.
commeātus, ūs, M., trip, relay.
dēsīderō, 1, v. tr., want, miss; pass., am lost.
inānis, -e, adj., empty.
aliquamdiū, adv., for some time.
exclūdō, 3, **-clūsī, -clūsum,** v. tr., shut out, prevent.
subsum, -esse, -fuī, v. irreg., am near.
necessāriō, adv., of necessity.
angustē, adv., narrowly, closely.
tranquillitās, -ātis, F., calm.

Sentence-Structure

If you compare a page of Caesar with a page of an English History, you will readily see that the sentences in Caesar are much longer and consequently fewer than in English. In English the narrative consists largely of independent statements, and the sentences contain one or more principal verbs with very few participial or subordinate constructions. In Latin the ideas are not expressed in this detached style, but one main idea is chosen and the subordinate ideas are grouped around it in participial and subordinate constructions. The English Style is called the Detached Style; the Latin Style is called the Periodic. In order to get a good idiomatic translation of a Latin sentence, it is often necessary to break it up into several detached sentences, and render Latin participles and subordinate verbs by principal verbs in English.

Exercises in Translation

A

His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo, et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit. —*Caesar* IV, 23.

Observe in the above extract:—

(*a*) There are five participles and one principal verb.

(*b*) The different movements are stated in the order of their occurrence.

(*c*) The one principal subject is maintained throughout.

Translation:—

The officers were then sent to their various posts; and now as wind and tide were both favorable at one and the same time, he gave the signal, weighed anchor, and after proceeding about seven miles from that point, moored his ships on an open and level shore.

B

Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae jusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse

intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent,—quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat,—optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.—*Caesar* IV, 30.

Observe:—

(*a*) The position of **quibus rebus cognitis** as the introductory words.

(*b*) The position of **principes Britanniae** as the subject, followed by the **qui** clause connected with it, also **colloquuti** describing the mode of operation.

(*c*) The **cum** clauses, giving the reasons for the action, placed before the principal verb.

(*d*) **duxerunt**, the sole principal verb.

Translation:—

On learning these facts, the chiefs of Britain who after the battle had assembled to carry out Caesar's orders, held a conference. They perceived that the Romans lacked cavalry, ships and grain. They also ascertained the small number of our soldiers from the smallness of the camp. This was even smaller for this reason because Caesar had transported the legions without baggage. (Accordingly) they concluded the best thing to do was to renew the war, keep our men from (procuring) grain and supplies and prolong the campaign into winter, because they were sure that if these were overcome or cut off from return, no one would (ever) after cross over into Britain for the purpose of carrying on war.

Consistency of Latin Style

Examine:—

(*a*) **Caesar, etsi nondum consilia eorum cognoverat, tamen legiones in acie pro castris constituit.**

Although *Caesar* was not yet aware of their plans, nevertheless *he* posted his legions in line of battle before the camp.

(*b*) **Barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant.**

When the plan of the Romans became known *to the barbarians, they* tried to prevent our men from landing.

(*c*) **Qua re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.**

This request was granted; and on being ordered to hand over their arms they do so.

(*d*) **Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos imperatoris mandata perferret, in vincula conjecerant.**

When *he* had landed from the ship and was delivering to them the orders of his commander, they had thrown *him* into chains.

These sentences illustrate the *compactness*, *brevity* and *consistency* of Latin style as compared with the English.

Latin as far as possible throughout the period or sentence—

(*a*) Makes the real subject the grammatical subject of the principal verb;

(*b*) Avoids change of subject;

(*c*) Places the subject at or near the beginning, thereby giving emphasis and prominence to it;

(*d*) Keeps a substantive in the same case.

NOTES

BOOK IV

Chapter 20

exigua parte—reliqua: abl. abs., equivalent to a concessive clause introduced by **etsi**, co-ordinate with the next clause: "*though but little of the summer remained, and in this district the winters set in early.*"

Note that **etsi** occurs in Caesar with the pres., impf., and plupf. indic.; never with the subj.

ad septentriones vergit: Caesar means that the rivers of Gaul outside the Provincia, *i.e.*, in the part occupied by the Aquitani, Celtae and Belgae, have a northerly course.

septentriones: properly the seven stars which form the constellation of the Great Bear, from **septem**, *seven*, and **-trio** = **strio**, *star*; cp. **stella** = **sterula**; German *Stern*, English *star*.

Britanniam: probably from the Celtic, **brit** or **brith**, *painted*, from the custom of the inhabitants staining their bodies with woad (*B.* V, 14). The name Albion given to it by Aristotle (De Mundo, 3) is perhaps from Celtic **alp**, **alb**, *high* or *white*; cp. Alpin, Albany (an old name for Scotland), Latin **albus**, **Alpes**.

quod—intellegebat: cp. *B.* III, 9, where he mentions the fact that the Nannetes and the Veneti sent for aid to Britain to carry on their war against the Romans. Dion Cassius says that Caesar's motive in crossing to Britain was simply this, to be the first Roman who visited the island. Suetonius attributes the expedition to avarice, mentioning the rich pearl fisheries as the inducement.

bellis Gallicis: "*in the wars against the Gauls.*" Either (1) abl. of Time When, or (2) Time 'within which,' H. L., 116, 3, or (3) Local abl. with **in** omitted, H. L., 119, 5.

subministrata sc. **esse**: "*had been secretly supplied.*" Note the force of **sub** in composition.

si—deficeret: "*even though the time of the year should be insufficient for carrying on a regular campaign*": subj. in a subordinate clause in Oratio Obliqua, H. L., 269, 8. Caesar started on his first expedition to Britain near the end of August (see note on Chapter 23).

magno sibi usui fore (=**futurum esse**): *"it would be of great advantage to him"*: **usui**, dat. of Purpose, H. L., 228, 2. The clauses **si—adisset—perspexisset—cognovisset** are subjects of **fore**; the plupf. subj. represents the fut. pf. indic. in Oratio Recta, **magno mihi usui erit, si adiero—perspexero—cognovero**, H. L., 269, 8.

loca, portus, aditus: note the Asyndeton.

quae—incognita: this statement is not correct. Caesar himself says (*B.* III, 8): **naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.**

neque enim—quisquam: **neque enim** implies an ellipsis, *"and (we can readily imagine this) for nobody goes there without good reason."* —**temere**, *at random*, *rashly*, opposed to **consulto.**

mercatores: may be either Greeks from Massilia (now *Marseilles*) or Romans from Provincia (now *Provence*) in Southern Gaul, who followed in the wake of the army to purchase booty and sell provisions.

Gallias: the divisions of Gaul—Belgica, Celtica, Aquitania.

neque: join with **reperire poterat.**

esset—incolerent—haberent—uterentur—essent: subj. in Indirect Question after **reperire**, H. L., 200, 4.

Note that **poterat** implies repeated action; **potuit** would have meant that he called the traders on a single occasion.

Chapter 21

ad haec cognoscenda: join with **praemittit.**

priusquam periculum faceret: *"before running the risk," "before making the attempt."* Note that the subj. mood expresses intention on the part of Caesar; H. L., 260, 6. Observe the meaning of **periculum,** *"trial"*; cp. **experior,** *πειράομαι πεῖρα.*

C. Volusenum; his full name was Caius Volusenus Quadratus. He held the office of *tribunus militum* and was employed by Caesar on several occasions. He aided in putting down Commius, king of the Atrebates, and as *tribunus plebis* in 43 B.C. supported Marc Antony. In *B.* III, 5, Caesar speaks of him in the highest terms in connection with the battle of the Nervii—**vir et magni consilii et virtutis**: Commius is also mentioned, *B.* IV, 27; V, 22; VI, 6; VII, 76, 79.

navi longa: ships of war—**naves longae**—were long and narrow, fitted for swift sailing; ships of burden—**naves onerariae**—were bulky, with round bottoms, fitted for carrying as large a cargo as possible.

mandat: "*he charges*"; **mando** implies confidence in the person intrusted with a commission.

Morinos: The Morini inhabited the sea coast of Gallia Belgica. Their name is from the Celtic **mor**, "*sea*"; cp. **Armorica.** They occupied the district from the Scaldis (now *Scheldt*) on the east to the Samara (now *Somme*) on the west. Their chief town was Gesoriacum, afterwards Bononia, whence the modern *Boulogne.*

The **brevissimus trajectus** was, of course, the Straits of Dover, which is 28 miles in width between Calais and Dover; see note *B.* IV, 23.

Veneticum bellum: this war was carried on in 56 B.C., in consequence of the revolt of the Veneti and other states of north-western Gaul. Owing to the difficulty of getting at them by land, Caesar attacked them by sea and defeated them (*B.* III, 8-16) in the bay of *Quiberon.* Their chief town was Vindana (now *St. Orient*).

ejus = Caesaris.

per mercatores: H. L., 292, 5 (*b*).

perlato: "*reported.*"

qui polliceantur: "*to promise*"; **qui** *Final*, H. L., 232, 2.

dare: for **se daturos esse.** The pres. infin. after verbs expressing *hope, promise, undertake* is an irregularity in good prose. The comic poets Terence and Plautus, sometimes use the English idiom. The pres. infin. may convey the idea that the promise will be at once fulfilled.

quibus auditis: (1) abl. abs.; or (2) possibly dative after **pollicitus**; "*making kind promises to them after they were heard.*"

ut—permaneret: "*to adhere to that resolution*"; Substantive Clause of Purpose, H. L., 240, 2.

Atrebatis superatis: the Atrebates, a people of Gallia Belgica, occupied what was once called *Artois* (probably a corruption of the name, but now called *Pas-de-Calais*). Others say that *Arras* (Flemish *Autrecht*) is a corrupt form of the word.

They were defeated by Caesar at the river Sabis (now *Sambre*) in 57 B.C. (*B.* II, 23). A portion of them, after this defeat, crossed over to Britain and settled in the valley of the Thames, probably in Berkshire. The fact that Commius was king of the Atrebates on the continent may have influenced Caesar in sending him to treat with his countrymen in Britain.

magni—habebatur: "*was considered of great value*"; **magni**, gen. of Value, H. L., 290, 4.

huic = **Commio.**

imperat—civitates: construe **imperat (ut) adeat civitates quas possit**, "*he orders him to visit (all) the states he can*"; **adeat**, Substantive Clause of Purpose, H. L., 240, 2; **possit**, subj. in Oratio Obliqua, H. L., 265, 2; Primary Sequence, H. L., 198, 4, 5. The **ut** is sometimes omitted with verbs of 'command': *B.* III, 3, **huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat.**

eo: "*thither*" = **in Britanniam.**

ut—fidem sequantur: "*to be loyal to,*" literally, "*to accept the protection of.*"

seque: construe **imperatque huic ut nuntiet se (Caesarem) celeriter esse venturum.**

perspectis regionibus: "*after ascertaining the character of the country*"; so also **cognoscere regiones**, *B.* III, 7.

quantum potuit: "*as far as his opportunity allowed him,*" literally, "*as much (of) opportunity as could be afforded him.*"—**facultatis**, Partitive gen., H. L., 287, 4.

qui—auderet: "*inasmuch as he did not dare.*" Causal rel. and subj., H. L., 252, 4.

navi egredi: Caesar uses both **navi egredi** and **ex navi egredi.**

perspexisset: subj. in Indirect Question after Historic Present.—**quae**, acc. neut. pl. of **quis, quae, quid.**

Chapter 22

dum—moratur: **dum**, meaning 'while,' always takes the indicative in Caesar, except in *B.* VII, 82.

qui—excusarent—pollicerentur: "*to excuse themselves—and to promise*"; **qui** Final, H. L., 232, 2.

temporis: Descriptive Gen., H. L., 288, 5. This refers to the events mentioned in *B.* III, 28. After the rest of Northern Gaul had submitted to Caesar, the Menapii and Morini suddenly attacked the Romans.

homines barbari: "*as barbarous people,*" "*being (as they were) barbarians.*"

nostrae consuetudinis: he refers to the mercy shown by the Romans to those who submitted to their sway.

populo: dat.: the construction of **bellum facere populo Romano** is formed on the analogy of **bellum inferre populo Romano**, H. L., 229, 4.

fecissent: Virtual Oratio Obliqua, H. L., 253, 6.

seque: construe **pollicerentur se facturos ea quae imperasset**: **pollicerentur** is co-ordinate with **qui excusarent.**—**imperasset**: plupf. subj. in O.O. representing the fut. pf. indic. in O.R., 'what you shall have ordered, we shall do,' H. L., 269, 8.

hoc—arbitratus: "*Caesar thinking that this was a tolerably good streak of luck.*" Note that the pf. part. of a deponent verb is usually translated into English by a pres. part., H. L., 163, 2 (*b*), 3.

quod—volebat—habebat—judicabat: indic. as giving Caesar's own reasons, H. L., 252, 2.

has—anteponendas: "*that occupation with such trifling matters should take precedence over* (*his expedition to*) *Britain.*"—**anteponendas (esse)**, H. L., 189, Gerundival Infinitive.—**sibi**: dat. of Agent, H. L., 188, 4.—**Britanniae**: dat. after a compound verb, H. L., 229, 5, Note.—**Britanniae = bello Britannico.** This condensed mode of comparison is sometimes found in poetry: Shakespeare, Coriolanus, Act II, Sc. 2, 21: *His ascent is not as easy as those who = His ascent is not so easy as that of those who, &c.*

iis—numerum imperavit: **impero** in the sense of "*command*" takes a dative of person "*commanded*": meaning "*levy, demand from,*" it takes dative of person and acc. of thing.

quibus: refers to the hostages; **eos**, to the Morini.

in fidem recepit: "*he received under his protection*"; see *B.* IV, 21.

coactis contractisque: the first participle implies that the ships were collected under compulsion: the second that they merely assembled: "*having been pressed into service and brought to one place.*" They probably assembled at *Boulogne*, which was also the rendezvous of the French under Napoleon I when he intended to attack England in 1802 A.D.

duas legiones: the 7th and the 10th.

quicquid—navium longarum = omnes naves; for Partitive gen., see H. L., 287, 4. For this use of **quicquid**, cp. Livy, III, 9; **per quicquid deorum est = per omnes deos.**

ab millibus—octo: "*at a distance of eight miles.*" The transports were at *Ambleteuse* eight miles north of *Boulogne.*

quominus = ut eo minus: "*so that . . . not*"; H. L., 248, 8, 9.

deducendum dedit: for the gerundive with **do**, see H. L., 187, 9.

Sabino et—Cottae: both highly esteemed **legati** of Caesar. They both fell in the ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones, *B.* V, 37.

Menapii: a people of Gallia Belgica, who inhabited both sides of the Rhine. Their chief town was Castellum Menapiorum (now *Kessel*).

Chapter 23

his constitutis rebus: express this in various ways; H. L., 204, 6.

tertia vigilia: the time between sunset and sunrise was divided into four watches, each of which was about three hours long. Caesar set out with the infantry for Britain at midnight, August 26th, from Port Itius which is generally supposed to be *Boulogne* at the estuary of the *Somme.*

solvit: "*he set sail*": we find **solvere** or **solvere naves**, "*to set sail*": for the former see also *B.* IV, 28; for the latter *B.* IV, 36: V, 8.

ulteriorem portum: further north than *Boulogne*: cp. IV, 28, where it is called **portus superior.** The cavalry were detained wind-bound at *Ambleteuse*, eight miles north of *Boulogne.*

naves conscendere: we also find **in naves conscendere**, "*to embark.*" The cavalry did not start till three days afterwards, *i.e.*, August 30th.

a quibus—administratum: "*as his orders were carried out somewhat slowly by them.*"

ipse: notice that this pronoun when used alone generally refers to Caesar.

hora—quarta: as sunrise at this time of the year would be about 5 a.m. and sunset about 7 p.m., and an hour would be 1 hour and 10 minutes of our time, Caesar would arrive in Britain about 10 a.m.

expositas: here = **instructas**, "*drawn up.*"

haec: "*the following.*" **natura**: "*the character.*"

adeo: join with **angustis**, "*so precipitous.*" This statement applies to *Dover Cliffs.*

in litus: "*upon the beach*" = "*to the water's edge*"; cp. Celsus (Dig. 50, 16, 96), **litus est quousque maximus fluctus a mari pervenit.** Distinguish **litus**, the part of the shore washed by the water; **ripa**, the bank of a river; **ora**, the land on the shore.

ad egrediendum: sc. **ex navibus**, "*for disembarking*"; see note *B.* IV, 21.

nequaquam idoneum: "*by no means suitable,*" "*altogether unsuited.*"

dum—convenirent: for subj., see H. L., 259, 7.

in ancoris exspectavit: "*waited at anchor.*"

legatis—convocatis: as the *imperator*, *tribuni militum*, and first centurions, *primipili*, formed the council of war, Caesar may mean that this was held.

quae—cognosset, quae—vellet: subj. in Indirect Question, H. L., 200, 3.

monuitque—administrarentur: the first and second **ut**='as'; the third **ut** is closely connected with **quae=cum ea** or **quippe quae**, "*inasmuch as these,*" so that **ut** connecting **monuit** with **administrarentur** is omitted: "*and warned them that all his orders should be carried out at a nod and at the right moment, as the method of military tactics* (*and*) *especially as naval tactics demanded, inasmuch as these involved rapid and uncertain movements.*" For the omission of **ut** after **monuit**, see note on **imperat—adeat**, *B.* IV, 21.—**postularent** is subj. in Virtual Oratio Obliqua after **monuit**.—**haberent** is Causal subj., H. L., 252, 4.

sublatis ancoris: "*having weighed anchor.*"

septem—progressus: Caesar may have gone either N.E. or S.W. of *Dover*. The former course would land him between *Deal* and *Walmer Castle;* the latter at *Hythe* or *Lymne*.

Chapter 24

at: generally denotes a transition in the narrative.

praemisso—essedariis: **praemisso** agrees with **equitatu**, the nearest word, though it applies also to **essedariis**.—The word **essedum** or **esseda** is said to be from the Celtic **ess**, 'a chariot.' The **essedarii** included the **aurigae**, 'drivers' (*B.* IV, 33), who were the nobles, and the **clientes**, 'retainers,' who were the fighting men; cp. Tacitus (Ag. 12): **auriga honestior**; **clientes propugnant**. This was the reverse of the Homeric custom, where the driver was a mere attendant, and the warrior was the important man. In each chariot there were usually six warriors and the driver.

quo—genere: "*a kind of fighting force which.*" This statement does not harmonize with that of Tacitus (Ag. 12): **in pedite robur**; **quaedam nationes et curru proeliantur.**

consuerunt = **consueverunt.**

reliquis copiis = **cum reliquis copiis**: Caesar and Livy often omit preposition with abl. of Accompaniment; H. L., 293, 3, (*b*).

egredi prohibebant: note that **prohibeo** takes acc. with infin.

militibus—desiliendum (erat): "*the soldiers had to leap down.*"—**militibus**; dat. of Agent, H. L., 187, 3; 188,4, (*b*).

illi: this pronoun is regularly used to represent "*the enemy.*"

"*The soldiers moreover, ignorant of the locality, with their hands encumbered and burdened with the great and heavy weight of armor had at one and the same time to leap down from the ships, and get a firm footing amid the waves, and fight with the enemy, whereas they either from dry ground or after advancing a short distance into the water, with all their limbs unencumbered, and on ground quite familiar to them, kept boldly hurling their darts, and spurring on their horses trained* (*to such warfare.*)" For the abl. abs. see H. L., 159, 4, (b).

hujus—imperiti: "*wholly unskilled in this kind of fighting.*"

uti; **utebantur**: "*employ,*" "*display.*"

Chapter 25

et—et: "*both . . . and.*"

specie: "*appearance*" embracing shape, size, color.

inusitatior: "*somewhat unfamiliar*": for force of comparative see H. L., 88, 6.

motus—expeditior: "*movement in actual service less difficult.*" The **naves onerariae** were unwieldly compared with the **naves longae**, as the former were broader and heavier.

naves longas: join with **jussit removeri—incitari—constitui.**

remis incitari: "*to be rowed rapidly forward.*" **ad latus apertum**: "*on the exposed flank,*" *i.e.*, the 'right.' Their left was protected by their shields.

fundis—tormentis: the slingers (**funditores**) and bowmen (**sagittarii**) belonged to the light-armed infantry (**velites**), see p. 14: for **tormenta**, see p. 15.

propelli ac summoveri: "*to be driven off and dislodged.*"

quae res: "*this movement.*"

usui nostris: for the two datives see H. L., 228, 2.

paulum modo: "*a short distance only,*" "*just a little.*"

atque: rarely found at the beginning of a new sentence, marking a contrast between what precedes and what follows: "*and then.*"

nostris—cunctantibus: "*while our men were wavering*": abl. abs., H. L., 160 (*c*).

qui—aquilam ferebat=aquilifer: see p. 17.

decimae legionis: Caesar's favorite legion: *B.* I, 40; **Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.** The legions were numbered according to the order of enlistment.

contestatus deos: "*appealing to the gods.*" The Romans seldom entered upon any important undertaking without an appropriate prayer to the deity or deities likely to aid them.

ea res: "*this undertaking,*" "*this action.*"

legioni: dat. of Indirect Object, H. L., 284, 1.

nisi—vultis: to lose the standard was looked upon as most disgraceful, especially to the standard-bearer, since this would be a violation of the military oath (**sacramentum**) which bound the soldier "not to desert the standard through a desire to escape or through fear, nor to leave the ranks." To arouse the soldiers, the standard was sometimes thrown into the midst of the enemy.

ego certe officium praestitero: "*I, at least, shall have done my duty.*" The fut. pf. is used because the eagle-bearer looks on his duty as having been completed by the act.

aquilam ferre: = "*to advance.*"

inter se: "*each other,*" "*one another.*" Latin has no reciprocal pronoun corresponding to the Greek ἀλλήλων.

dedecus: *i.e.*, the loss of the eagle.

hos—conspexissent: "*likewise when those on board the nearest ships had observed these*"; with **ex proximis navibus**, cp. **ex equo (equis) pugnare**, "*to fight on horseback.*"

Chapter 26

pugnatum est: H. L., 155, 5.

acriter: note the emphatic position.

nostri: join with **perturbabantur.**

Note throughout the chapter the frequent use of the impf. to express repeated or continuous action.

atque alius alia ex navi : **quod** is still understood after **atque** : *"and further because one from one ship and another from another."*

quibuscumque—occurrerat—aggregabat : *"kept joining themselves to whatever standards they met."* The verbs are sing., agreeing with **alius**.—For the tenses expressing repeated action in the past, see H. L., 263, 8.—**signis** : dat. with a compound of **ob (oc)**, H. L., 229, 4.

ubi—conspexerant : *"whenever they saw"*; cp. **occurrerat** above.

ex litore : cp. **ex arido** (*B.* IV, 24).

singulares : *"in scattered bodies."*

plures : *"a large number."*

alii—conjiciebant : *"others on the exposed flank (right side) kept hurling their darts on the massed forces (of the Romans)."*

ab latere aperto : see note on **ad litus apertum** (*B.* IV, 25).—For the force of **ab** ; cp. **a fronte**, 'in front'; **ab oriente sole**, 'on the east.'

speculatoria navigia : *"spy boats"* of light construction used for scouting purposes, and hence quick-sailing craft.

quos conspexerat : *"(all) whom he saw in distress"*; for tense see **occurrerat** above.

suis—consecutis : *"after all their comrades joined them."*

neque—potuerunt : *"but they were not able to pursue (the enemy) any great distance."*

longius : for force of comparative see H. L., 88, 6.

quod—potuerunt : they were wind-bound at *Ambleteuse.*

ad : *"in accordance with."*

Caesari : for dat., see H. L., 229, 4 ; 208, 8. *"This was the only break in Caesar's habitual good fortune."*

Chapter 27

daturos : the full form would be **se daturos esse.**

imperasset : = **imperavisset** ; Oratio Obliqua representing fut. pf. indic. in Oratio Recta, H. L., 269, 8.

supra demonstraveram : *B.* IV, 21. The perf. would be more usual.

praemissum : sc. **esse.**

cum—deferret : *"though he was delivering to them the orders of his commander in the character of an ambassador (or spokesman)."*—**cum** Narrative, H. L., 204, 4 ; or Concessive, 255, Note.

ut (sibi) ignosceretur: "*that it should be pardoned to them*" = "*to be pardoned*": subj. in Substantive Clause of Purpose, H. L., 240, 2.—For impersonal use, see H. L., 178, 2.

quod bellum intulissent: "*of their having commenced hostilities*"; Virtual O.O., H. L., 253, 6.

cum—petissent: "*though they had of their own accord sent ambassadors to the continent and had sought peace from him.*"

ignoscere: sc. **se.**

arcessitam: "*after they had been summoned.*"

remigrare in agros: "*to return to their own lands.*" **agri** may mean either '*districts*' or '*farm lands.*'

Chapter 28

his rebus: either "*on these terms*" or "*by these means.*"

post diem quartum quam: **post** is regarded as a prep. governing **diem**; but really goes with **quam**, forming **postquam**. The simpler but less usual form would be **die quarto postquam**. Since, in reckoning time, the Romans counted inclusively, this in English would be "*three days after.*"

est ventum: used impersonally; sc. **Caesari** = **Caesar venit**: "*after Caesar's arrival in Britain.*"

supra demonstratum est: see previous note; "*mention has been made above.*"

superiore portu: *Ambleteuse*, north of *Boulogne*, called **portus ulterior** in *B.* IV, 23.

solverunt: "*set sail,*" "*started,*" applied absolutely to **naves** after the analogy of **solvere naves** used transitively; see *B.* IV, 23.

sed aliae—referrentur; aliae—dejicerentur: the **ut** Consecutive is still understood with these clauses, H. L., 203, 1, 2.

propius solis occasum: "*further west,*" literally "*nearer the sunset.*"

Caesar is said to have been the first to use **propius** as a preposition.

magno sui cum periculo: "*at great danger to themselves*"; **sui** is Objective Gen., H. L., 287, 3.

quae—petierunt: "*These, nevertheless, cast anchor, but, since they were being filled by the waves, of necessity they put out to sea in the face of night and made for the continent.*"

tamen: means in spite of the storm raging. Evidently the anchors prevented the boats from riding the waves and so they were in danger of being swamped.

adversa nocte: some render "*though the night was stormy*" or "*in a foul night*"; abl. abs.; though possibly abl. of Time When.

Chapter 29

eadem nocte: the night of 30th Aug., 55 B.C.

maritimos aestus: spring tides occur a day after full moon, and new moon. The spring tides at *Dover* are said to rise to the height of 19 feet; at *Boulogne*, to the height of 25 feet.

incognitum: in the Mediterranean there are no tides or very slight ones at certain points. One would have supposed that Caesar's soldiers would have observed the phenomena of tides in the war against the Veneti fought the previous year (*B.* III, 12). The influence of the moon on tides was known to Cicero (De Divin. 2, 14): **quid de fretis aut de maritimis aestibus dicam? quorum accessus et recessus** (flow and ebb) **lunae motu gubernantur.** This work was not published till 44 B.C., eleven years after Caesar's first expedition to Britain.

uno tempore: "*at one and the same time.*"

exercitum—curaverat: "*had had his army brought over.*" For this use of the Gerundive, see H. L., 187, 9.

subduxerat: **naves subducere**, "*to haul vessels on shore,*" "*to beach,*" opposed to **naves deducere**, "*to launch vessels.*"

et—adflictabat: "*and the storm kept dashing the transports about which were riding at anchor.*"—**onerarias**, sc. **naves.** Note the force of the imperfect frequentative **adflictabat.**

aut—auxiliandi: "*either of managing (their own ships) or of lending aid (to others).*"

compluribus—inutiles: "*since several vessels were wrecked and since the rest were unfit for sailing owing to the loss of their cables, anchors, and the rest of their tackling.*" The first abl. abs. is Causal, and co-ordinate with the Causal **cum** clause. The second abl. abs. is also Causal.

id quod necesse erat accidere: "*as was unavoidable.*"

quibus—possent: **quibus**: abl. of Means and Final Relative, hence **possent.** H. L., 232, 2.

usui: dat of Purpose, H. L., 228, 2.

quod—oportere: "*because it was understood by all that the winter ought to be passed in Gaul.*" **omnibus constat**: we also find **inter omnes constat**; **omnibus** is dat.—**hiemari oportere**: literally "*it ought to be wintered.*"—**in hiemem**: "*for the winter*"; Time Prospective, H. L., 117, 6.

Chapter 30

For the translation of this chapter see p. 59. **quibus rebus cognitis**: express this in different ways.

principes: subject to **duxerunt**; see end of Chapter 27.

ad ea facienda: in how many ways may this be expressed? See H. L. 232, 3.

optimum factu: supine in **-u**; H. L., 180, 3.

his superatis—interclusis: Conditional abl. abs. = **si hi superati et interclusi essent.**

ac—deducere: "*and withdraw their men secretly from the country,*" *i.e.*, from the interior to the sea coast.

Chapter 31

ex eventu navium suarum: "*from what had happened to his ships*": Objective Gen., H. L., 287, 3.

ex eo quod: "*from this fact that,*" defined by the clause following.

fore—suspicabatur: "*he began to suspect that this would happen which actually did happen.*"

ad—comparabat: "*he made provision for all emergencies.*" **subsidia** (plural) elsewhere in Caesar means "*reserves*"; (the singular) "*the act of bringing aid.*"

cotidie: "*daily,*" implying repetition: **in dies**, **in diem**, "*daily,*" implying increase or diminution.

quae—naves earum = **earum navium quae**: the antecedent is expressed in the relative clause.

aere: "*metal*"; the word **aes** seems to be a general word for all metals, except gold or silver; bronze or copper was generally employed in shipbuilding as these did not corrode.

quae—erant: the antecedent is **ea** understood. **usui**: see note Chapter 25.

cum—administraretur: "*since the work was carried on with the greatest zeal on the part of the soldiers*"; **cum** Causal, H. L., 252, 3.

duodecim navibus amissis: "*though twelve ships were lost*": concessive abl. abs.

reliquis effecit: "*he so arranged matters that the voyage could be conveniently made with the rest*": literally "*he brought it to pass that it could be sailed.*"—**reliquis**, abl. of Means or Instrument.—Note with a pass. infin. **navigari** that **posset** is impersonal.

Chapter 32

dum geruntur: see note Chapter 22.

ex consuetudine: "*in accordance with custom,*" "*as was the custom.*" The foraging was generally done by the 7th legion: the severe fighting, by the 10th.

frumentatum: supine: H. L., 180, 2.

neque ulla—interposita: "*and though no suspicion of war up to the present had arisen*": Concessive abl. abs.—Note that Latin requires **neque ullus**, not **et nullus** for "*and no.*"

cum pars hominum: "*since some of the people,*" *i.e.*, the Britons.

in agris: "*on their lands.*"

pars—ventitaret: "(*while*) *others were coming and going to the camp* (*i.e., of the Romans*)."

in statione: "*on sentry duty.*" For the gates of a Roman camp see page 18. The sentries at the gates of the camp were called **stationes**; **excubiae** were day or night guards; **vigiliae** were night guards only; **custodiae**, guards of the fortifications. The night guard was inspected every three hours by **circuitores**, who were changed at the end of every watch.

quam consuetudo ferret: "*than custom admitted of,*" "*than usual.*" The subj. is either (1) in a subordinate clause in Oratio Obliqua, or (2) the clause is Consecutive.

in ea parte—in quam partem: the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause is frequent in Caesar. In English omit the antecedent in the relative clause.

id quod erat: "*the actual state of affairs,*" "*what really was the fact.*"

aliquid consili: "*some new design had been formed*": Part. Gen., H. L., 287, 4: the inf. clause is in apposition to **id**.

cohortes : join this with **jussit.**

in stationibus : *"on the outposts," "on guard"*; cp. **in statione,** page 74.

in stationem succedere : *"to take their place on guard"* :

Note the idea of motion conveyed by **succedere**, and hence the accus.

armari=**se armare** : the passive in Latin is sometimes used with a reflexive meaning corresponding to the Greek middle.

confestim : *"immediately"*: note the emphatic position of the adverb : from the same root as **festino**, *"hasten."*

aegre sustinere sc. **hostes**, *"with difficulty were keeping the enemy in check."*

conferta legione : the abl. abs. is equivalent to a Causal clause giving the reason why the Romans were exposed to a cross-fire : *"since the legion was massed together."*

conjici : sc. **in eam.** Caesar might have written **in confertam legionem—conjici.**

nam quod : *"for since."* Join **nam** with **delituerant,** and **quod** with **erat.**

"for, because, the corn having been reaped from all other parts, one part was left, etc." = *"for, since the corn had been reaped from all parts but one, the enemy, suspecting that our men would come there, had concealed themselves in the night-time in the woods."*

dispersos—occupatos : sc. **nostros** : *"then having attacked our men while scattered, with their arms laid down (piled up), and while engaged in reaping."*

incertis—ordinibus : Causal abl. abs. : *"since their ranks were in confusion."* The Romans were scattered and could not take their places in the line.

circumdederant : sc. **nostros.**

Chapter 33

genus—pugnae : *"the following is their mode of fighting on war chariots."*—**pugnae**=**pugnandi.** With **ex essedis pugna,** cp. **ex equis pugnare,** *"to fight on horseback."*

per omnes partes, *i.e.*, up and down between the two armies.

ipso terrore equorum : *"by the sheer terror caused by their horses"* : Subjective Gen., H. L., 287, 2.

cum—insinuaverunt: "*when once they work their way.*"

For **cum** with pf. indic. in the subordinate clause expressing a repeated act in the present see H. L., 263, 9.—The British charioteers drove into the spaces between the cavalry squadrons of their own troops. The warriors (**essedarii**) would then dismount, and the drivers (**aurigae**) retreat to the rear.

desiliunt: sc. **essedarii**, *i.e.*, "*the warriors*": see note on **praemisso —essedariis**, *B.* IV, 24.

praestant: "*display,*" "*combine.*"

tantum—efficiunt: "*they become so expert by daily experience and practise.*"

in—loco: "*when the ground is sloping and even steep.*" This construction where **in** with the abl. is used with the same force as an abl. abs. is sometimes called the Prepositional abl. abs. This arises from the want of a present participle of the verb **sum**.

brevi: sc. **tempore**: "*in a moment.*"

per temonem: "*along the pole.*"

Chapter 34

quibus rebus: either (1) abl. of Cause "*owing to these tactics,*" "*wherefore*"; or (2) abl. abs. "*when matters were in this state,*" "*under these circumstances*"; or (removing the commas and considering **nostris** dat. instead of abl. abs.) (3) abl. of Means with **perturbatis** "*to our men confused by these tactics from the fact that the mode of fighting was new.*"

namque = Greek καὶ γάρ: "*and* (*this was evident*) *for*"; **namque** in Caesar and Cicero is usually used before a vowel and is always the first word of its clause.

quo—facto: "*though this was done*"; Concessive abl. abs.

ad lacessendum: "*for skirmishing with the enemy.*"

alienum: "*unfavorable*": **alienus** is rarely applied to things and when it is, it is opposed to **suus** or **opportunus**; cp. **locus suus**, "*ground of his own choosing,*" hence "*favorable*": **tempus suum**, "*time chosen by himself.*" **suo loco** = **in suo loco**; the prep. **in** is often omitted with **locus**.

quae—continerent: subj. of Result = **tantae ut continerent**: "*so great that they kept our men inside the camp.*"—**castris**: see **suo loco**, previous note.

praedicaverunt: "*they openly boasted*": distinguish in meaning **praedīco** and **praedĭco.**

quanta facultas—daretur: "*what a fine opportunity was being offered them*"; subj. in Indirect Question, H. L., 200.

praedae faciendae: "*of securing booty*"; **facere praedam** does not occur elsewhere in Caesar.

in perpetuum: "*forever.*"

sui liberandi: with the genitives **mei, tui, sŭi, nostri, vestri,** the Gerund or Gerundive form in **-di** is used, without reference to the gender or number of the pronoun, H. L., 187, 8.

si—expulissent: "*if they succeeded in driving out*"; subj. in Virtual O.O. representing the fut. pf. indic.—**si expuleritis**—in O.R., H. L., 269, 8.

his rebus: "*by these representations.*"

Chapter 35

etsi: join with **videbat**: see note *B.* IV, 20.

idem: subject of fore and explained by the appositive **ut** clause.

ut—effugerent: "*that they would escape owing to their speed.*" The Britons were armed with a long sword and a light buckler. What was the armor of the legionary soldier? See page 16.

si essent—pulsi: subj. in Virtual O.O., representing the fut. pf. indic.—**si erunt pulsi**—in O.R., H. L., 269, 8.

diutius: join with **non**; "*they could not for any length of time withstand.*"

quos—potuerunt: "*and pursuing them over as great a distance as* (= *as far as*) *their strength and speed allowed.*"—**tanto spatio**: abl. where we would have expected the acc. of Extent of Space.—**cursu et viribus**: abl. of Instrument.

occiderunt: sc. **nostri milites.**

Chapter 36

his—numerum—duplicavit: = **his duplicem numerum imperavit; his** is dat. of Indirect Object.

quem—imperaverat: see *B.* IV, 27.

propinqua die aequinoctii: Causal abl. abs.; "*as the day of the equinox was near.*" This was the period of equinoctial gales. As Caesar

landed in Britain on Aug. 27th, and left (according to Napoleon III) probably Sept. 11th or 12th, we can see how stubbornly the Britons must have resisted his landing, since he got no farther than the shore in his first expedition.—**dies** is fem. in the sing. when it refers to a fixed or set day.

infirmis—navibus: Causal abl. abs.; "*since his ships were unseaworthy.*"

hiemi—existimabat: "*he did not think that the voyage ought to be exposed to* (*the risk of*) *a storm.*"—**hiemi**: dat. with a compound of **sub—**, H. L., 229, 4.—**subjiciendam**: sc. **esse**; Gerundival infin., H. L., 189.

naves solvit: see note on **solvit**, *B.* IV, 23.

eosdem portus capere: "*to make the same ports,*" see note on **tertia vigilia**, *B.* IV, 23.

infra: "*further,*" down the channel, *i.e.*, below *Boulogne.*

Chapter 37

essent expositi: The full phrase is **milites ex navibus in terram exponere.** This clause refers to the **duae onerariae,** referred to at the end of the preceding chapter.

proficiscens: "*on his departure.*"

pacatos: see *B.* IV, 22.

non ita magno numero: "*with not a very large number*"; this use of **ita** is confined to negative sentences.

circumsteterunt: sc. **nostros milites,** which is also to be supplied as the object of **jusserunt.**

si—nollent: subj. in Virtual O.O. after **jusserunt.**

orbe facto: in cases of extreme danger, the Roman soldiers formed a circle with their faces to the enemy and their baggage in the centre. We should say "*forming a hollow square.*"

celeriter: note the emphatic position of the adverb.

suis auxilio: for the two datives, see H. L., 228, 1, 2.

horis: abl. of Comparison after **amplius**; cp. **amplius octingentos equites habere,** *B.* IV, 12; **amplius, plus, minus, longius,** may or may not affect the syntax of the accompanying words.

paucis—acceptis: "*with trifling loss.*"

Chapter 38

qui rebellionem fecerant: "*who had recommenced hostilities*"; "*who had renewed the war.*"

siccitates: either (1) "*continued droughts*" or (2) "*droughts in several localities.*"

quo se reciperent non haberent: "*had no place to betake themselves to.*" **quo—reciperent**; Final Rel. Adv. and Subj., H. L., 232, 2.—It might mean "*did not know where to betake themselves*"; **habeo**, like Greek *ἔχω*, sometimes has this meaning; **reciperent** would then be subjunctive in Indirect Question, representing a deliberative subjunctive —**quo nos recipiamus**—in O.R.

quo—usi: **quo** is attracted into the case of **perfugio**; "*which they had used as a refuge.*"

omnino: "*in all.*"

ex litteris: "*in accordance with a despatch from Caesar.*"

BOOK V

Chapter 1

Lucio Domitio Appio Claudio consulibus: The **et** is often left out between the names of the consuls in a phrase of this kind. The year was 54 B.C. The consuls entered office on January 1st. Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus belonged to the **optimates.** He fell at Pharsalia, 48 B.C., by the hand of Marc Antony. Appius Claudius was brother of the notorious Clodius, killed by Milo. He was also one of the **optimates.**

ab hibernis: these winter camps were among the Belgae (*B.* IV., 38).

in Italiam = in Galliam Cisalpinam: Italy proper did not till 27 B.C. include Gallia Cisalpina, Liguria, and Illyricum, though as here it was often applied to the country south of the Alps. Caesar during his Gallic wars usually spent the winter at Luca or Ravenna.

consuerat = consueverat.

legatis—curarent: "*he orders his staff officers, whom he had appointed over the legions, to have as many ships as possible built during the winter, and the old ones repaired.*" Note the sequence **imperat—uti—curarent,**

as **imperat** is an historical present.—**possent**: Virtual O.O. For the gerundive with **curo**, see H. L., 187, 9.

modum formamque: "*the size and style.*"

subductiones: "*hauling up*" on land, or "*beaching*" (cf. *B.* IV., 29). The plural is used because more than one vessel is referred to. Explain **naves subducere, naves deducere.**

humiliores: sc., **naves**: "*lower.*" The vessels had less elevation above the water.

quam quibus = **quam (eas naves) quibus.**

in nostro mari: the Mediterranean.

id eo magis: sc. **facit**: "*and he does this the more* (= *and all the more*) *for the following reason.*"

propter crebras commutationes: he refers to the varying currents in the Channel.

ad onera: sc. **transportanda** from the **transportandam** following.—**transportandam** agrees with the nearest noun.

in reliquis maribus: the different parts of the Mediterranean were known under different names.

actuarias: "*furnished with oars*" as well as with sails. Note that **impero** can be used with acc. and inf. when the infinitive is passive. What would be the more usual construction? **retrahi imperat**: cp. *B.* V, 7.

usui: dat. of Purpose, H. L., 228, 1.

ad armandas naves: "*for equipping vessels.*" Spain supplied metal, cables, rigging, etc.

conventibus: Caesar as **proconsul** held assizes or courts at the chief cities of Northern Italy.

Galliae citerioris = **Galliae Cisalpinae.**

a Pirustis: the Pirustae were a tribe occupying the modern *Herzegovina.*

qui doceant: "*to inform him*"; Final Rel. and Subj., H. L., 232, 2.

paratos satisfacere = **paratos (esse) ad satisfaciendum**: the infin. after **paratos esse** is on the analogy of **velle** which takes the infin.

percepta: "*having been listened to.*"

ad certain diem: "*by a stated day*"; Time Prospective, H. L., 117, 6.

nisi—fecerint: subj. of Virtual O.O. in Primary Sequence, representing fut. pf. indic.—**nisi feceritis**—in O.R., H. L., 269, 8.

arbitros: "*assessors*," "*arbitrators.*"

qui—aestiment—constituant: see **qui doceant**, page 80.—**litis aestimatio** in criminal law is the assessment of the amount of damages which a convicted person has to pay.

Chapter 2

citeriorem Galliam = Galliam Cisalpinam.

revertitur: give the principal parts; generally **revertor** is to return before completing one's journey: **redeo**, after completing it.

ad exercitum: after wintering in Belgium: *B.* IV, 38.

inde = ex Gallia citeriore: Long estimates that Caesar must have travelled over 2,000 miles. In the beginning of the year he left the army in Belgium, passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, went to Illyricum, settled disputes there, and returned to Belgium in May or June.

circuitis omnibus hibernis: "*after inspecting all the winter quarters.*"

in—inopia: "*though in the greatest need of all kinds of material*": see note on **in—loco**, *B.* IV, 33.

cujus: **quod** would be more usual. The attraction of the relative to the case of the antecedent (common in Greek) is not often met with in Latin.

instructas: "*fully rigged.*"

neque abesse—possint: "*and they were not far from being able to be launched within a few days,*" literally, "*and they were not much short of that point that they might be launched.*"

deduci: see note on **subduxerāt**, *B.* IV, 29.

quid—velit: Indirect Question, H. L., 200.

portum Itium: see note on **tertia vigilia**, *B.* IV, 23.

circiter triginta: Caesar is remarkably accurate in distances. The Roman mile was 1,618 yards, or 142 yards shorter than the English mile. The distance from Calais to Dover is 28 miles: from Boulogne to Folkestone 29 miles. Thirty Roman miles would be about 27½ English miles.

huic rei: "*for carrying out this purpose,*" *i.e.*, collecting a fleet at Portus Itius.

expeditis: "*in fighting trim,*" "*ready for action,*" *i.e.*, without heavy baggage.

concilia: a general council of the Belgic Gauls which Caesar held at Samarobriva (now *Amiens*).

Chapter 3

plurimum—valet: the genitive after the neuter of pronouns and adjectives arises from their partitive sense. For the excellence of the cavalry of the Treviri, cp. *B.* II, 24: **equites Trevirorum, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis.**

ut—demonstravimus: *B.* III, 11; IV, 10.

Indutiomarus was opposed to the Romans. Caesar ordered the leading men of the state to take sides with Cingetorix, the son-in-law and rival of Indutiomarus. The latter took up arms against the Romans but was defeated and slain by Labienus. (*B.* V, 7).

alter: Cingetorix.—**simul atque**: H. L., 259, 4.

in officio: "*in allegiance,*" "*loyal.*"

quae—gererentur: subj. in Indirect Question, H. L., 200.

at: used to contrast the doings of two persons. Caesar has been speaking of Cingetorix; he now turns to describe the course of Indutiomarus.

Indutiomarus: join with **instituit** at the end of the chapter.

iisque: **-que** joins **cogere** with **bellum parare.**

iis: join with **abditis**: "*and he decided to prepare for war, after those who, owing to their age, were not able to take the field had been hid in the Ardennes wood.*"

per aetatem: they were either too young or too old.

abditis in silvam, really means "*having been removed to the forest and hidden there.*" The accusative after **abdo** involves the idea of removal as well as of concealment.—**ingenti magnitudine**: abl. of Description: H. L., 293, 6.

privatim: "*privately,*" *i.e.*, for their own private security.

petere: used absolutely, "*to make requests.*"

quoniam—possent: Virtual O.O. since Caesar is not stating their real motive, but merely what they said was their motive, H. L., 253, 6. Distinguish **virum consulere, viro** (dat.) **consulere, in virum consulere.**

veritus ne : what construction accompanies verbs of *fearing*? H. L., 242, 243.

sese : often the introducing verb to O.O. is not directly expressed; **dixit** is implied in **legatos mittit.**

idcirco—laberetur : "*that he was unwilling to leave his followers, and to come to him* (*Caesar*) *for this reason that he might the more easily keep the state loyal, lest by the defection of all the nobles the common people might revolt from thoughtlessness,*" literally "*fall off*" from its allegiance. —**quo facilius** : see H. L., 233, 4.

imprudentiam : derive this word.

in sua potestate : "*in his power*"; "*under his control.*"

ejus fidei permittere : "*to put under his protection.*"

Chapter 4

dicerentur : Indirect Question ; H. L., 200.

eum : Indutiomarus

ab instituto consilio : "*from carrying out the plan he had formed* (or *his original plan*)."

filio propinquisque : in apposition to **his** in **his adductis.**

nominatim : "*by name,*" "*expressly.*"

consolatus : "*he sympathised with him*" in regard to the enforced exile of his son and relatives who were to go to Britain with Caesar.

nihilo tamen secius : **secius** is comparative of the adv. **secus** literally "*less by nothing*" : **nihilo** being abl. of Measure of Difference : translate the phrase "*still,*" "*however.*"

singillatim : "*one by one,*" "*individually.*"

principibus convocatis, hos—conciliavit : regularly = **principes—convocatos conciliavit** : a noun or pronoun should not be put in abl. abs. when it is already the subject or object of another verb, H. L., 163, 5 ; 164.

quod—perspexisset : "*for he was both aware that this was done according to the deserts of the latter (Cingetorix) and he considered that it was of great importance that the influence of that man among his people should be as great as possible whose very marked good-will towards himself he had observed.*"

quod : rel. pron. acc., subject of **fieri**, acc. with infin.—**merito** : abl. of Cause or Manner.—**magni interesse**, see H. L., 289, 3 ; 290, 4.

—**tam egregiam**: **tam** is often attached to an adjective to give it additional force; cp. the frequent use of **tantus** for simple **magnus**. —**perspexisset**: subj. in O.O.; but **cujus perspexisset** may be Causal Rel. and Subj., H. L., 252, 4.

graviter tulit: "*was annoyed at.*"

et qui—exarsit: "*and whereas he had been of an unfriendly disposition toward us even before, he was still more exasperated through resentment at this act* (or *through this grievance*)."—**qui fuisset**: Concessive Rel. and Subj., H. L., 255, Note.—**inimico animo**: abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6.

Chapter 5

Meldi or **Meldae**, a people of Gallia Belgica dwelling between the Sequana *(Seine)* and the Matrona *(Marne)* near the modern town of *Meaux*, a corrupt form of Meldi.

revertisse: conjugate this verb.

cursum tenere: compare **cursum capere**, *B.* IV, 26.

atque: "*but*": rather adversative than connective here.

eodem: "*to the same spot*" = **in eundem locum.**

equitatus: the nobility who served as cavalry.

numero: abl. of Respect: H. L., 293,7.

perspexerat: "*he had observed.*"

obsidum loco: "*instead of hostages,*" "*as hostages*": when found with a genitive **loco** has a semi-prepositional force. We also find **in loco.** The gen. is Objective (H. L., 287, 3) after the analogy of **gratiā, causā,** with genitive.

cum—abesset: "*on account of his absence*"; **cum** Causal: or "*while he personally was absent*"; Virtual O.O. representing fut. indic. of the actual thought.

motum = **rebellionem**: "*an uprising.*"

Chapter 6

Dumnorix had conspired against the Romans 58 B.C., but was pardoned owing to the entreaties of his brother Divitiacus (*B.* I, 20). For fear that he might a second time stir up strife, Caesar desired to take him to Britain.

ante: *B.* I, 3, 18.

magni animi, magnae auctoritatis: Descriptive genitives, H. L., 288, 5.

quod—cognoverat: explain the syntax of **quod**: H. L., 252, 2.

accedebat huc quod: **accedit** may take (1) an **ut** clause of Result with subj. or (2) a substantive clause introduced by **quod** with indicative.

graviter ferebant: the Aedui annually elected a magistrate called *Vergobretus* or "*judge*," and were naturally annoyed that the right of election had been taken out of their hands (*B.* I, 16). Caesar (*B.* VII, 33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no one could be elected if a living member of the family held the post.

neque—audebant: "*and yet they did not dare to send ambassadors to Caesar for the purpose of objecting or petitioning against* (*the appointment*).

omnibus precibus: "*by all kinds of entreaties.*"

quod—timeret: "*because, being unaccustomed to sailing, he was, as he said, afraid of the sea*"; the subjunctive **timeret** implies that the reason given was not the real one; H. L., 252, 1, 2.

religionibus: "*by religious scruples.*"

impediri sese diceret: **diceret** by mistaken analogy with **timeret** is itself put in the subj. We should have expected, **quod impediretur** or **quod sese impediri dicebat**. Sometimes in Causal clauses a verb of 'saying' is inserted parenthetically merely introducing the statement.

id: the request to be left behind.

sollicitare depends on **coepit.—sevocare singulos**: "*to call them aside individually*"; "*to hold secret meetings with persons individually.*" Note that **coepit** means here "*he began*"; H. L., 219, 2.

territare: either (1) Historical infin. or (2) depending on **coepit**. Note the intensive or iterative force of the frequentative **territo**.

non—fieri: supply 'saying' from **territare**; cp. note on **sese**, *B.* V, 3.—**non—ut**: "*it was not without a reason that.*"—**fieri** is impersonal; **fit ut** = "*it happens that*"; cp. **accidit ut**.

id—necaret: "(*saying*) *it was the policy of Caesar to transport into Britain and murder there all those whom he was afraid to kill* (*in sight of Gaul*) *before the eyes of the Gauls.*"

interficere—vereretur: note that verbs of "*fearing*" may take an infinitive in the sense of "*to be afraid,*" "*not to have the courage*" to do a thing. — **interficere**, "*to kill*" in any manner; **necare** implies cruelty or injustice.

For **traductos necaret** see H. L., 164 (*c*) Note.

fidem—interponere: "*he pledged* (or *to pledge*) *his word to the rest,*" *i.e*, to those not in Caesar's power.—**interponere**: Historical infinitive, or after **coepit**, as **territare** above; so also **poscere**.

jusjurandum, civil oath: **sacramentum**, oath taken by the military.

ex usu: cp. **usui**.—**communi consilio**: as a united people.

Chapter 7

Caesar: join with **statuebat**.

quod—tribuerat: H. L., 252, 2.

coercendum—statuebat: "*determined that Dumnorix should be checked and restrained by whatever means he could.*"—**coercendum, deterrendum (esse),** Gerundival Infin., H. L., 189; the dat. of the Agent **(sibi)** is omitted, H. L., 188, 4 (*b*).—**posset**: sc. **Caesar eum coercere et deterrere**: subj., in Virtual O.O.

longius: "*too far.*"

prospiciendum: sc. **statuebat**: "*he made up his mind that he must take precautions.*"—the dat. of the Agent **(sibi)** is omitted; see **coercendum** above.

What difference is there between the use of **coercendum** and **deterrendum (esse)**, and of **prospiciendum (esse)**? H. L., 188, 5 (*c*).

ne—posset: "*that he might not be able to do any harm to himself* (*Caesar*) *or the state.*"—**ne**, see H. L., 233, 5.—**quid**: Adverbial acc., H. L., 283, 9.

commoratus: "*having delayed*" = "*being detained,*" "*since he had to wait.*"

Corus: written also **Caurus, Chorus,** the N.W. wind. This would be unfavorable to any one sailing from *Boulogne* to *Britain*. Note the apposition as in **urbs Roma, flumen Rhenus.**

partem: acc. of Extent, H. L., 283, 10.

omnis temporis: "*of every season.*"

dabat operam: "*he took pains,*" "*he did his best.*"—**contineret—cognosceret**; subj. in Final Clause, H. L., 240, 8.

milites = pedites; the infantry formed the main strength of the Roman army.

conscendere in naves: we also find **conscendere naves.**

impeditis animis: "*while the minds of all were occupied,*" "*while the attention of all was distracted*" with the embarkation; cp. IV, 34, **nostris omnibus occupatis.**

insciente Caesare: "*without Caesar's knowledge,*" H. L., 159, 4 (*b*).

domum: H. L., 119, 4, 5.

intermissa—postpositis: "*delaying his departure and in fact disregarding everything else.*"

retrahi imperat: see note on **actuarias**, *B.* V, 1.

si—pareat: subjunctive in Virtual O.O.: in direct narration this would be: **si vim faciet neque parebit, (eum) interfice**; see H. L., 269, 8.

pro sano: "*like a sensible man,*" "*rationally.*"

praesentis: **praesens** takes the place of the present participle of **adsum** which is wanting.

qui—neglexisset: "*inasmuch as he had disregarded his command when present.*" Causal Rel. and Subj., H. L., 252, 4.

manu: "*by force,*" or, "*in a hand to hand fight*": Livy II, 46: **pugna jam ad manus venerat.**

liberum—civitatis: write this in O.R.

Chapter 8

Labieno: Titus Annius Labienus was perhaps the most trusted of Caesar's generals in the Gallic war. He served Caesar for eight years through all the campaigns in Gaul, and was intrusted with most important duties. He joined the side of Pompey at the outbreak of the civil war and fought at Pharsalia 48 B.C. against Caesar, and finally fell at Munda in Spain 45 B.C.

portus: probably *Boulogne* and *Ambleteuse.*

consiliumque caperet: "*and adopt a policy to suit the time and circumstances.*"

pari numero—quem—reliquerat = **numero pari (ei numero) quem reliquerat**: literally "*with a number of cavalry equal to that* (*number*) *which he had left*"; "*with the same number of cavalry as he had left.*" Caesar took with him half of his whole cavalry force, *i.e.*, 2000 (see Chapter 5).

ad solis occasum: "*about sunset*"; July 20th or 21st.

Africo: called by the Greeks *Λίψ*, as it blows from Libya. The S.W. wind is still said to be called by the modern Italians *Affrico* or *Gherbino*.

intermisso: "*having calmed down.*"

longius: probably Caesar went as far north as the North Foreland, the ebb-tide carrying his ships from the shore.

eam partem insulae: see note on **septem—progressus**, *B.* IV, 23.

admodum—laudanda: "*the pluck of the soldiers was highly praiseworthy.*"—**admodum** properly "*according to measure,*" *i.e.*, "*in as great measure as can be.*" In combination with numerals it denotes *approximation*, and often occurs in Livy and Curtius; Cicero uses it in the phrase **nihil admodum**: "*in reality nothing at all.*"

non — labore: "*since there was no relaxation in their exertion in rowing.*" The abl. abs. is Causal.

accessum—navibus: "*all the ships reached.*"

cum: "*though*": Concessive.

cum annotinis, sc. **navibus**: "*added to the ships used in the previous year.*" In *B.* V, 1, these are called **veteres**.

quas—fecerat: "*which each one had built for his own service.*"—**commodi** either (1) genitive governed by **causā** understood, or (2) **sui commodi** is Descriptive Genitive depending on **quas**.

quae—amplius octingentae: "*of which more than eight hundred*"; see note on **horis**: *B.* IV, 37.

se—abdiderant: see note on **abditis in silvam**, *B.* V, 3.

Chapter 9

exposito exercitu: see note on **essent expositi**, *B.* IV, 37.

castris idoneo: "*suitable for a camp.*" What adjectives govern a dative case? H. L., 286, 10.

consedissent: Indirect Question; H. L., 200.

cohortibus decem: probably the two best from each of the five legions.

qui—essent: the pronoun generally agrees with the nearest antecedent: Final Rel. and Subj., H. L., 232, 2.—For the two datives, see H. L., 228, 1, 2.

de tertia vigilia: **de** in such expressions of time means 'starting from that point'; hence the meaning is: "*after the third watch was set.*"

veritus navibus: dative of Indirect Object after verbs of fearing, **metuo** and **timeo**, is common; but not common with **vereor**: "*for his ships.*"

molli: "*shelving,*" or "*sandy*"; where there were no dangerous rocks: cp. *B.* IV, 23, at the end.

praesidio navibusque: dat. after a compound of **prae**—, H. L., 229, 4.

equitatu atque essedis: usually **cum** would be expressed with abl. of Accompaniment without an adjective: H. L., 293, 3.

ad flumen: the Great Stour near Canterbury. The north bank is said to be higher than the south and so would form a natural defence.

in silvas abdiderunt: see note on **abditis in silvam**, *B.* V, 3.

et natura et opere: "*both naturally and artificially.*"

opere: explained afterwards by **crebris arboribus succisis.**

ipsi—propugnabant: "*they themselves in small bands rushed out of the woods to fight,*" or "*they themselves here and there hurled missiles from the woods.*"

ingredi prohibebant: note that **prohibeo** takes acc. and inf., not **quominus** with subjunctive.

testudine facta: "*having formed a testudo.*" This movement was done by the soldiers of the inner files locking their shields above their heads while the outer files protected the sides. The resemblance of the locked shields to a tortoise shell **(testudo)** gave this formation its name.

eos fugientes: **eos** is governed by **vetuit** and **fugientes** governed by **prosequi.**

Chapter 10

postridie ejus diei = postero die, "*on the next day,*" literally "*on the morrow of that day*": **postridie = posteri die**, a locative of time: **ejus diei**, Descriptive Gen.

expeditionem: 'the rapid march of a flying column.'

aliquantum itineris: "*some distance*": **aliquantum**: acc. of Extent; **itineris**: Partitive Gen.

extremi: "*the rear guard*" of the enemy. Others take it "*the rear*" of the expeditionary force of Caesar. In that case **jam in conspectu** means "*still in sight of Caesar*" who remained behind in the camp.

qui nuntiarent: "*to announce*": **qui** Final, H. L., 232, 2.

afflictas atque ejectas esse: "*had been shattered and thrown up on the beach.*"

quod—subsisterent—possent: subj. of Virtual O.O. ; H. L., 253, 6.

eo concursu: "*the consequent collision.*"

Chapter 11

legiones=pedites: see note on **milites**, *B.* V, 7.

revocari: *i.e.*, from pursuing the enemy.

resistere: "*to halt.*"—**revertitur**: see note, *B.* V, 2.

coram perspicit: "*he sees with his own eyes.*"

sic ut: literally "*to the extent that.*" The construction is somewhat irregular. Regularly **sic ut** would be omitted, and the acc. with the infin. in the clause **reliquae—viderentur** would be used. The only justification for Caesar's mode of expression would be that the regular construction would have three infinitives coming together.

amissis—navibus: Concessive use of abl. abs. "*though about forty ships had been lost.*"

magno negotio; "*though with great trouble.*"

fabros deligit: usually a corps of "*wrights*" under the direction of **praefectus fabrum** was attached to each legion. Here in the absence of such a corps, Caesar calls for volunteers out of the legion.

Labieno scribit=Labieno imperat, hence the **ut** clause following, H. L., 240, 2.

possit: Virtual O.O.

iis legionibus: abl. of Instrument: H. L., 18, 2 (1).

multae operae ac laboris: Descriptive Gen.: H. L., 288, *5*.

subduci: see note on **subduxerat**, *B.* IV, 29.

ne nocturnis—intermissis: translate freely, "*not allowing the work of the soldiers to cease even in the night time.*"

praesidio—navibus: H. L., 228, 2.

eodem: "*to the same place,*" *i.e.*, to the camp by the river.

summa—administrandi: "*the supreme command and entire conduct of the war,*" literally "*the whole of the command and the whole (of the) conduct of the war.*"

communi consilio: "*by common consent*": cp. **publico consilio**.

circiter—octoginta: reckoning from Deal to the point where he crossed the Thames.

huic—intercesserant: "*constant wars had occurred between this man and the other states.*"—**huic**: H. L., 229, 4.

Chapter 12

quos—dicunt: **quos natos (esse)** is acc. with infin. after **proditum (esse)** which is infin., used impersonally after **dicunt**; "(*in regard to whom*) *they themselves state there is a tradition that they were born in the island.*"—**memoria proditum esse**: literally "*it has been handed down by tradition.*" The inhabitants of Britain belonged to the great Celtic family, not indigenous, but following an earlier Iberian race. However, the belief that people were autochthonous was general among the ancients: Tacitus (Ag. 2): **ceterum qui mortales initio coluerint, indigenae an advecti, ut inter barbaros, parum compertum.**

pars: sc. **incolitur.**

ab iis: so Tacitus (Ag. 11): **proximi Gallis et similes sunt.**

iis nominibus civitatum = nominibus earum civitatum: "*by the names of those states.*" Caesar means that there were tribes in Britain and on the Continent with the same names, as Atrebates and Belgae.

quibus—ex civitatibus: for the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, compare **quo ex portu**, *B.* V, 2.

hominum: "*of the population.*"

fere Gallicis consimilia: sc. **aedificiis.**

aere: "*bronze*": a mixture of copper and tin, different from brass which was a mixture of copper and zinc.

taleis ferreis: "*iron bars.*"—**ad certum pondus examinatis**: literally "*weighed to a definite weight*"; cf. **examen**, "*the tongue of a balance.*" Translate, "*of definite weight.*"

plumbum album: "*tin.*" Caesar here reverses the facts. The tin mines are found chiefly on the coast, chiefly in Cornwall, Devon and Wales, while iron is found in Stafford, Shropshire, Derby, parts of York and Durham. Long before Caesar's time the Phoenicians worked tin mines in the Scilly Islands, which were called by the Greeks Cassiterides, 'Tin Islands.'

ejus: refers to iron.

praeter fagum ac abietem: probably Caesar did not meet with these trees and so denies their existence. Both are abundant in Britain.

haec : sc. **animalia.**

animi : "*sentiment.*"

loca : "*climate*"; cp. **frigidissimis locis,** *B.* IV, 1.

Chapter 13

natura : "*in shape.*" Caesar may have gained his knowledge of the shape of Britain from the natives or from the then extant works of the Greek writers, since the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till 84 A.D., more than a century after Caesar's time; cp. Tacitus (Ag. 10); **hanc oram novissimi maris tum primum Romana classis circumventa insulam esse Britanniam affirmavit.** Strabo (IV, 5, 1) mentions the fact that Britain is triangular and says that its longest side is parallel to Celtica, and is 4,300 stadia, or about 500 miles in length. Celtica was a term applied to the country generally between the mouth of the Rhine and the Pyrenees. Pomponius Mela (III, 6) compares Britain in shape to Sicily, and says one side faces Gaul, and another side Germany.

Cantium: now Kent, which is said to be from the Celtic *Kenn*, 'headland,' or *Can;* cp. Kenmore, Canmore, Cantire.

quo—appelluntur : "*at which almost all the ships from Gaul put in.*"

inferior, sc. **angulus,** *i.e.*, Land's End, off the Coast of Cornwall. The distance from North Foreland to Land's End is said to be 344 British or 374 Roman miles. Strabo's statement is evidently taken from Caesar. The indentations of the coast may be taken into account by Caesar.

alterum, sc. **latus** : cp. Tacitus (Ag. 10) **Britannia in orientem Germaniae, in occidentem Hispaniae obtenditur** : "*Britain lies opposite Germany on the east, opposite Spain on the west.*" Tacitus (Ag. 34) also says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. The word Hibernia is derived from the Celtic *Erin* or *Iveriu*, meaning "*Western*" (Max Müller, *Science of Languages*, Vol. I, 284).

dimidio minor : "*a half smaller*"; literally "*less by a half*"; abl. of Amount of Difference, H. L., 88, 5. Great Britain is said to contain 84,000 square miles; Ireland 36,000 square miles.

pari spatio transmissus : literally "*but of the same interval of space across as from Gaul to Britain.*"—**pari spatio** : abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6. **transmissūs** : gen. depending on **pari spatio.**

The distance from Carnsore Point in Southern Ireland to St. David's Head in Wales is 53 miles; from the Mull of Cantire in Scotland to Fairhead in Northern Ireland is 13 miles; from Dover to Calais 28 miles.

cursu: "*passage.*"

Mona: some have supposed that the *Isle of Man* is meant as it answers the description, but (1) *Mona* in Tacitus (Ag. 14; Ann. XIV, 29) can refer only to Anglesey; (2) Caesar may have been informed wrongly as to the position of Anglesey; (3) the *Isle of Man* is properly called *Monopia*, not *Mona*. According to Taylor's *Words and Places*, *Mona* is from the Celtic *Monn*, "*a district*"; cp. *Maine*, *Mayence* in France; *Mantua* in Italy; *La Mancha* in Spain; *Mansfield*, *Manchester*, *Menai* straits in England. Others say it is from the Welsh *mon*, "*alone*"; or *menedh*, "*an island.*"

subjectae: "*adjacent,*" Caesar no doubt refers to the Hebrides, Orkney and Shetland Islands, but wrongly places them in the Channel between Britain and Ireland.

nonnulli: probably some Greek geographers whose works have perished.

sub bruma: **bruma** = **brevima** = **brevissima**, sc. **dies**: Dec. 21st.

nisi = **nisi quod**: "*except that.*"

certis—mensuris: "*by exact measurements made by the water clock.*" The *clepsydra* is meant. The water-clock was said to have been invented by the Babylonians, and was constructed on the principle of the hour-glass.

ut fert opinio: "*according to their belief*": referring to the **nonnulli scriptores.**

septingentorum millium: 700 Roman miles would represent 643 English miles. The western coast of Britain is said to be about 670, not allowing for indentations. Caesar is not far from the mark.

tertium: sc. **latus.—septentriones**: see note, *B.* IV, 20. This side Caesar places on the north. It faces the east.

passuum octingentorum: 800 Roman miles would be about 735 English miles. This is probably not far from the truth, not allowing for the indentations of the Frith of Forth and Moray Firth.

angulus: Kent.

vicies—passuum: 2,000 Roman miles would be 1,839 English miles. The actual circumference of Britain, not counting indentations, is said to be 1,668 miles. Caesar's figures are fairly accurate.

Chapter 14

humanissimi: "*most civilized*": cp. Shakespeare, *Henry VI*, Second Part, I, 4, 7:

> "Kent, in the commentaries of Caesar writ,
> Is termed the civil'st place in all the isle."

interiores plerique: "*the majority of the people of the inland districts.*"

lacte ac carne vivunt: **vivo** follows the analogy of **vescor** and takes the ablative of Means: H. L., 136, 7, 8.

vitro: "*woad,*" produced from the plant *Isatis tinctoria*, or Dyer's Woad (akin to *Shepherd's Purse*), by fermentation, and much used till indigo took its place. The *Picts* are said to have got their name from *painting* their bodies (**picti**, "*painted*").

hoc: "*by this,*"—**horridiore—aspectu**: "*of rather terrible appearance*": abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6.

promisso—capillo: abl. of Description, H. L., 293, 6.

quo: adverb, literally: "*whither,*" = "*to whose house.*"

virgo deducta est: "*was led home as a bride*": cf. **ducere uxorem in matrimonium.**

Chapter 15

essedarii: see note on **praemisso—essedariis**: *B.* IV. 24.

tamen (ita conflixerunt) ut—fuerint: "*still (they fought in such a way) that our men were victorious in every quarter.*" Note that **ut—fuerint** is Consecutive; H. L., 203; and that the perf. subj. expresses a single fact; H. L., 203, 2 (*b*).—**omnibus partibus**; Local abl., H. L., 119, 5.

compluribus interfectis: abl. abs.: "*after killing quite a number.*"

cupidius: "*too eagerly.*"

illi: "*the enemy.*"

intermisso spatio: "*after a short interval.*"

imprudentibus nostris: "*while our men were off their guard.*"

se—ejecerunt: "*they sallied forth.*" The impetuous character of the Celt was as strongly marked in Caesar's time as it was in later days.

in statione: see note on **in statione**, *B.* IV, 32.

subsidio: "*as a reinforcement*": H. L., 228, 1, 2.

his primis: the first cohort of the legion regularly contained the finest troops.

cum—constitissent: "*when they took up their position with a very small space between them.*"

per medios: *i.e.*, through the space between the two cohorts.

Chapter 16

dimicaretur: subjunctive (1) after **cum** Causal, meaning "*since,*" H. L., 204, 4; and (2) subordinate clause in O.O. after **intellectum est.** Note **dimicaretur** is impersonal, "*since the struggle took place,*" H. L., 155, 5.

sub oculis: "*before the eyes*" = **in conspectu.**

cedentes: acc. after **insequi.**

ab signis discedere: "*to leave the ranks.*"

equites autem dimicare: "*that the cavalry moreover fought*"; this clause is still after **intellectum est.**

illi: "*the enemy.*"

cederent—desilirent—contenderent: subj. in O.O. after **intellectum est.**

equestris—ratio: "*on the other hand the ordinary method of cavalry battle*"; as contrasted with the unfamiliar tactics described in the previous sentence.

et cedentibus et insequentibus: either (1) dat. after **inferebat** (H. L., 229, 4) with **nostris militibus** understood, "*to our men whether retreating or advancing*" or (2) abl. abs. with **hostibus** understood, "(*to our men*) *whether the enemy were retreating or advancing.*"

accedebat huc ut: "*to this was added the fact that*" = "*besides*"; see note, *B.* V, 6.

rari magnisque intervallis: "*in scattered bands and with wide spaces between the detachments.*"

alios alii: "*one another*"; see note on **inter se**, *B.* IV, 25.

exciperent: "*relieved.*"

integri: "*the unwounded.*"

Chapter 17

rari: "*in scattered bands.*"

lenius: = **minus acriter**, "*with less spirit.*"

proelio lacessere: "*to draw out to battle*": distinguish this from **proelium lacessere**, "*to skirmish.*"

tres legiones : this is an unusually large number to send on a foraging expedition. Perhaps the lesson they had learned on a previous occasion may have made them more guarded (*B.* IV, 32).

Caio Trebonio : Caius Trebonius was one of Caesar's **legati** and distinguished himself by his personal bravery when the winter quarters of Cicero were attacked by the German horse (*B.* VI, 40).

advolaverunt, sc. **hostes.**

sic uti—absisterent = tam celeriter advolaverunt ut—absisterent : "*so impetuously did they rush forward that they did not stop short of the companies of the legions.*"—**signis legionibusque = signis legionum** (by *hendiadys*). The **signa** were the standards of the **manipuli** ; see p. 17.

subsidio sc. **legionum** : "*the support of the legions.*"—**fido** and **confido** take (1) dat. of person, (2) abl. of thing, H. L., 176, 6.

praecipites : "*in headlong flight.*"

sui colligendi : "*of recovering themselves,*" "*of rallying*" ; for syntax see H. L., 187, 8.

protinus : put here, as usually, after the expression it limits "*immediately after that rout.*"

quae : antecedent is **auxilia.**—**unquam** and **usquam** are usually used in sentences either negative or virtually negative.

summis copiis : "*with their full strength,*" "*in full force.*"

Chapter 18

fines Cassivelauni : embraced Middlesex, Hertfordshire and Buckingham.

uno omnino loco : where Caesar crossed is a matter of doubt. Sunbury, Conway Stakes near Walton, Kingston, Westminster are advocated by different authorities.

hoc : agrees with **loco** understood.

ad alteram ripam : "*on the opposite bank.*"

praefixis : driven into the sloping bank ; on the north side of the Thames.—**defixae** refers to those in the bed of the river.

perfuga : said of a deserter with reference to those to whom he flees ; **transfuga** with reference to those from whom he has fled.

ea celeritate—ierunt: "*but our soldiers advanced with such speed and such force, though they had only their heads above water that,*" *etc.* **cum,** Concessive.

capite solo: abl. of Amount of Difference, H. L., 88, 5.

Chapter 19

ut—supra: *B.* V, 17.

contentionis: "*of continuing the war.*"

amplioribus copiis: "*the most of his forces.*"

millibus—quattuor essedariorum: if each chariot contained six men besides the driver, as it seems it did, there would be about 600 chariots.

servabat=observabat: "*kept watching*": note the force of the imperfects all through this chapter.

locis=in locis: Local abl., H. L., 119, 5.

eis regionibus: "*throughout that district*": Local abl., H. L., 119, 5.

cum—ejecerat: cum, 'whenever': H. L., 263, 8.

viis semitisque: **via** is a regular road; **semita,** a by-path.

et—confligebat: "*and attended with these he was wont to engage with great danger to our cavalry.*"—**nostrorum equitum**: Objective Gen.: H. L., 287, 3.

hoc metu: "*through fear of this*": the danger of being cut to pieces by the British charioteers: cp. **hoc dolore,** *B.* V, 4.

relinquebatur—poterant: "*the consequence was that Caesar did not allow too far a departure from the line of march of the legions, and that only so much harm was inflicted on the enemy by laying waste the lands and by setting fire to the buildings as the soldiers of the legions could cause by a toilsome march.*"—**discedi**: impersonal infin.

noceretur: impersonal: governs **hostibus**: H. L., 178, 2.

labore et itinere=labore itineris (by hendiadys).

Chapter 20

Trinobantes: occupied Essex and Suffolk. Their chief town was Camalodunum, afterwards a Roman colony under the name of *Colonia Castrorum:* now *Colchester.* The proper way to translate this sentence is to divide it into four English sentences:—

"*Meanwhile the Trinobantes, about the most powerful state of that district, send ambassadors to Caesar, and promise to surrender* (*themselves*) *to him, and obey his orders. From that* (*state*) *the youthful Mandubratius, who had attached himself to Caesar, had come to him in continental Gaul. Immanuentius, the father of this* (*Mandubratius*), *had held sovereign power in that state and had been slain by Cassivellaunus,* (*while*) *he himself* (*Mandubratius*) *had escaped death by flight. They* (*the Trinobantes*) *ask* (*Caesar*) *to defend Mandubratius from all wrong-doing on the part of Cassivellaunus and to send* (*a man*) *to the state to rule it and to exercise sovereign power.*" See page 58.

ex qua, sc. **civitate.**

Caesaris fidem secutus, "*having accepted the protection of,*" "*having attached himself to,*" said of an inferior. The superior was said **recipere in fidem.**

ab injuria Cassivelauni: "*from all wrong doing on the part of Cassivelanus*": Subjective Gen. 287, 2.

qui praesit: Final Rel. and Subj. : H L., 232, 2.

ad numerum: "*to the required amount.*"

Chapter 21

The **Cenimagni** probably occupied *Bedford* and *Cambridge*; the **Segontiaci**, *Berks*; the **Ancalites**, *Oxford* and *Buckingham*; the **Bibroci**, *Berks*; the **Cassi**, *Hertfordshire*, though this is largely conjecture. The defection of the Trinobantes was ruinous to the British cause.

oppidum = Verulamium, now *St. Albans.*

satis magnus, "*quite a large.*"

convenerit: "*mustered*": subjunctive in Virtual O.O. H. L., 253, 6.

autem: "*now.*"

cum—munierunt: "*whenever they fortify*": note the tense, H. L., 263, 9 : see note on **cum—insinuaverunt,** *B.* IV, 33.

natura atque opere: "*by its natural position and especially by its fortifications,*" cp. **natura et opere,** *B.* V, 9.

oppugnare: "*to storm*": **expugnare,** "*to take by storm.*"

multi, sc. **Britanni.**

Chapter 22

in—locis : about St. Albans.

ad mare : "*on the sea coast.*"

quibus regionibus : "*over which district.*"

castra navalia : see note on **subduxerat,** *B.* IV, 29: a camp on shore protected by a mound and ditch adjacent to the ships which were beached.

imperat uti adoriantur : Explain the mood and tense : H. L., 240, 2, 3.

constituisset—superesset—intellegeret : explain the subjunctives; and for distinction between tenses, see H. L., 204, 4 (*b*).

id—posse : "*that this might easily be wasted,*" by further delay. The experience of the previous autumn is evidently in Caesar's mind.

quid — penderet : "*what tax Britain should pay.*" — **vectigalis :** Partitive Gen. : H. L., 287, 4; for Indirect Question see H. L., 200. — **tributum** money paid through the tribe on the value of property held by the individual; **vectigal,** taxes levied in any other way; **stipendium,** war tax. Caesar left no garrison, and probably no tribute was collected. For nearly a hundred years the Romans left Britain unmolested, for it was not till 43 A.D., that the next conquest took place under the Emperor Claudius, and not till 81 A.D., under Domitian, that the part of Britain south of the Frith of Forth was reduced to the rank of a Roman Province. According to Napoleon III, Caesar's second visit lasted from July 20th till September 21st.

interdicit et imperat : "*he prohibits and charges.*"

Chapter 23

his deductis : supply **navibus** with **his :** see note on **subduxerat,** *B.* IV, 29.

duobus commeatibus : "*in two relays*" : abl. of Means.

sic accidit ut : "*it so happened that.*"

neque desideraretur : "*neither in this nor in the preceding year was a single ship at all which carried soldiers lost.*"—**quae portaret ;** subj. in a clause of Characteristic : H. L., 237, 1 ; or perhaps merely subj. by Attraction.

inanes: of two kinds, (1) those of the first relay which returned to the continent and landed their cargo and were sent back; (2) those that Labienus had had built.

et prioris commeatus: "*both those of the former relay after the troops were landed*": sc. **eae**, in apposition to **quae**, both before **prioris** and **quas** following.—**prioris commeatus**: Descriptive Gen. 288, 5.

ne—excluderetur: "*that he might not be prevented from sailing by the time of the year.*"

acquinoctium suberat: Dec. 21st.

necessario—collocavit: "*he of necessity stowed his soldiers in narrower space than was usual.*"

solvisset: see note on **solvit**, *B.* IV, 23.

secunda vigilia: from 9 p.m. to 12 p.m.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE.

NOTE.—The exercises are based on the chapters of Caesar, both as regards Vocabulary and Constructions. Before attempting an exercise, the student is supposed to have carefully read the chapter of Caesar, noting each word, phrase and construction, and also to have looked up the grammatical references. The exercise should then be done without reference to the text. Each exercise is divided into two parts. The first part is intended to test the pupil's knowledge of the ordinary inflections and vocabulary, and does not involve a knowledge of the subjunctive mood. Consequently the first part of each exercise may be taken up in order before the second part is attempted. For the second part of each exercise, a knowledge of the subjunctive is implied. It is only by constant drill that a knowledge of this mood can be obtained.

The references are to the pages and sections of the New First Latin Book by Henderson and Little.

EXERCISE I

Caesar iv, 20

A

1. A small part of the summer was left for carrying on war.
2. In almost all the Gallic wars, the Britons had furnished aid to our enemies.
3. He was aware that the winters are early.
4. The sea coast and the districts opposite Gaul were known to the merchants.
5. He ascertained that the Britons were carrying on war.
6. We knew nothing about the island, for no one but the merchants go to it.
7. He decided to go to Britain in person at the end of the summer.
8. Can the merchants tell us anything about the island?
9. How large is the island? Did he call the merchants to him from all sides?

B

Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua: 268; 269.

Indirect Question: 200; 234.

Conditional Clauses: 249; 250.

1. Caesar thought it would be of great service to him, if he ascertained what harbors of the island were suitable for landing.
2. He thought that he would find out the size of the island, and the character of the tribes that inhabited it.
3. The merchants did not know what experience in war the Britons had.
4. If the Britons had been able to tell Caesar the extent of the island, he would not have gone to Britain.

EXERCISE II

Caesar iv, 21

A

1. Thinking him to be a suitable person, they sent him ahead with a warship.
2. They themselves set out with all their forces into the territory of the Morini.
3. He ordered the ships, which he had built the previous summer, to assemble at this point.
4. When his plan became known, the ambassadors, who had come from several states of the island to him, promised to give hostages.
5. After hearing the ambassadors, he made liberal promises, and sent them back home.
6. After the conquest of the Atrebates, Commius, whom Caesar considered faithful to himself, was made king of that state.
7. They announced that they would soon come there.
8. They did not dare to land from the ship, and five days after returned to the continent.

B

Temporal clauses with **priusquam***: 259, 8.*

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 239; 240.

Indirect Question: 200; 234.

Cum, *meaning since: 204, 3.*

Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua: 265, 2.

1. Before he set out for Britain, he ordered his lieutenant to cross the sea in a warship.
2. He instructed them to report to him the character and size of the harbors.

3. They soon returned, since they did not dare to intrust themselves to the barbarians.
4. He urged them to discover the size of the island, and return as soon as possible.
5. When he advised the ambassadors of the enemy to give hostages, they said that they would do what he had commanded.
6. After five days they returned, and reported to Caesar what they had observed there.

EXERCISE III

Caesar iv, 22

A

Dum, *while ; 259, 5.*

1. While he is delaying here for the purpose of gathering forces, ambassadors were sent to him by the Morini.
2. They promised to do the work, and build the ships.
3. Thinking that the enemy did not wish to give hostages, he wished to have the means for carrying on war.
4. He thought twenty ships were sufficient for transporting the whole army.
5. He gave the rest of the legions to Cotta, to be led into those states from which ambassadors had not come to him.
6. He ordered them to hold the harbor with that guard which he considered to be sufficient.

B

Causal Subjunctive : 253, 6.

Final Relative : 232, 2.

Relative Clause in O.O. : 265, 2.

Clause with **quominus** : *248, 8.*

1. The barbarians excused themselves on the ground that they were unacquainted with our custom.
2. Deputies came to Caesar from the Morini, to promise to do what he had commanded.
3. Caesar said he did not wish to carry on war against the Gauls, because he wished to cross as quickly as possible to Britain.
4. The ships, in which the cavalry were being transported, were prevented by the wind from reaching the same harbor.

EXERCISE IV

Caesar iv, 23

A

1. After these matters were arranged, he ordered the cavalry to embark.
2. They themselves reached the island about the fourth hour of the day with all the ships.
3. They beheld the forces of the enemy drawn up on all the hills.
4. Javelins could be thrown from the higher ground upon the shore.
5. At last he obtained weather suitable for sailing.
6. He did not think this place at all suitable for disembarking.
7. He assembled the military tribunes. The lieutenants assembled. The soldiers were assembled.

B

Cum, *meaning since : 204, 3.*

Consecutive Clauses : 236.

Dum, *meaning until : 259, 7.*

Indirect Question : 200, 234.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose : 239, 240.

1. Since the cavalry advanced a little too slowly into the further harbor, all the ships were not able to reach Britain at the same time.
2. The mountain was so high that the enemy were able to throw darts upon the shore.
3. Since he thought the weather by no means suitable for sailing, he waited for nine hours until the rest of the ships should assemble there.
4. They will point out both what they have ascertained from the messengers, and what they wish to be done.
5. He will warn them to disembark as quickly as possible.

EXERCISE V

Caesar iv, 24

A

1. The barbarians sent their cavalry ahead.
2. They were accustomed to use this kind of force.
3. They tried to prevent our men from landing from the ships.
4. Our men landed from the ships. Our men were landed from the ships. The soldiers embarked. He embarked the soldiers.

5. On account of their size, the ships could not approach the shore.
6. Our men must at once leap down from the ships, and fight with the enemy (188, 5).
7. Terrified by these circumstances, the enemy were willing to surrender.

B

Consecutive Clauses : 236.

Final Clauses : 197.

Quod, *because, with Indic. : 252, 2.*

1. The enemy were so terrified that they did not dare to advance into the water.
2. We could not land, because the ships were so large that they could not be moored except in deep water.
3. When the barbarians became aware of the plan of the Romans, they sent forward all their cavalry in order to prevent our men from landing.
4. The enemy advanced into the water, in order that they might be able to hurl their javelins upon the ships.

EXERCISE VI

Caesar iv, 25

A

1. I am accustomed. He was accustomed. They are accustomed. We were accustomed.
2. When Caesar observed this, he ordered his men to moor the ships at the exposed flank of the enemy.
3. The enemy were dislodged with slings and arrows.
4. This movement was of great service to our men.
5. Alarmed at the size of the ships, the enemy retired.
6. While our soldiers were wavering, he who was carrying the eagle of the tenth legion leapt down from the ship into the water.

B

Subordinate Clauses in O.O. : 265, 2.

Cum *narrative : 262, 4.*

Substantive Clauses of Purpose : 239 ; 240.

1. The eagle-bearer ordered the men to leap down from the ships if they did not wish to let the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.
2. When the standard-bearer saw that our men were wavering he charged them not to betray the eagle to the enemy.

3. When he had proclaimed in a loud voice that he at least would do his duty to his country and commander, he began to advance against the enemy.
4. Our men exhorted one another to leap down from the ship and follow the standard.

EXERCISE VII

Caesar iv, 26

A

1. The battle was long and fierce.
2. Our men could not follow the standards closely.
3. The barbarians quickly threw our men into confusion.
4. They hurled darts upon them as they landed from the ships.
5. Caesar saw that his men were in trouble.
6. Spurring on their horses, they would assail our men while at a disadvantage.
7. As soon as our men got footing on dry land, they charged the enemy and soon put them to flight.
8. We were not able to pursue the enemy farther because the cavalry had not been able to reach the island.

B

Repeated acts in the past: 263, 8.

Cum *narrative: 262, 4.*

1. Whenever we saw that our men were being attacked by superior numbers, we sent aid to them.
2. Whenever the enemy saw any disembarking singly, they kept hurling darts at them.
3. When Caesar saw that the enemy were assailing his men while at a disadvantage, he ordered the lieutenants to send up reinforcements.
4. When Caesar learned that the ships, in which the cavalry were being transported, had not been able to hold their course, he knew that he could not pursue the enemy far.

EXERCISE VIII

Caesar iv, 27

A

1. As soon as the enemy saw that the Roman forces were retreating into camp, they decided on an immediate attack.
2. We promised to give hostages, and not attack our neighbors.
3. We have shown above that these men were sent ahead.

4. We promised to send these men ahead.
5. When this man landed from the ship, he was seized and thrown into prison.
6. Although they had sent ambassadors of their own accord to Caesar, and had sought peace, yet they commenced hostilities at the beginning of spring.
7. Caesar said he would pardon them.
8. We have said that Commius came to Caesar along with these ambassadors.
9. The hostages, sent by the enemy, came to Caesar on the third day.
10. The chiefs began to assemble from all sides.
11. They assembled their forces on the following day.
    Five days after, the chiefs assembled, and intrusted themselves and their states to Caesar.

B

Cum *narrative : 262, 4.*

Conditional Clauses in O.O.: 268, 6.

V.O.O., or Causal Subj. : 253, 6.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 239, 240.

1. When this ambassador was landing from the ship, he was wounded by the darts of the enemy.
2. They promised to give hostages if Caesar would pardon them.
3. They intreated Caesar to pardon them.
   They earnestly asked to be pardoned (178, 3).
   We will ask him to pardon us.
   We will ask to be pardoned (178, 3).
4. Caesar complained that in seeking peace they had not promised to surrender their arms.
5. Caesar said he would pardon them if they surrendered their arms before he reached the walls of the town.
6. They said they would surrender to Caesar those who had thrown Commius into prison.

EXERCISE IX

Caesar iv, 28

A

1. How many chiefs assembled? How large forces did they assemble?
2. The eighteen ships, of which mention has been made above, reached Britain four days after setting sail from the continent.
3. We saw that the ships were approaching the shore at great risk.
4. One ship, being cast on the lower part of the island by the storm, was lost.

B

Cum *narrative : 262, 4.*

Consecutive clauses : 236.

1. Two ships were lost just as they were approaching the shore and could be seen from the camp.
2. Such a storm suddenly arose that the ships were not able to hold their course.
3. The storm was so great that many ships were carried back to the point from which they had set out.
4. When our men were coming into camp the enemy made such a sudden attack that a large part of the baggage was lost.

EXERCISE X

Caesar iv, 29

A

1. A full moon usually makes the tides very high.
2. The ships, in which the army had been transported, were being filled by the tide.
3. Many ships were shattered ; several were useless for sailing.
4. They had provided corn for winter.
5. The army must be transported.
6. Caesar had had the army transported in warships.
7. All things, which are of use for repairing ships, were wanting.
8. The baggage of the whole army had been lost.

B

Final Relative : 232, 2.

Final Clauses : 197.

Cum, *meaning since : 204, 3.*

1. There were no other ships in which the army could be carried back.
2. Caesar had twenty warships built in which to transport the army.
3. He ordered them to beach the ships, that the baggage might not be lost.
4. Since many ships, which had been drawn up on dry land, were shattered by the storm, Caesar decided to send for workmen who should build new ships.

EXERCISE XI

Caesar iv, 30

A

1. On learning of the arrival of the legions, the Britons assembled to carry out Caesar's orders.
2. The Romans lacked cavalry and ships and grain.
3. The legions had been transported without baggage.
4. They learned that they had transported the army without baggage.
5. They thought that Caesar had crossed over to Britain with warlike intentions.
6. They began to leave the camp secretly and return to their own people.

B

When the chiefs, whom Caesar had called together for the purpose of ascertaining these things, perceived that the forces of the Romans were few and that they lacked corn, they thought the best thing to do was to retreat as far as possible from the sea coast because they were confident that the Romans would not dare to advance more than twenty miles from their camp.

EXERCISE XII

Caesar iv, 31

A

1. Although Caesar had not yet learned their plans, nevertheless he was suspecting that they would not give hostages.
2. He ordered his men to gather corn from the fields into the camp daily.
3. Very many ships had been very seriously shattered and twelve were lost.
4. They promised to give hostages and bring corn into the camp.
5. The materials, which were of use for repairing ships, were brought from the continent.
6. Caesar was suspecting that they would try to destroy the ships.

B

As soon as Caesar was informed that many ships had been shattered, he suspected that the enemy would gather all their forces and make an attack on the camp. In order that he might as soon as possible transport his army to Gaul, he ordered his men to build twenty new ships as soon as possible. In the meantime he kept his cavalry posted in front of the camp, and sent scouts to ascertain what the enemy were doing and how large forces they were assembling.

EXERCISE XIII

Caesar iv, 32

A

1. Two legions were sent to forage.
2. Those who were on guard before the gates of the camp reported to Caesar that they saw a great dust.
3. They saw a great dust in the direction in which the legions had gone.
4. Caesar suspected that the barbarians had formed some new plan.
5. Caesar ordered three legions to set out with him in the direction in which the soldiers had gone, and the rest to follow closely as soon as possible.
6. After advancing a little farther from the camp, they saw that the enemy were attacking our men vigorously, and that the legion could not hold out much longer.

B

Since Caesar had not been able to find out from the merchants how large forces of infantry and cavalry the barbarians had, nor where he could land his army, he sent Volusenus, whom he thought to be a suitable person, to urge the Britons to give hostages, and recognize the authority of the Roman people. But as this officer did not dare to land from his ship, he was not able to learn much about the island, and returned to Caesar after a few days. About the end of summer Caesar set out in person with a large army, and, after defeating the barbarians, demanded a large number of hostages from them.

EXERCISE XIV

Caesar iv, 33

A

1. Javelins were hurled from all sides by the enemy.
2. They generally try first to disorder the ranks.
3. After hurling their javelins, they leapt down from their horses and fought on foot.
4. Sometimes they withdrew from the battlefield.
5. Our cavalry were hard pressed by superior numbers of the enemy.
6. They were accustomed to rein in their horses at full speed.

B

Repeated acts in the past: 263, 8.

Consecutive Clauses: 203.

Final Clauses: 197; 232.

1. Whenever they were hard pressed by superior numbers, they would retreat as quickly as possible to their own men.
2. They could rein in their horses and retreat so quickly that our men could not surround them.
3. They used to ride through all parts and hurl their javelins, in order to throw our ranks into confusion.
4. Whenever they had thrown the squadrons of cavalry into confusion, they would leap down from their chariots and fight on foot.

EXERCISE XV

Caesar iv, 34

A

1. On Caesar's arrival, our men, who were greatly disordered owing to the new method of fighting, recovered from their fear and attacked the enemy vigorously.
2. After the lapse of a short time, the legions were led back into camp.
3. Thinking the time to be unfavorable for engaging in battle, Caesar did not lead his legions out of the camp.
4. While these operations are going on, the rest of the enemy's forces scattered.
5. Owing to the storms, which followed for several successive days, the enemy were forced to remain in the woods.
6. A great host of cavalry and infantry were collected by these measures.
7. Messengers were sent by the enemy into all sections.
8. A great opportunity of making plunder was afforded the enemy.
9. Our men will drive the enemy out of the woods.
10. The barbarians will be driven out of the camp.
11. Owing to the small number of our forces, two cohorts were driven out of the camp and forced to surrender.
12. We have a great opportunity of freeing ourselves (187, 8) forever, if we engage in battle at once.
13. We gave you a great opportunity of freeing yourselves.
14. Thinking the ground to be unfavorable for attacking the barbarians, they kept themselves on their own ground.

B

English present part. with causal force: 204, 5.

Consecutive Clauses—qui *consecutive: 236, 2.*

Indirect question: 200.

Oratio Obliqua: 269, 8, Note.

1. Seeing that his men were disarranged by the unusual tactics of the enemy and thinking that larger forces of cavalry and infantry were coming up, Caesar resolved to await the arrival of the tenth legion.
2. Storms followed such as to force the enemy to remain in camp and prevent (190, note 2) our men from foraging.
3. Observing that the enemy had halted, Caesar pointed out to his men how easily they could defeat the enemy if they attacked them vigorously from all sides.
4. The messengers, sent by Caesar to discover what the enemy were doing, reported that infantry and cavalry were being collected and pointed out what a grand opportunity our men had of taking the town if they crossed the river at once.
5. Suspecting that the enemy would attack the camp in the night-time, Caesar sent three cohorts to prevent them from crossing the bridge.

EXERCISE XVI

Caesar iv, 35

A

1. Although Caesar saw that the enemy had been routed, still he knew that they would escape danger by their speed.
2. The legions were posted in line of battle before the camp.
3. The same thing happened on this day as had happened on previous days.
4. The enemy will not be able to withstand the assault of our men long.
5. Quite a few of them were slain. We will slay a large number of them. He had been slain. He slew him with his own hand.
6. They said that quite a large number of them had been slain.
7. After slaying quite a number, they set fire to all their buildings.
8. He knew that many had escaped. He thought that their leader would escape.
9. After pursuing them for ten miles, our cavalry saw that the infantry were not able to reach the top of the hill, and returned to camp.

B

Oratio Obliqua: 269, 8, Note.
Final Clauses, 197, 1: 232, 3.
Consecutive Clauses: 203.

Although Caesar saw that, if the enemy were defeated, they would escape into the woods and marshes, nevertheless, having assembled his officers, he announced that he would engage the enemy on the following day. As soon as the battle commenced, the enemy became aware that they could not bear up against the assault of our legions, and immediately fled. Caesar sent all the cavalry to pursue them, and ordered the infantry to follow closely. The enemy, however, being well acquainted with the locality,[1] got out of reach so quickly that our men killed very few of them. Accordingly, after burning all their villages and devastating their fields, they returned to camp.

EXERCISE XVII

Caesar iv, 36

A

1. The hostages, sent by the enemy to Caesar, arrived in camp on the following day.
2. Caesar ordered the rest of the hostages to be brought to the continent.
3. Caesar did not wish to remain longer in Britain, because his ships were weak, and winter was near at hand.
4. At last, having obtained suitable weather for sailing, he ordered all to go on board the ships.
5. All the ships reached the coast of Gaul in safety, but all were not able to reach the same harbor.
6. They reported that two merchantmen had not been able to reach the same harbor as the rest.
7. He demanded a large number of hostages from them, and ordered them to bring grain into the camp.
8. Caesar ordered his lieutenant to send the hostages, given by the enemy, to the continent.

EXERCISE XVIII

Caesar iv, 37

A

1. Caesar landed about three hundred soldiers from these ships. A thousand soldiers landed.
2. They immediately proceeded into camp.

[1] The places (being) well known: Abl. Abs.

3. At the time of his departure to Britain, Caesar left the Morini at peace.
4. But being inspired by the hope of plunder, they surrounded our men on all sides.
5. Lay down your arms if you do not wish to be killed.
6. Our men at once formed a circle and assumed the defensive.
7. Soon, however, about six thousand of the enemy assembled.
8. When this was reported to Caesar, he sent all the cavalry from the camp to the support of his men.
9. Meanwhile our men were able to withstand the assault of the enemy, and fought very valiantly for more than two hours.
10. They slew quite a number of the enemy. Very few of our men were slain.
11. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw away their arms and fled.

B

Cum *narrative: 262, 4; 204, 3, 4.*

Virtual O.O.

1. When the three hundred soldiers, who had landed from these ships, were hastening into camp, suddenly the cavalry of the Morini surrounded them and ordered them to surrender if they wished to save their lives.
2. After our men had fought very valiantly for more than two hours and had killed quite a number of the enemy, Caesar was informed that about six thousand had surrounded the seventh legion and were hurling javelins upon it from all sides.

EXERCISE XIX

Caesar iv, 38

A

1. On the following day those legions, which had been brought back from Britain, were sent under Titus Labienus against the Morini.
2. They had availed themselves of the marshes as a place of refuge the previous summer.
3. After devastating all the fields and burning the buildings, the legions returned to Caesar.
4. The Menapii will all hide in the densest woods.
5. Caesar had established the winter quarters of two legions in the country of the Belgae.
6. Hostages were sent by only two states from Britain.
7. The Morini will betake themselves into the marshes.
8. Many states came into the power of Labienus.
9. Since all their crops were cut down, the Morini were willing to give hostages to Caesar.

B

cum, *meaning since: 204, 3, 4.*

Oratio Obliqua: 265, 2.

1. Since the woods had been burned, the enemy had no place to betake themselves to.
2. The enemy learned that Caesar had sent the three legions, which had been brought back from the island, against the Morini, because they had renewed the war.
3. Caesar informed the ambassadors that he would devastate the fields, and burn the dwellings of the Menapii, because they had hid in the woods and marshes.
4. Since you cannot retreat across the river, are you willing to allow the legions to winter in your territory?

EXERCISE XX

Caesar v, 1

A

1. Caesar was accustomed to pass the winter in Italy.
2. They will place officers in command of the legions.
3. Labienus was placed in command of the tenth legion.
4. As many ships as possible were built during the winter.
5. The old ships had to be repaired.
6. Caesar provided for the construction of twenty ships.
7. He knew that the waves were not so large there.
8. They were accustomed to employ larger ships in that sea.
9. On account of the tides the ships were made larger.
10. The materials, which were of use for building ships, were brought from Spain.
11. The Pirustae were devastating the province.
12. They heard that Caesar had set out into Illyricum.
13. He levied three thousand soldiers from all the states.
14. The soldiers assembled at the stated place. They assembled the soldiers on the appointed day.
15. The soldiers were assembled at an appointed place.
16. When the Pirustae were informed of this matter, they sent ambassadors and promised to bring the hostages by the appointed day.
17. The hostages were brought by the day as he had commanded.
18. He made it clear that hostages had to be given.
19. We shall make it clear that we will devastate the province.

B

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 239; 240.

Cum *narrative: 204, 3, 4.*

Qui *Final: 232, 2.*

Oratio Obliqua: 269.

1. Officers were sent to superintend the construction of a large number of ships.
2. He commanded his officers to see that all the materials, that were necessary for repairing the ships, were brought from Spain.
3. Caesar told his men that, unless more ships were built, they could not be taken back to Gaul.
4. The enemy were told that, unless hostages were given by the appointed day, our general would send cavalry to ravage their territory.
5. On their arrival at the larger camp, they learned that the cavalry, which had been sent into the territory of the Remi for the purpose of plundering and devastating, had not yet returned.
6. On learning that sufficient ships for transporting the army had been built, he departed at once for the sea-coast.

EXERCISE XXI

Caesar v, 2

A

1. These transactions were quickly concluded.
2. He will set out for the army.
3. The ships will be able to be launched within a few days.
4. He commended those who had been in charge of the work.
5. He left what he considered a sufficient force to perform these operations.
6. He had learned that all would assemble at Port Itius.
7. Owing to the wonderful enthusiasm of the soldiers the ships were all launched within a few days.
8. When this fact was reported to him, he at once set out in person with three legions ready for action into the territory of the Treviri because he heard that they would not obey him.

B

Cum *narrative: 204, 3, 4.*

Indirect Question: 200.

Clause with **quin**: *247, 4.*

1. On his return to the army, he found that all the ships were able to be launched.
2. The ships were not far from being able to be launched within a few days.

3. He pointed out what he wished to be done. He asked the officers how many ships had been built.
4. He learned from merchants in what harbor he could most easily disembark the soldiers.
5. When he learned that his lieutenant had left camp with three hundred horse, he himself returned to Hither Gaul.

EXERCISE XXII

Caesar v, 3

A

1. We have shown above that this state is by far the strongest of all Gaul in cavalry.
2. Two chiefs were at the head of this state, of whom, one was very friendly to Caesar, the other was collecting forces of cavalry and infantry preparatory to engaging in war.
3. As soon as the legions arrived, this chief wished to come to Caesar and promise to continue loyal.
4. All who on account of their age were not able to bear arms were concealed in the Ardennes wood.
5. Many chiefs, alarmed at the arrival of Caesar and the legions, began to fear for their own interests.
6. I did not wish to leave my people and come to you because the common people through thoughtlessness wished to desert the friendship of the Roman people.
7. The state is under my control, and if you will allow me I shall come to you in the camp and intrust my fortunes and those of the state to your honor.

B

'as soon as' : 259, 4.

'after' : 259, 4.

quoniam, cum, *'since' : 252, 2, 3.*

Clauses with verbs of 'fearing' : 242 ; 243.

quo *Final : 233, 4.*

O. O. : 265 ; 269, 8.

1. As soon as the chiefs of this state learned that Caesar and the legions had arrived, they sent ambassadors to assure him that they would continue loyal, and to report what the Treviri were doing.

2. After some chiefs had informed Caesar that Indutiomarus was gathering forces of cavalry and infantry, the latter, fearing that Caesar would put him to death, came to him to intreat (him) to spare him.
3. He said that he was afraid that they would not be able to carry on war longer.
4. Fearing that the soldiers would not be able to cross the river on foot, he sent workmen ahead to build a bridge that he might more quickly reach the camp of the enemy.

EXERCISE XXIII

Caesar v, 4

A

1. Though all preparations had been made for a war in Britain, he was forced to spend the summer among the Treviri.
2. Why were those statements made? Why did he order the chief to come to him?
3. The two hundred hostages, which he had ordered to be brought to him, arrived on the following day.
4. It was of great importance that hostages should be given.
5. He perceived that this chief had very great influence among his people.
6. He was aware that Caesar wished to go to Britain this summer.
7. They were aware that this could not be done.

B

Indirect Question: 200.

Ne *Final: 233, 5.*

Oratio Obliqua: 265.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 239; 240.

1. Although Caesar was aware why Dumnorix had said that he did not wish to come to him, nevertheless, to avoid being forced to remain in Gaul all summer, he ordered him to bring two hundred hostages to him.
2. He urged this chief to continue loyal and announce to his people that Caesar would return as soon as possible.
3. Inasmuch as all preparations had been made for a campaign in Britain, he thought that it was of great importance to go to the island this summer.
4. He knew why Dumnorix was summoning the chiefs to him and urging them to remain in Gaul.

EXERCISE XXIV

Caesar v, 5

A

1. All these matters were already settled.
2. The forty ships, which had been built by the Meldae, were driven back by a storm.
3. These ships were not able to reach the harbor from which they had set out.
4. They will return to the same harbor from which they sailed.
5. All the rest of the ships were ready for sailing.
6. He found many ships shattered by the storm.
7. He ordered the cavalry of all Gaul to assemble at the same point.
8. He determined to take with him those chiefs who were not friendly to him.
9. He left the rest of the chiefs in Gaul.
10. He feared an uprising of Gaul in his absence.
11. Very few chiefs were left in Gaul by Caesar.

B

1. When Caesar learned that many of his ships had not been able to hold their course and reach Port Itius, he was afraid that the barbarians would assemble all their forces and attack the naval camp.
2. Accordingly he ordered his lieutenants to collect as large a quantity of corn as possible, because he was afraid that in his absence the enemy would try to prevent our men from foraging.
3. On his arrival at the winter camp, he found it admirably fortified with a rampart and trench.

EXERCISE XXV

Caesar v, 6

A

1. He did not dare to leave Dumnorix in Gaul, because he knew him to be a man of great influence among his people.
2. All the Gauls are desirous of change.
3. Caesar had learned that Dumnorix had told the chiefs that he had determined to take them all with him to Britain.
4. They said that, being unused to sailing, they were afraid of the sea.

5. Alarmed by the approach of Caesar, the chiefs came to him, and promised to go with him to the island.
6. They saw that they would not obtain this request.
7. They knew that Caesar would not dare to kill these chiefs before the eyes of the Gauls.
8. They told their people that Caesar would take all the chiefs over to Britain, and put them to death there.
9. Several reported to Caesar that the Gauls were carrying out these plans with one common purpose.

B

Virtual O.O.: 253, 6.

Posteaquam, *'after': 259, 4.*

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 239; 240.

1. He begged of Caesar to allow him to remain in Gaul, because (as he said) he did not wish to leave his people, and he was afraid of the sea.
2. After he saw that he would not obtain his request to be left behind, he began to summon the other chiefs and urge them not to set out along with Caesar.
3. To this was added the fact that they did not dare to leave the camp lest Caesar should send cavalry to capture them and then put them to death.
4. They knew that Caesar, being afraid that these chiefs would stir up all the Gauls against him, had decided to take Dumnorix especially with him.

EXERCISE XXVI

Caesar v, 7

A

1. These facts were soon ascertained through scouts.
2. This wind was accustomed to hinder navigation.
3. Our men were not accustomed to go on board ships in the night-time.
4. We shall ascertain all their plans.
5. He ordered the cavalry and infantry to go aboard at midnight.
6. If he does not obey, kill him.
7. I am a free man and of a free state.
8. According to orders they killed the man.
9. The cavalry will advance; the infantry will return to Caesar.
10. He returns. He returned. They said he would not return.

The Gerundive: 187; 188.

11. We must ascertain these things. We must advance with all our forces.
12. All his plans must be discovered. A large part of the cavalry must be sent to overtake him.
13. This chief must be checked. The other had to be put to death.

Participles: 152–158.

14. Having advanced; having delayed; having obtained suitable weather; having been sent; thinking; on being called back; shouting; having been killed.

Ablative Absolutes: 159–160.

15. Having ascertained all his plans; without my knowledge; without our knowledge; a large part of the cavalry having been sent forward; in my absence; in our absence; in the presence of Caesar; in the presence of the consuls; while the minds of all were engaged.

B

1. Thinking that the cavalry would soon return, they ordered the soldiers to prepare for an attack on the enemy's camp.
2. Caesar took pains not only to ascertain all their plans, but also to collect as large forces as possible.
3. When the soldiers had gone aboard the ships, the chiefs in a body began to leave the camp for home.
4. After advancing about five miles, they suddenly turned back again, and seeing that our men had not yet landed from the ships, they made a fierce attack on our camp, and put the cavalry to flight.

EXERCISE XXVII

Caesar v, 8

A

1. Three legions and two thousand cavalry were left with Labienus on the continent.
2. He was unable to reach that part of the island where he had found a suitable harbor the previous year.
3. The endurance of the soldiers was very commendable.
4. The ships were not able to hold their course.
5. Caesar learned from captives that large bands of the enemy had assembled at this place.
6. Terrified by the large number of ships, the barbarians had concealed themselves in the uplands.
7. Leaving a large number of cavalry to guard the camp, they crossed the river and hastened into the territory of the Remi.

B

1. Thinking Labienus to be a suitable person, he left him on the continent to defend the camp and build ships and ascertain how large forces the enemy were gathering.
2. Setting out from the camp at daylight, he came up to the baggage-train of the enemy about mid-day, and knowing that their cavalry were still five miles distant, he sent one legion to seize the heights and prevent auxiliaries from coming to their aid.
3. As we have shown above, the Remi were coming to the aid of their neighbors, but hearing that these had been defeated by Caesar, they turned back and sought refuge in the forests.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Caesar v, 9

A

1. Caesar at once landed the army and chose a suitable place for a camp.
2. The soldiers landed from the ships at daybreak.
3. The cavalry were landed a little later.
4. Ten cohorts and two hundred cavalry were left to guard the camp.
5. The enemy's forces had encamped on the heights.
6. The ships were left on an open shore.
7. Our men tried to keep the enemy from getting inside the fortifications.
8. The soldiers of these two legions made a fierce attack and drove the enemy out of the camp.
9. With trifling loss our men withstood the assault of the enemy for more than three hours and killed quite a large number of them.
10. Caesar did not allow his men to leave the camp.
11. Caesar was not able to pursue the fleeing enemy further because the cavalry had not been able to hold their course and reach the island.
12. No time was left for fortifying the camp.

B

Ubi, "*when*" : *259, 4*.

Indirect Question : *200*.

Qui *Final* : *232, 2*.

1. When Caesar learned through scouts that the forces of the enemy had encamped on a high hill, he sent his lieutenant to find out by what route he could most easily and quickly reach them.
2. He left two cohorts to serve as a guard for the bridge.

3. Being informed of these facts, he sent forward the cavalry to aid the allies, (while) he himself with the rest of the forces made a quick march of five miles and attacked the enemy while they were crossing the river.
4. The cavalry, being defeated by the enemy, retreated to the camp, but the infantry, having obtained a position admirably fortified, held out for more than three hours.

EXERCISE XXIX

Caesar v, 10

A

1. On the morning of the following day the cavalry were sent to pursue those who had fled.
2. We will pursue those who ravaged our lands and burned our villages.
3. Cavalry reported to Caesar that on the previous night a great storm had arisen.
4. The storm shattered nearly all the merchant ships.
5. After advancing some distance, they saw that cavalry were coming from Caesar.
6. No ship could endure such a storm.
7. All the ships were shattered and many were cast up on shore.

B

1. On the following day Caesar ordered the cavalry to set out along with him for the purpose of laying waste the fields of the enemy.
2. When the rear of the enemy came in (= into) sight, our general sent forward the cavalry to attack the enemy, and ordered his lieutenants to lead the rest of the forces against the Remi who were coming up to their aid.
3. Ambassadors came to promise to give hostages and to do what Caesar had commanded.
4. Caesar knew that, if a storm should arise, the vessels would be shattered and great damage sustained.

EXERCISE XXX

Caesar v, 11

A

1. The legions were recalled and ordered to halt on the march.
2. As has been shown above, about forty ships were lost.
3. The rest of the ships could not be repaired.
4. He ordered all the ships to be beached.
5. He ordered the workmen, whom he had chosen from the legions, to build as many ships as possible.

6. The legions returned to the same place from which they had set out.
7. After beaching the ships and strongly fortifying the camp, these two legions returned to the hills.
8. Three cohorts and two hundred horse were left to guard the ships.
9. The territory of this chief was eighty miles distant from the sea.
10. They will place him in command of the legion.
11. This man's brother had been in command of two legions.

B

When Caesar learned that so many ships had been lost, he concluded that it was not safe for his men to advance farther into the enemy's country. Accordingly the legions and cavalry were recalled, and he himself returned to the seacoast as fast as he could. On his arrival there, he at once gave instructions to his officers to build as many ships as possible, and warned them not to allow the soldiers to go outside the fortifications. Since he knew that very large forces of Britons had assembled there, he was afraid lest they should make an attack on our camp when he himself was absent.

EXERCISE XXXI

Caesar v, 15

A

1. Our cavalry engaged in a fierce battle with the cavalry and charioteers of the enemy.
2. When the cavalry and charioteers were routed, the infantry fled into the woods and hills.
3. After routing their infantry, our men pursued the charioteers too far and lost some of their own men.
4. While the enemy were off their guard, our men suddenly rushed out of the camp.
5. The enemy made a fierce attack upon those who were posted on sentry duty before the camp.
6. Two cohorts were sent as a reinforcement to our men.
7. All our men got back to the camp in safety.
8. Inasmuch as our men were terrified by these unusual tactics, the enemy very boldly burst through our line.
9. Two military tribunes were among the slain in that engagement.

B

Consecutive Clauses: 203.

Conditional Clauses: 249; 250.

1. Our cavalry engaged so fiercely in battle with the enemy's cavalry that two thousand of the latter were slain and the rest driven into the woods and hills.

2. Our men would not have lost so many of their number if they had not pursued so eagerly.
3. If two cohorts had not been sent up as a reinforcement, the enemy would not have been defeated.
4. If Caesar defeats the enemy, they will escape into the woods.
5. If the enemy should take up their position on that hill, Caesar would attack them.
6. If our men had not been so terrified, the enemy would not have got off in safety.
7. If they make an attack on those posted before the camp, they will easily win a victory.
8. Our men were so terrified by the horses and chariots of the enemy, that they did not fight as boldly as usual.

EXERCISE XXXII

Caesar v, 16

A

1. The battle took place in front of the camp.
2. Our men could not pursue the retreating enemy far.
3. They will not dare to go far away from the standards.
4. The enemy sometimes retreated purposely.
5. Our men advanced across the marsh at great risk.
6. They tried to draw our men away from the legions.
7. It was their custom to leap down from the chariots and fight on foot.
8. They will never fight in close order and will relieve one another in turn.
9. Our men being weary were not able to defeat the fresh and vigorous (troops of the) enemy.
10. Shall we contend in unequal combat?
11. Did not the enemy leap down from their chariots?

B

Causal Clauses: 252, 1, 2.

Repeated Acts in the Past: 263, 8.

Conditional Clauses: 249; 250.

1. Caesar perceived that our men fought at great risk, because the enemy sometimes retreated purposely, in order that they might draw our men away from the legions.
2. Whenever our men departed from the standards, the enemy would attack them more boldly.
3. The enemy used to leap down from their chariots, whenever they drew off our men a little from the standards.
4. If our men had been able to pursue the enemy with cavalry, they would have slain a great number of them.

5. If our men dare to leave the standards, the charioteers will try to surround them.
6. If the enemy would not retreat purposely, our men would soon defeat them.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Caesar v, 17

A

1. On the following day; on the day before; at mid-day; in the morning; at midnight; in the previous summer.
2. For the purpose of plundering and foraging; an opportunity of sending hostages; for the purpose of freeing themselves, (1) **ad**; (2) **causa**; a reason for departing; an opportunity of rallying—of halting—of leaping down from chariots; an end of pursuing.
3. At daybreak our men will take up their position on the top of the hill.
4. The enemy soon began to attack our cavalry and more fiercely than on the day before.
5. Three legions and all the cavalry were sent by Caesar for the purpose of devastating.
6. The enemy made a fierce attack and our men were driven from the hill.
7. Trusting to the support of the infantry, the cavalry drove the enemy from the hills, on which they had taken up their position the previous day.
8. Auxiliaries will assemble from all sides.
9. Caesar will assemble auxiliaries from all the states.
10. We engaged the enemy with all our forces.

B

Consecutive Clauses: 236.

Cum, *meaning since: 204, 3.*

Dum, Quoad, *meaning until: 259, 7.*

Cum, *narrative: 262, 4.*

1. Since we see that the infantry are following closely, we shall not stop pursuing the enemy nor shall we give them any opportunity of halting, until we drive them out of our territory.
2. Since our men gave the enemy no opportunity of rallying, a large number of them were slain.
3. When the enemy had made a fierce attack on our legions, and had killed quite a number of them, they leaped down from their chariots, and drove our men in headlong flight.
4. Our men were so hard pressed by the enemy's cavalry, that Caesar sent the tenth legion to their support.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Caesar v, 18

A

1. On learning their plan, Caesar ordered the lieutenants to lead the army back into camp.
2. This river could be crossed at one place only on foot.
3. All the forces of the enemy were drawn up on the other bank.
4. When Caesar got this information from the captives, he sent forward the cavalry, and ordered the legions to follow closely.
5. The enemy will not be able to withstand the assault of our legions.
6. With difficulty he crossed the river at this point.
7. After leading his army into their territory, he saw that the enemy would not long remain in their towns and villages.
8. He will send forward the cavalry. The legions will follow closely.
9. He thought that the legions would follow closely.
10. The soldiers were not able to cross the river on foot.

B

On his arrival at the river bank, he learned from the cavalry, whom he had sent ahead, that large forces of the enemy had been led into the territory of our allies for the purpose of devastating their lands. Accordingly he left one legion and two hundred cavalry to guard the camp, and he himself set out with the rest of the forces to a place where he knew the river could be crossed on foot. Though the soldiers advanced with great speed, the enemy heard of their arrival, and, leaving all their baggage behind, consigned themselves to flight.

EXERCISE XXXV

Caesar v, 19

A

1. We have shown above that this chief had disbanded the greater part of his forces.
2. About four thousand charioteers were left.
3. They kept withdrawing a little from the road by which they had learned we would march.
4. Our cavalry frequently scattered over the country for the purpose of plundering and devastating.
5. Our cavalry could engage with the enemy only at great risk.
6. The charioteers of the enemy prevented our men from wandering too widely.

7. Caesar did not allow his men to go away far from the line of the legions.
8. We shall not allow you to harm our neighbors.
9. We shall do harm to the enemy's lands. They have injured us.

B

Repeated Acts in the Past: 263, 8.

Substantive Clauses of Result: 244, 1.

1. Whenever our cavalry withdrew a little from the road, they would hide in woody places.
2. Whenever Caesar sent cavalry ahead to plunder and forage, they would send charioteers against them from the woods.
3. The result of this was (244, 1 (*b*)) that our men did not go far away from the line of the legions.
4. The result of this was that the soldiers could not do the enemy much harm by devastating their fields.
5. When Caesar saw that his cavalry were engaging with the enemy's cavalry at great risk, he did not allow them to advance farther.

EXERCISE XXXVI

Caesar v, 20

A

1. In the meantime this tribe, which was the strongest in that district, sends ambassadors to Caesar.
2. One chief had come to him on the continent.
3. His father had for a long time held sovereign power in that state.
4. They will surrender to him. He surrendered to me. Many surrendered.
5. They promise to surrender to him and obey his orders.
6. They will promise to send ambassadors.
7. Caesar protected this chief and sent him into the state.
8. He was long at the head of this state.
9. They will be in command of this legion.
10. He will demand forty hostages from them.
11. They very quickly carried out his orders.
12. They sent the required number of hostages and corn for the army.

B

Substantive Clauses of Purpose: 239; 240.

Qui *Final: 232, 2.*

Dum, *while: 259, 5.*

1. While Caesar is marching into the territory of this tribe, this young man, whose father had long held sovereign power in this state, came to our camp.
2. He said that his father had been killed by Cassivelaunus, who was secretly gathering forces in order to drive the Romans out of that district.
3. They intreated Caesar to protect them and send an army into that district to prevent the enemy from destroying their towns.
4. Caesar sent a young man into the state to be at its head and hold the sovereign power.
5. They were advised to send the requisite number of hostages and at once surrender to Caesar.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Caesar v, 21

A

1. They had already surrendered to him. Many promised to surrender.
2. Embassies will be sent. Embassies had been sent.
3. Their town was not far distant from our camp.
4. Into this town, which was no more than three miles distant, a very large number of people had assembled.
5. They are assembling. We will assemble. Many had assembled.
6. This place was fortified with a rampart and trench.
7. They were in the habit of assembling at this place for the purpose of avoiding an attack.
8. He set out there immediately with two legions.
9. The place was admirably fortified both naturally and artificially.
10. After delaying a short time, the enemy fled into the woods and marshes.
11. They reported that the place was splendidly fortified.
12. Word was brought that a large number had been caught in flight and killed.

B

Although Caesar found the place strongly fortified, nevertheless he determined to assault it from two quarters. As soon as the legions had been drawn up in front of the walls, the enemy saw that they could not long withstand the assault of our men and at once rushed out of another part of the town. From those, who were captured in flight, Caesar learned that there was a fortified town about three miles distant and that many had fled there so as to avoid (233, 5) being captured and put to death.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Caesar v, 22

A

1. Four kings held sway over these districts.
2. They collected all their forces, and attacked the naval camp unexpectedly.
3. Our men made a sally, killed a large number of them, even took their leader prisoner, and brought back their own men in safety.
4. We returned to the camp in safety.
5. They will send ambassadors to treat for surrender.
6. Since so many losses had been sustained, and his territory had been devastated, he determined to at once surrender.
7. Alarmed by the sudden arrival of our army, they threw away their arms and fled.
8. Caesar decided to spend the winter in Gaul.
9. He was aware that the enemy would attack the naval camp.
10. He was informed that they had collected all their forces.
11. When news of this battle reached them, the chiefs decided to surrender.

B

1. On their arrival at the camp, they decided on an immediate assault.
2. Since they were aware that Caesar was anxious to return to the continent, they determined to collect all their forces, and not allow our men to leave the place.
3. He decided how many hostages they should give, and where they should send them.
4. The lieutenants issued orders to their men not to leave the camp.
5. These chiefs advised their neighbors not to give hostages to Caesar, since they knew that he could not stay much longer on the island.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Caesar v, 23

A

1. The army was led back to the seacoast.
2. The ships had already been repaired.
3. These ships were launched ; the others were beached.
4. Neither this nor the previous year was a single ship lost.
5. These ships were sent back to him empty, after the soldiers had been landed from them.
6. The soldiers were soon landed. He quickly landed the soldiers.
7. How many soldiers landed from these ships?
8. Labienus superintended the construction of these ships.
9. The officers took charge of the landing of the soldiers.
10. Caesar waited for these ships for quite a while.
11. He set sail at the beginning of the second watch.
12. All the ships reached the continent in safety at daybreak.
13. The rest of the ships were driven back.
14. After landing the soldiers, he fortified the camp with a rampart and trench.

B

1. When these vessels were launched, he decided to leave part of the army in Britain, because so many of the vessels, whose construction Labienus had superintended, had been lost tnrough the storm.
2. It so happened that almost all the ships, which had soldiers on board, reached the continent in safety.
3. Caesar waited for these ships for some time in vain, but at last fearing (243, 2) that he might be forced to spend the winter in Britain, he set sail in person with twenty ships and ordered his lieutenants to follow with the rest as soon as they could.



VERGIL

Ille ego, qui quondam gracili modulatus avena
Carmen, et, egressus silvis, vicina coegi
Ut quamvis avido parerent arva colono,
Gratum opus agricolis, at nunc horrentia Martis

INTRODUCTION

I

Life of Vergil

Birth

Publius Vergilius Maro[1] was born on the fifteenth of October, 70 **B.C.**, in the first consulate of M. Licinius Crassus and Cn. Pompeius, at Andes (now *Pietola*), a small village near Mantua. Since the full franchise was not given to this part of Gaul (*Gallia Transpadana*) till some years afterwards[2], the poet, like many of his predecessors and contemporaries in literature, was not a Roman, but an Italian provincial.

His parents

The parents of Vergil, like those of Horace, were of obscure birth. Some authorities say that the poet's father was a potter, others, that he was a brickmaker, while others again assert that he was the servant of a travelling merchant, Magius, whose daughter, Magia Polla, he afterwards married. Whatever may have been his occupation, certain it is, that he was at the time of the poet's birth, the steward, factor, or possessor of an estate near Mantua. The childhood of Vergil was passed amid the hills and woods that fringed the verdant banks of the Mincius, and the early association of the poet with the lovely scenery of the neighbourhood of his native town may account for the exquisite touches of pastoral life which appear in the Eclogues and the Georgics.

Studies and Early Life.

His studies begin: 55 B.C.

Vergil began his studies at *Cremona*, where, we are told, he assumed the *toga virilis* on the same day on which Lucretius died. The town itself had already been noted, having been the birthplace of Furius Bibaculus, and of the critic, Quinctilius Varro.

[1] The English equivalent of Vergilius is often spelt Virgil. Indeed the poet is best known by the name thus spelt. However, it is better to adopt the spelling that harmonizes with what is undoubtedly the correct Latin form. The form Virgilius was not common till the middle ages.

[2] 49 B.C.

Vergil goes to Rome, 53 B.C.

After a brief stay at *Cremona*, and subsequently at *Mediolanum* (*Milan*), the poet went to Rome. In the capital, Vergil, after the fashion of the day, attended the lectures of rhetoricians and philosophers. Under Epidius, the rhetorician, the teacher of Marc Antony and afterwards of Octavius, and under the Epicurean philosopher, Siron, the poet became acquainted with the outlines of rhetoric and philosophy. It is quite probable that his father intended him for the bar, but a weak voice and a diffident manner were insuperable barriers in the way of obtaining distinction in public speaking. Vergil soon gave up rhetoric, and, in fact, renounced poetry for the more congenial study of philosophy. Under Siron, he seems to have made considerable progress in Epicurean philosophy, and the love he retained for this branch of learning is plainly observable in many of his extant writings.[4] In a minor poem, generally supposed to be genuine, he welcomes the exchange of poetry and rhetoric for more useful studies :

"Away with you, empty coloured flagons of the rhetoricians, words swollen, but not with the dews of Greece ; and, away with you, Stilo, Tagitius, and Varro, you, nation of pedants, soaking with fat ; you, empty cymbals of the classroom. Farewell, too, Sabinus, friend of all my friends : now, farewell, all my beautiful companions, we are setting our sails for a haven of bliss, going to hear the learned words of the great Siron, and we mean to redeem our life from all distraction. Farewell, too, sweet Muses ; for, to tell the truth, I have found how sweet you were : and yet, I pray you, look on my pages again, but with modesty and at rare intervals."[5]

Goes to Naples

After a short stay at Rome Vergil probably went to Naples, where, we are told, Parthenius, another Epicurean, was his instructor. The great Epic[6] of Lucretius, added to the teachings of his instructors, gave, no doubt, his mind a strong bent towards the doctrines of Epicurus. It is probable that the poet returned to his father's farm before the outbreak of the war between Pompey and Caesar, 49 B.C. It is also likely that he remained there till after the battle of Philippi (42 B.C.) and that he employed his time in gaining by observation materials which he afterwards employed in his great didactic poem, the Georgics.

Returns Home

---

[4] Eclogue VI ; Georg. IV, 219 ; Aen. I, 743 ; VI, 724 ; Georg. II, 475-492.

[5] Catalepta VII. [6] *De Rerum Natura.*



Vergil, Horace and Varius at the House of Maecenas　　CH. JALABERT

II

Acquaintance with Augustus and Maecenas

Unlike Horace, Vergil sympathized with the party of Caesar. The formation of the Second Triumvirate threw the Roman world into the broils of a civil war. In the division of the provinces, Gaul (except *Gallia Narbonensis*) fell to Antony. The lands of eighteen cities were given up to reward the legions of the unscrupulous Antony, and among the lands were those of Cremona. The district around this city failing to satisfy the greedy rapacity of the legionaries of the Triumvir, the farms of the neighboring Mantua were seized, and among the lands confiscated were those of the poet's father. C. Asinius Pollio, the prefect of *Gallia Transpadana*, unable to restrain the lawlessness of the soldiers of Antony, sent Vergil to Rome with a recommendation to Augustus to allow the poet to retain his paternal estate. It is quite probable that congenial tastes and a recognition of the genius of Vergil may have influenced Pollio to take this course. At the close of the same year (41 B.C.), however, war broke out anew between Octavius and L. Antonius. Pollio was deposed from office, and Alfenus Varus appointed in his stead. Another division of lands followed, and the poet is said to have been deprived of his estate a second time.[7] His friends, Gallus, Pollio, and Varus, however, interposed and saved the farm for him. By them he was introduced to Maecenas, the patron of literary men, afterwards the prime minister of Augustus. This year marks the beginning of the rising fortunes of the poet. With his friend and patron, Pollio, as Consul, Vergil became the honored member of a literary *coterie* which graced the table of Maecenas. The intimacy that Vergil enjoyed at court, is shewn by his being one of those who went to Brundusium along with Maecenas, when the latter was negotiating a treaty between Augustus and Antony.[8]

Loss of his farm

Regains his farm

A second time loses his farm

Rising fortunes of Vergil, 40 B.C.

Through the munificent kindness of his patrons he was raised to luxury and affluence. He had a magnificent house in Rome on the Esquiline, near the residences of Horace and

His residences

[7] Eclogues I and IX. [8] Horace Satires I, 5 and 10.

Maecenas, estates in Sicily, and in Campania, near Naples. The mild climate and clear skies of Southern Italy suited his delicate constitution, and till his death, his Campanian residence was his favorite abode.[9] From the date of his early Eclogues till his death, little need be said of his life except that he devoted himself to study and to the completion of his immortal works.

Death and Character.

In the year 19 B.C. he went to Greece, possibly with a view to restore his health, and to give a finish to his great work, the Aeneid. At Athens he met Augustus, who had just returned from Samos. Vergil returned to Italy in company with the emperor, but died at Brundusium three days after he landed, September 22nd, 19 B.C. He was buried near Naples on the road leading to Puteoli (*Puzzuoli*). His epitaph, said to have been dictated by himself in his last moments, was as follows :—

Death

Epitaph

> *Mantua me genuit; Calabri rapuere; tenet nunc*
> *Parthenope. Cecini pascua, rura, duces.*[10]

It is said that shortly before his death Vergil wished to destroy the Aeneid rather than leave it in its unfinished state. His friends, however, dissuaded him, and the poem was afterwards edited and published by Varius and Tucca, under the patronage of Augustus and Maecenas.

Vergil is generally described as of tall stature, delicate frame, homely features, and dark complexion, abstinent in the use of food, shy, and fond of retirement. Horace is said to have had Vergil in his mind's eye when he wrote[11] the lines thus rendered by Conington :

> "The man is passionate, perhaps misplaced
> In social circles of fastidious taste;
> His ill-trimmed beard, his dress of uncouth style,
> His shoes ill-fitting, may provoke a smile;
> But he's the soul of virtue; but he's kind;
> But that coarse body hides a mighty mind."

---

[9] Geo. IV, 563. *Illo Vergilium me tempore dulcis alebat*
Parthenope, studiis florentem ignobilis oti.

[10] Some have taken the last line to refer to the Eclogues, the Georgics, and the Aeneid.

[11] Hor. Sat. I, 3, 29-34.

He was so pure and chaste that the Neapolitans gave him the name of Parthenias, or the maiden.[12] He is said to have been shy and even awkward in society, and these traits even the polished society of the Capital never succeeded in eradicating. He was distrustful of his own powers, which high ideas of literary excellence led him to underrate.

In the midst of an irreligious age, he had the strongest religious sentiment; in the midst of vice he remained virtuous; and while licentiousness disfigures the writings of many of his brother poets, the pages of Vergil everywhere inculcate the highest truths of morality and virtue.

III

Works

Early Works

Vergil is said to have attempted in his youth an epic poem[13] on the wars of Rome, but the difficulty of the task soon led him to abandon his design. His earlier poems, *Culex*, *Moretum*, *Ciris*, *Copa*, and those that pass under the name *Catalepta*, though they give little proof of great ability, still show the careful attention the poet bestowed on metre and diction.

Eclogues

1. The writings that first established the reputation of Vergil were the **Eclogues**,[14] pastoral poems, *ten* in number, written between **43 B.C.** and **37 B.C.** This species of poetry was as yet unknown in Italy, though it had already reached its perfection in the hands of the Sicilian Theocritus, whose influence may be traced in many writers from the days of Vergil to those of Tennyson. The Idyll[15] of Theocritus exhibits a true picture of the shepherd's life, the joys and sorrows, character, sentiment and habits of the rural swains, the piny woods, the upland lawns and feeding flocks, the sea and sky of Sicily. Vergil's Eclogues, on the other hand, can hardly be said to be true pictures of pastoral life. His shepherds and shepherdesses belong to the island of Sicily rather

Theocritus as a pastoral poet

Theocritus and Vergil compared

---

[12] παρθένος, a maiden. [13] Eclogue VI, 3.

[14] These were called by the generic term *Bucolica* (βουκολικά, sc. ποιήματα, from βουκολέω, *to tend cattle*). The term *Eclogue* is from the Greek ἐκλογή, *a choice collection*, and may mean that the poems under that name were a selection made from a large number. Spenser wrote the word *Æglogue*, following the derivation of Petrarch, αἰγῶν λόγοι, "*tales of goats*" or "*tales of goatherds.*"

[15] εἰδύλλιον, *a little picture.*

than to the district of Mantua. His characters are too conventional, his representation of life too artificial. Still the earlier poems of Vergil have beauties. Their melodious diction, their soft and easy flowing style,[16] were admired by Horace, no mean judge of the poet's art.

The Georgics

2. The **Georgics**[17] in *four* books, was written (between **37 B.C.** and **30 B.C.**[18]) at the request of Maecenas,[19] to whom the poem was dedicated. In this didactic Epic, Vergil copies largely from Hesiod, Nicander, and Aratus.[20] While the Eclogues have justly been regarded as inferior to the Idylls of his Greek original, Theocritus, the Georgics, on the other hand, have been accounted superior to any other poem on the same subject that has ever appeared. The harmonious and graceful language, the pleasing descriptions of rural scenes, the apt and charming episodes, all combine to lend an interest to a subject, which in any other hands would have been intolerably dull. The time was ripe for such a poem. Agriculture had been the chief employment and the honored occupation of the Romans from the early days of the City. The long-continued wars had, however, desolated Italy.[21] Even after war had ceased, the soldier, too long accustomed to camps and the excitement of a military life, cared little about the prosaic life of a farmer. To recall the peaceful habits of rural industry, the poem, which Addison pronounces "the most complete, elaborate and finished piece of all antiquity," was written. The *first* book treats of tilling the fields, the *second* of orchards, the *third* of the care of

Beauties of the Georgics

Contents of Georgics

---

[16] Sat. I, 10, 45

[17] *Georgica* γεωργικά, from γεά = γῆ, *the earth* and ἔργον *a work.*

[18] The chief historical events alluded to in the Georgics are: the death of Julius Caesar, 44 B.C. (*B.* I, 456); the civil wars ended by the battle of Philippi, 42 B.C. (*B.* I, 490); the wars waged (34 B.C.) in Parthia under Antony, and those on the Rhine under Agrippa (*B.* I, 509); the battle of Actium and the submission of the East, 30 B.C. (*B.* II, 172; III, 27-32; IV, 562); the irruptions of the Daci on the Danube, 30 B.C. (*B.* II. 497).

[19] See the opening lines of Georgics, I and IV.

[20] Hesiod's *Works and Days;* Aratus's *Phaenomena;* Nicander's *Georgics.*

[21] Civil wars had been waged, almost continuously, in Italy from 49 to 31 B.C.

non ullus aratro
Dignus honos, squalent abductis arva colonis,
Et curvae rigidum falces conflantur in ensem.

horses and cattle, and the *fourth*, of bees. The two most successful imitations in English of this poem are Philips's *Pastorals*, and Thompson's *Seasons*.

3. The **Aeneid**,[22] in *twelve* books, written between **29 B.C.** and **19 B.C.**, recounts the story of the escape of Aeneas from burning Troy, his wanderings over the deep in search of a home which the fates had promised, his final settlement in Italy as the founder of the Roman Empire destined in after ages to rule the world. No doubt, Vergil borrowed largely from the Greek and Roman writers who preceded him. The Romans were original in no department of literature, except perhaps in the departments of History and Jurisprudence. Vergil can hardly be called a borrower any more than the rest of his countrymen in other spheres of letters. The object of Vergil was to produce a national epic, by showing the various steps in the growth of the Empire, and in doing this, he had to give prominence to the influence of Greek literature as an important element in moulding Roman thought.

Aeneid

Vergil charged with plagiarism

Style of the Aeneid.

Defects.—Vergil has been severely censured[23] for (1) deficiency in the power of invention, (2) intermixture of Greek and Latin traditions, (3) anachronisms, (4) his mode of representing the character of Aeneas, (5) the sameness of the individual characters. These are the main charges brought by his detractors, and though we grant the full indictment brought against the poem, Vergil still has the proud claim of being one of the greatest of epic poets. No doubt his power of invention is less than Homer's, no doubt he did intermingle the traditions of Greece and those of Rome (for this, as we have remarked, could hardly be otherwise in his age), no doubt he did commit the heinous crime of anachronism (but he sins in this along with Shakespeare and Milton), and there is no doubt that his hero Aeneas is cold-blooded and uninteresting.

Vergil criticised

[22] The first notice of the Aeneid that we have is in a letter of Vergil to Augustus written probably 26 B.C., when the latter was on an expedition against the Cantabrians. *De Aenea quidem meo, si mehercule jam dignum auribus haberem tuis, libenter mitterem: sed tanta inchoata res est, ut paene vitiis mentis tantum opus ingressus mihi videar, cum praesertim, ut scio, alia quoque studia ad id opus multoque potiora impertiar.* Macrob. Sat. I, 24, 12.

[23] Especially by the Emperor Caligula, Markland, and Niebuhr.

Excellencies.—These defects, however, are far more than counterbalanced by his many excellencies. There is in Vergil a great **tenderness of feeling**, something better and more charming than mere Roman virtue or morality. That he excels in **pathos**, as Homer in sublimity, is an old opinion, and it is surely the right one. This pathos is given at times by a single epithet, or by a slight touch, or with graceful art by an indirect allusion; this tenderness is more striking as contrasted with the stern Roman character and with the stately majesty of the verse. The poet never becomes affected or sentimental; he hardly ever offends against **good taste**; he knows where to stop; he is excellent in his silence as well as in his speech; Vergil, as Tennyson says, is a master of language, but no one can really be a master of language unless he be also a master of thought, of which language is the expression. To the above-named qualities may be added **picturesqueness** in description; **variety** and **artistic taste** in grouping incidents; also **dramatic power**, particularly in *Books* I and IV.

Vergil defended

Crutwell thus defends Vergil in regard to the main charge: "The Aeneid was meant to be, above all things, a national poem, carrying on the lines of thought, the style of speech, which national progress had chosen; and it was not meant to eclipse, so much as to do honour to, early literature. There those bards who, like Ennius and Naevius, had done good service to Rome by singing, however rudely, her history, find their *imagines* ranged in the gallery of the Aeneid. Thus they met with the flamens and pontiffs, who drew up the ritual formularies; with the antiquarians and pious scholars, who had sought to find a meaning in the immemorial names, whether of place or custom or person; with the magistrates, novelists and philosophers, who had striven to ennoble and enlighten Roman virtue, with the Greek singers and sages, for they, too, had helped to rear the towering fabric of Roman greatness. All these meet together in the Aeneid, as in solemn conclave, to review their joint work, to acknowledge its final completion, and to predict its impending downfall. This is beyond question the explanation of the wholesale appropriation of others' thoughts and language, which would otherwise be sheer plagiarism."

Object of Aeneid

Writers differ in regard to **the object that Vergil had in writing the Aeneid.** *Spence, Holdsworth* and *Warton* say that the poem was written with a **political object** to reconcile the Romans to the new order of things. This view is also held by *Pope*, who says that the poem had as much a political object as Dryden's Absalom and Achitophel; that its primary object was to **praise Augustus**, and the secondary one was to **flatter the Romans** by dwelling on the splendor of their origin. "Augustus is evidently typified under the character of Aeneas; both are cautious and wise in counsel; both are free from the perturbations of passion; they were cold, unfeeling, and uninteresting; their wisdom and policy were worldly-minded and calculating. Augustus was conscious that he was acting a part, as his last words show; and the contrast between the sentiment and conduct of Aeneas, whenever the warm impulses of affection might be supposed to have sway, likewise created an impression of insincerity. The characteristic virtue which adorns the hero of the Aeneid, as the epithet *pius*, so constantly applied to him, shows, was filial piety, and there was no virtue which Augustus more ostentatiously put forward than dutiful affection to Julius Caesar who adopted him."—Browne.

IV

Metre

The dactylic hexameter

The Aeneid is written in the heroic metre of the Romans; viz.: the **dactylic hexameter.** This was the most ancient as well as the most dignified form of verse among the Greeks and Romans. It was cultivated at an early period, long before the beginnings of authentic history, since we find it in its most perfect shape in the poems of Homer and Hesiod, and in the responses of the Delphic oracle. Ennius is said to have discarded the rude Saturnian metre of his predecessors, and to have introduced the hexameter among the Romans. Vergil's poetry is generally regarded as the model for this kind of verse among the Latins.

The dactylic hexameter consists, as its name implies, of **six feet**, the **first four** of which may be **dactyls or spondees**; the **fifth is usually a dactyl**, and the **sixth invariably a spondee.** The following is the scheme:

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — — (∪)
— — | — — | — — | — — | [— —] |

Rules for Quantity.

In scanning, the pupil should understand that his general knowledge of quantity must be constantly brought into use. For example, from the beginning of his studies he has learnt that *-is* of the dat. and abl. plur. is long, and *-is* of the gen. sing. is short. So *-a* of the nom. is short, and *-a* of the abl. is long. He knows also that a vowel before a final *t* is short. The following special rules may be helpful; in fact, to make scanning easy, they must be continually referred to.

1. A **vowel before a vowel** in the same word is **short.** Exceptions *Aenēas* and many other proper names, *illīus*, etc.

2. A **vowel before two consonants (not a mute and liquid)** is **long by position.**

3. **Before a mute and liquid** (e.g., *pl* or *tr*) **a short vowel is common.**

4. The prefix *re-* (back or again) and the enclitic *-que* are naturally short. They may, of course, be long by position.

5. For both quantity and elision (see sec. 5 below) the **letter h** does not count as a consonant. For instance, in *hīc Dŏlŏ|pūm mănŭs| hic*, *B.* II, 29, the *us* is short, as if *u* stood before one consonant only; and in *meminiss(e) horret*, *B*, II, 12, *e* is elided as before a vowel.

Peculiarities of Metre.

No. of dactyls and spondees

1. For the **comparative number of dactyls and spondees** in the first four places no definite rule can be given. Generally speaking, the line is more smooth when the arrangement is varied to avoid monotony. A succession of dactyls may be used for various reasons, *e.g.:*

a sudden feeling, *B.* II, 120:

> *obstipuere animis, gelidusque per ima cucurrit*
> *ossa tremor.*

a sudden act: *B.* II, 553:

> *dextraque coruscum*
> *extulit ac lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem.*

agitated feeling: *B.* II, 735.

> *hic mihi nescio quod trepido male numen amicum*
> *confusam eripuit mentem.*

On the other hand a succession of spondees may be employed to describe *a labored effort: B.* II, 561.

> *ut regem aequaevum crudeli vulnere vidi*
> *vitam exhalentem ;*

Where the death of king Priam is described.

So also, *B.* II, 416 :

> *adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti*
> *confligunt,*

When warring winds engage in strife.

Spondaic line

2. The fifth foot is sometimes, though rarely, a spondee, in which case the verse is called **a spondaic**[25] **line** : *e.g., B.* II, 68.

> *constitit, atque oculis Phrygia agmina circumspexit:*

The measured look of Sinon slowly scanning his audience is well brought out by the last word.

Word Caesura

3. When the last syllable of a word remains over, after the completion of a foot, that syllable is called a caesural syllable, in consequence of its being separated, or *cut off*, as it were, from the rest of the word in scanning the verse. The term **caesura**[26] is also applied to a pause or stress of the voice, which naturally rests on the caesural syllable. The melody of the verse depends in a great measure on the position of the caesura. The chief verse caesuras in the dactylic hexameter are:

Verse Caesura

Penthemimeral Caesura

(*a*) *Penthemimeral*[27] *Caesura* at the end of the first syllable of the *third* foot : *B.* II, 8.

> *Tēmpĕrĕt| ā lăcrĭ|mīs" ? ēt| jam nōx| ūmĭdă| caelo.*

Hephthemimeral Caesura

(*b*) *Hephthemimeral*[28] *Caesura*, at the end of the first syllable of the *fourth* foot : *B.* , II, 2.

> *Īndĕ tŏr|ō pătĕr| Āenē|ās" sīc| ōrsŭs ăb| āltō.*

Trochaic Caesura

(*c*) *Trochaic*[29] *Caesura,* after the *trochee* of the third foot: *B.* II, 3.

> *Īnfān|dūm, rēg|īnă", jŭ|bēs rĕnŏ|vārĕ dŏ|lōrēm.*

---

[25] In Vergil we have 28 spondaic lines: 17 of these end in a quadrisyllable, 9 in a trisyllable, 2 in a monosyllable.

[26] Called by the Greeks τομή, *a cutting.*

[27] From πέντε, *five; ἥμι, half; μέρος, a part,* or *foot:* hence the *fifth-half-foot* caesura. This is also called the *strong* or *masculine* caesura.

[28] From ἕπτα, *seven ; ἥμι, half; μέρος, a part* or *foot:* hence the *seventh-half-foot*-caesura.

[29] Also called the *weak* or *feminine* caesura.

Bucolic Caesura

(*d*) *Bucolic*[30] *Caesura*, at the end of the dactyl of the *fourth* foot when this foot is a dactyl and ends the word : *B*. II, 99.

In vūl|g(um) āmbĭgŭ|ās ēt| quāerĕrĕ" |cōnscĭŭs|ārmā.

It may be observed, generally, that a verse may have one, two, or three caesuras ; that verse, however, is best divided in which the sense pause and the caesural pause coincide as in each case given above.

Last word in the line

4. The last word in a dactylic hexameter line is for the most part a dissyllable,[31] or a trisyllable. A quadrisyllable is rarely allowed, except in the case of a proper name. Sometimes, but rarely, a monosyllable is employed at the end of a line. It is generally *est*, and in this case is usually accompanied by an elision : See *B*. II, 68, 163, 250.

5. **Metrical figures** :

Metrical figures

(*a*) **Elision** occurs when a word ends in a vowel or diphthong, or with the letter *-m* preceded by a vowel and the following word begins with a vowel, diphthong, or the letter *h*. When such is the case the last syllable of the word so ending in a vowel, diphthong, or the letter -m preceded by a vowel is elided, *i.e.*, struck out altogether in scansion, and is not regarded as a part of the verse, as *B*. II, 1,

Cōntĭcŭ|ēr(e) ōm|nēs īn|tēntī|qu(e) ōră tĕn|ēbānt.

B. II, 62 :

Sēu vēr|sārĕ dŏ|lōs sēu| cērt(ae) ōc|cūmbĕrĕ|mōrtī.

B. II, 57 :

Ēccĕ, măn|ūs jŭvĕn|(em) īntĕrĕ|ā pōst| tērgă rĕ|vīnctūm.

In the first the *e* final is elided both in *conticuere* and in *intentique* before *omnes* and *ora*.

In the second the diphthong *-ae* in *certae* is elided before *occumbere*.

In the third final *-em* in *juvenem* is elided before *interea*.

Hiatus

(*b*) The *non-elision* of a vowel or diphthong before an initial vowel or *h*, or diphthong is called **hiatus** : *B*. I, 16.

Pōsthăbĭ|tā cŏlŭ|īssĕ Săm|ō. Hīc| īllĭŭs| ārmă.

---

[30] So called because it is often employed by Vergil in his pastoral or Bucolic poetry. This caesura is common in the poems of Theocritus.

[31] Leaving out the three unfinished lines in the first book of the Aeneid we have 420 dissyllabic ; 323 trisyllabic ; 8 monosyllabic ; 2 quadrisyllabic endings.

(*c*) **Synaeresis** is defined as the union of two vowels in sound which should be properly pronounced separately: as *B*. II, 339:

Synaeresis

Āddūnt| sē sŏcĭ|ōs Rhīp|eus ēt| māxĭmŭs| ārmīs.

B. II, 391:

Ārmă dă|būnt īp|sī. Sīc| fātūs| deīndĕ cŏm|āntēm.|

This is also called **synizesis.**

(*d*) **Synapheia** is the principle of continuous scansion. It sometines happens that a final vowel, diphthong, or *-m* preceded by a vowel at the end of a line is elided before an initial vowel, diphthong, or *h* at the beginning of the next line: *B*. II, 745.

Synapheia

Quēm nōn| īncū|sāvi ā|mēns hŏmĭ|nūmquĕ dĕ|ōrūm|qu(e).
aut quid in eversa vidi crudelius urbe?

The *-que* is joined to the *aut* of the next line.

There are in Vergil altogether twenty-one such hypermetrical lines.

Hypermetrical lines

(*e*) **Ictus** is the beat of the foot which corresponds with the elevation of the voice (ἄρσις). This naturally falls on the first syllable of a foot, and we, therefore, find cases occurring in which a syllable naturally short is lengthened, simply from its occupying the ordinary place of a long syllable: *B*. II, 563.

Ictus

ēt dī|rēptă dŏm|ūs, ēt| pārvī| cāsŭs Ī|ūlī.

See also *B*. II, 411.

Nōstrōrum| ōbrŭĭ|mūr, ŏrĭt|ūrquĕ mĭs|ērrĭmă| cāedēs.

Note that *-us* in *domus* (Nom.) is long, and *-ur* in *obruimur.*

This happens when the caesural pause and the pause in the sense are coincident.

V

The Trojan War

Like Homer's Iliad and Odyssey, the Aeneid is based upon events supposed to have happened in that legendary and romantic period known as the Trojan War. These events, as depicted in literature, are almost entirely poetic and not in the strict sense historical. The legend is that once there was a wealthy and powerful city named Ilium or Troja on the

coast of Asia Minor. In a contest between the three goddesses, Venus, Juno and Minerva for the Apple of Discord, Venus was awarded the prize by the young Trojan prince Paris (or Alexander), son of King Priam. Paris, who at the time was being brought up as a shepherd boy on Mt. Ida and had been chosen judge for the contest, was bribed by Venus with the promise that she would give him the most beautiful woman in the world for wife. This woman proved to be Helen, wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta.

Paris, on a visit to the court of Menelaus during the absence of the latter, induced Helen to elope with him to Troy. Menelaus, to recover his wife and punish the Trojans for harboring her, assembled a large army of Greeks, led by various petty Grecian kings and commanded by Menelaus' brother, Agamemnon, king of Argos and Mycenae. This army laid siege to Troy. After the siege had lasted ten years, by the stratagem of a huge wooden horse filled with soldiery the city was captured and burned, and all but a remnant of the inhabitants were put to the sword. This remnant scattered to different localities around the coast of the Mediterranean. According to the Roman legend, Aeneas, led by the Fates, conducted a party of Trojans to the west coast of Italy and there founded the colony from which afterwards grew the "Eternal City," Rome.

VI

Story of the Aeneid

Ancestors of Aeneas

Aeneas was the son of Anchises and Venus, and thus connected with the royal family of Troy. In the earlier stages of the war he did not take any part, and not till his flocks were driven from Mount Ida by Achilles did he lead his followers against the Greeks. When the Greeks, after a siege of ten years, took the city, Aeneas, according to Vergil, *Leaves Troy* carries off on his shoulders the aged Anchises, takes young Ascanius by the hand, and with Creusa following behind escapes to Mount Ida. His wife Creusa, in the confusion of the siege, is lost in the darkness. He appears to have left the *Wanderings of Aeneas* burning city at the end of the war, and, with a fleet of twenty vessels and a number of followers, set sail from



Paris.

Lands at Thrace

Troy in quest of a land destined by the fates. He first lands in Thrace, and begins to build a city, but is deterred by the ghost of the murdered Polydorus. Next he sails to Delos, then to Crete, where the Penates appear to Aeneas, and declare his destined home to be in Italy, the native land of Dardanus. Again he sets sail and is driven by a storm to the Strophades, Leucadia, and Chaonia, where he finds Helenus, a seer, son of Priam, and king of that country, who tells Aeneas to sail round Sicily. The ships of Aeneas land in the country of the Cyclops, Polyphemus, near Aetna, but Achaemenides, whom Ulysses had left behind in the cave of the Cyclops, advises them to flee from the land of Polyphemus. Guided by Achaemenides, Aeneas passes Scylla and Charybdis and lands at Drepanum, where Anchises dies. He then starts out for Italy, but stress of weather drives him on the coast of Africa, near Carthage. Juno, aware that Rome one day would conquer her beloved Carthage, had an unrelenting hatred against Aeneas, and instigated Aeolus to let loose the winds and wreck the Trojan fleet. Neptune, however, interferes in time and calms the troubled waves. The Trojans find a sheltered harbor for the seven remaining ships and soon land. They afterwards discover that they are on the coast of Africa. Jupiter had meanwhile despatched Mercury to prepare Dido to give a kind welcome to the shipwrecked followers of Aeneas. Surrounded by a cloud, and invisible to all, Aeneas and Achates go to explore the country. They see the towers and walls of the youthful city, and are surprised to find their missing comrades holding audience with the queen. Under the guise of Ascanius, Cupid is sent by Venus to kindle love in the breast of Dido. Dido is married to Aeneas. Other fortunes the fates had in store for him. Mercury is sent to remonstrate with Aeneas. In spite of the love and entreaties of Dido, the order is given to sail, and once more the Trojans steer for Italy. Dido, through grief for her fickle lover, mounts the funeral pile and stabs herself, and then her attendants burn her body. He arrives a second time at Drepanum, and then for nine days celebrates the funeral games in honour of his dead father, Anchises. While the games were in progress, some of the Trojan women, despairing of ever having a settled home, fire the ships. Jupiter sends rain and puts out the fire, but not

At the Strophades

At Sicily

At Carthage

Dido kills herself

Arrives Sicily a second time

Founds Segesta

till four ships are destroyed. Aeneas leaves in Sicily all the elderly people and all weary of roaming, and these found Segesta. The rest sail for Italy and land at Cumae. Then he meets the Sibyl, under whose guidance he descends to the lower world, and learns the full details of his future life. Latinus, king of the land on which Aeneas landed, had a daughter Lavinia, whose hand is sought for by Turnus, king of the Rutuli. The Latins summon allies from all sides to repel the foreigners, while Aeneas obtains the aid of Evander, and seeks the assistance of the Etrurians. While he is absent, the Trojan camp is attacked without success by Turnus and the Latins. Aeneas returns, and displays his prowess in battle. He slays Mezentius, the Etruscan, and Turnus, and afterwards marries Lavinia.

Wars in Italy

VII

The Contents of the Second Book

Introductory

The first book of the Aeneid relates how, when off the coast of Sicily, seven years after the fall of Troy, a great storm fell upon the fleet of Aeneas, and drove it upon the shores of Libya, where he and his comrades were hospitably received by Dido, queen of Carthage, in her newly-built capital. At the conclusion of a royal banquet given in their honor, Dido entreats Aeneas to tell the tale of Troy's destruction and his own wanderings. The second and third books of the Aeneid contain the narrative of these events.

Compare with this the narrative of Ulysses to Alcinous in the Odyssey, *Books* IX-XII.

Aeneas begins his story

1-13. Aeneas, amid breathless silence, thus begins: "Thou biddest me tell a tale of woe, O queen, and thus renew unutterable sorrow, but, though my mind shudders at the remembrance, I address myself to the task."

The wooden horse

The Greeks sail to Tenedos

12-24. Baffled in all their attempts to capture Troy, the Greeks build a huge wooden horse, in which they conceal their most noted leaders. They pretend it is a votive offering to Minerva to ensure a safe return home. They then withdrew with all their ships to Tenedos, an island near Troy.

Joy of the Trojans

25-39. The Trojans, in joy at the departure of their enemies, sally forth, and delight to inspect the deserted

shore. Conflicting opinions prevail as to what should be done with the horse. Some advise that it be destroyed; others that it be brought into the city. *Conflicting opinions regarding the horse*

40-56. Laocoon, priest of Neptune, mistrusts the Greeks, "even when bearing gifts." To emphasize his fear of strategy, he hurls his mighty spear against the belly of the horse, which gives an ominously hollow sound. *Laocoon's warning*

57-76. Meanwhile a young Greek named Sinon has been captured, and is dragged before King Priam. He has purposely thrown himself in the way, with the object of deceiving the Trojans. He simulates fear, but is reassured by the Trojans, who bid him give an account of himself. *Sinon appears on the scene*

77-144. Protesting his own veracity, Sinon goes on to tell of the betrayal of his companion-in-arms, Palamedes, by Ulysses, his own grief and indignation, and the dire revenge of Ulysses. He tragically breaks off his story just as he reaches the most exciting part, and calls upon them to slay him at once and gratify the Grecian leaders. Burning with curiosity the Trojans bid him proceed, and he does so, feigning emotion. The Greeks had long desired to return home, and had been prevented only by adverse weather, particularly when they had erected this horse to propitiate Minerva. An oracle of Apollo informed them that, as they, on leaving Greece, had appeased the winds by the blood of a slain virgin, so now they must seek return by the sacrificing of a Grecian life. Calchas, the seer, after ten days' silence, named Sinon as the doomed one, and all acquiesce. As the day of sacrifice approaches he snatches himself from death by fleeing to a marsh and hiding till the Greeks have gone. Sinon concludes his tale by a most pathetic reference to the probable fate of his family at home, and breaks down in tears. *Sinon's tale of persecution* *His escape from the Greeks*

145-198. His tears have the desired effect. Priam orders his fetters to be removed, bids him forget the Greeks, become a Trojan, and tell them why the horse was built. After again "protesting too much" his pure intentions, Sinon proceeds to explain that the anger of Minerva was kindled against the Greeks by the stealing of the Palladium, the sacred image of Minerva, on the possession of which the safety of Troy depended. Calchas declared that they must return to Greece and seek fresh auspices. Meanwhile they must set up this *Sinon pretends to explain the object of the horse*

horse as a propitiatory offering to Minerva, and build it huge and high to prevent the Trojans from bringing it into the city, and thus securing the divine protection it would carry with it. Tricked by this perjured art the Trojans yield to the temptation so subtly put in their way, and "those whom neither Tydeus' son nor Larissaean Achilles, nor ten years nor a thousand ships could conquer," succumb to the wiles of Sinon.

The Trojans are deceived

Fate of Laocoon

199-233. And now, as if to abet the treacherous Sinon, Minerva sends from Tenedos two serpents to attack Laocoon, as he is sacrificing at the altar. Side by side they swim the channel, and with deadly aim make for the two sons of the priest. After strangling the two boys, they turn upon Laocoon himself as he comes to the rescue. His horrifying shrieks rend the air. At last the serpents, their deadly work over, seek the shelter of Minerva's statue, and nestle at her feet. This intimation is all the superstitious Trojans require. Laocoon's warning is now regarded as sacrilege, and his fate as a punishment from Heaven.

The horse enters the city

234-249. Deceived by Sinon and influenced by the omen, the Trojans make an opening in their walls, and, amid the singing of boys and girls, draw the monster into the city. Four times it is halted, and four times the arms within give forth an ominous sound. But blinded and heedless the Trojans persist, and station the horse in the very citadel. Cassandra prophesies the dreadful result, but, as usual, is disbelieved. Ignorant of their impending fate the hapless Trojans deck themselves and celebrate the event.

The Greeks by night take possession of the city

250-267. Meanwhile night shrouds the city and "the wiles of the Greeks"; the Trojans rest in peaceful slumbers from the unwonted excitement and merry-making of the day; the fleet steals back from Tenedos; and Sinon, under cover of the darkness, releases the pent-up Grecian heroes. The night-watches are slain, and, admitting their comrades through the open gates, the Greeks set out on their work of murder and destruction.

The shade of Hector warns Aeneas

268-297. The shade of Hector appears to Aeneas in his sleep, and, informing him of the true situation, bids him flee the city. Hector places the image of Vesta and the sacred

fire in Aeneas' hands and tells him to build for the household gods of Troy a new city beyond the seas.

Aeneas aroused

298-317. Aeneas awakes, rushes to the top of his father's house, and beholds the city in flames. He frantically seizes his arms, resolving to hasten to the citadel, and, if necessary, to die fighting.

Panthus brings tidings

Aeneas and a band of Trojans hasten to the rescue

318-369. As he rushes forth, he is met by Panthus, priest of Apollo, who has just escaped from the citadel. In response to enquiries, Panthus tells how the city has been captured. Aeneas hastens towards the scene of conflict and is joined by several Trojans, among whom is Coroebus, the betrothed of Cassandra. Exhorted by Aeneas, this band moves on like a pack of hungry wolves. Terrible is the slaughter, and manifold are the scenes of death.

The tide of battle is turned; but only temporarily

370-434. Not all on one side is the carnage. Androgeos and a large band of Greeks are taken unawares, and slain. On the suggestion of Coroebus, the victorious Trojans don the armor of the fallen Greeks, and continue their deadly work in disguise. Dismay is spread among the Greeks. But, alas! it is useless to fight against the fates. Coroebus spies Cassandra dragged along in chains, and rushes to her rescue. Here weapons of their friends kill many of the Trojans, who are mistaken for Greeks; and the Greeks suddenly discovering the deception, rally from all quarters and overwhelm the followers of Aeneas. Coroebus and others fall; the remainder are scattered.

Destruction of Priam's Palace

435-505. Aeneas, with only two followers, now makes his way to the abode of Priam. Here the brunt of the battle rages, the Greeks assaulting and the Trojans stoutly defending. Aeneas enters by a secret door in the rear and goes out upon the roof. He pries up a turret and hurls it down upon the Greeks beneath. Many are crushed by the fall, but others press on.

Pyrrhus, in glittering armor, smashes in the door, and through the opening the terrified inmates can be seen. Meanwhile despair and confusion reign within. The Greeks, led by Pyrrhus, come pouring in like the resistless tide of a river. The household is slain and the palace wrecked.

Death of Priam

506-558. The aged king, seeing his palace in the hands of the enemy, girds on his armor, resolved to die in arms. His

wife, Hecuba, as she clings to the altar in the middle of the court, sees him and calls upon him to take refuge with her. Polites, one of Priam's sons, rushes in and is slain by Pyrrhus before his father's eyes. The old man breaks forth into an angry denunciation of the murderer, but the latter turns on him, and with the words, "Take this message to my father in Hades, and be sure to tell him his son is degenerate," he plunges his sword to the hilt in the old man's side. The body of the once proud ruler of Asia now lies nameless and exposed on the shore.

Aeneas encounters Helen

559-633. Aeneas suddenly finds himself alone, when he espies Helen crouching in concealment by the temple of Vesta. Indignant at the thought of her returning home in triumph from the city which she has ruined, he is on the point of slaying her, but he is suddenly checked by his goddess-mother, Venus. The latter bids him think of rescuing his family, leaving Helen to her fate. Not Helen, but the gods have brought about the downfall of Troy. The gods are then revealed to Aeneas assisting the Greeks in the destruction of the city. Aeneas' eyes are opened to the futility of further resistance, and, protected by Venus, he passes to his home.

Prevented from slaying her by his mother, Venus

Aeneas prepares to leave the city

634-729. Aeneas endeavors to persuade his father to flee, but the latter refuses. In vain do all the household implore him to yield. Aeneas, in despair, calls for his arms, and is about to rush forth to his death, when Creusa beseeches him to remain and defend his home and family. Suddenly a supernatural light plays harmlessly about the head of the young Iulus. It is regarded as an omen by Anchises, who calls upon Jupiter to ratify it. A favorable response being given, Anchises consents to accompany Aeneas. The latter takes his father on his shoulders, and, with Iulus at his side and Creusa following at a distance, hastens out of the city.

Obstinacy of Anchises overcome by a prodigy

Loss of Creusa

730-770. Hurrying along, in terror at every sight and sound, Aeneas is suddenly alarmed by approaching foes, and in the excitement becomes separated from Creusa. Not till he reaches the temple of Ceres outside the walls, does he miss her. His anguish then is heart-rending.

Leaving father, son, and companions, he returns in quest of Creusa. From place to place he goes. The Greeks hold everything; yet he fills the air with cries for the lost Creusa.

The shade of Creusa appears to Aeneas

771-795. Suddenly the shade of Creusa confronts him. In affectionate terms she bids him grieve for her no longer, but bow to the will of Heaven. She then unfolds his future career, and vanishes.

Aeneas flees to the mountains

796-804. Recovering from his astonishment, Aeneas returns to his companions. He finds a pitiable throng collected to accompany him into exile. And now as the morning star rises above Ida, he again takes his father on his shoulders and "flees to the mountains."

VIII

Manuscripts

There are seven MSS. in capitals of the Æneid. These are:

(1) The Vatican text, in the library of the Vatican. It contains scattered portions of the *Æneid* and *Georgics*, and belongs to the period of the Emperor Septimius Severus, 200 A.D.

(2) The *Sangallensis*, belonging to the library of St. Gall. It is fragmentary, containing only portions of the Æneid and Georgics.

(3) The *Mediceus*, belonging to the period of 370 A.D. It contains about half of the Eclogues, the whole of the Georgics and Æneid, and is in the Laurentian Library of Florence.

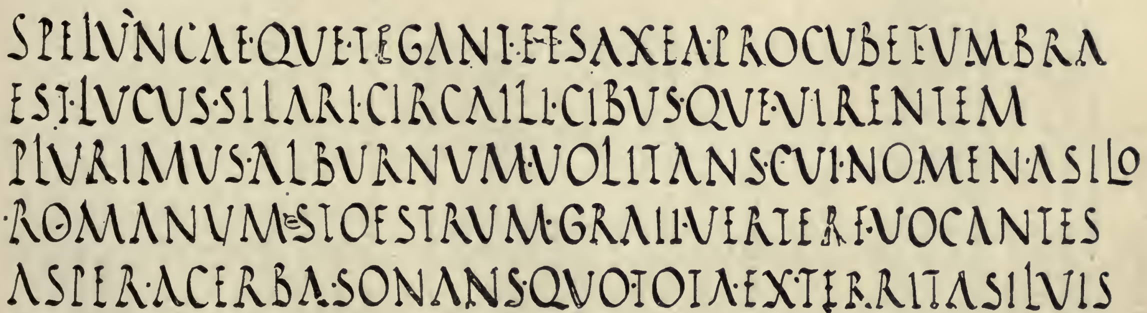
(4) The *Palatine* in the Vatican Library, belonging to the 4th or 5th century A.D.

(5) The *Romanus*, belonging to the 4th century, also in the Vatican. This and the *Mediceus* are the best.

(6) The *Veronensis* in the library of Verona.

(7) The *Augustus*, said to belong to the *Augustan* period. Part of it is in Berlin, part in the Vatican.

Facsimile of Codex Romanus (4th or 5th Century) of Vergil, Geo. III., 145-149, illustrating the earliest approach extant to Vergilian handwriting. For purposes of printing reduced almost one half.



Reprint in Modern Capitals :—

SPELVNCAE·QVE·TEGANT·ET·SAXEA·PROCVBET·VMBRA
EST·LVCVS·SILARI·CIRCAILI·CIBVS·QVE·VIRENTEM
PLVRIMVS·ALBVRNVM·VOLITANS·CVI·NOMEN·ASILO
ROMANVM·eSTOESTRVM·GRAII·VERTERE·VOCANTES
ASPER·ACERBA·SONANS·QVO·TOTA·EX·TERRITASILVIS

Representation in a modern text :—

speluncaeque tegant et saxea procubet umbra.
est lucos (MS lucus) Silari circa ilicibusque virentem
plurimus Alburnum volitans, cui nomen asilo
Romanum est, oestrum Grai vertere vocantes,
asper, acerba sonans, quo tota exterrita silvis



Aeneas at the Court of Dido. P. GUERIN.



VERGIL, THE ROMAN POET

P. VERGILI MARONIS AENEIDOS

LIBER II

SCENE—*Dido's Court: Carthage*

Aeneas Begins His Story of the Fall of Troy

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant.
inde toro Pater Aeneas sic orsus ab alto:
infandum, regina, jubes renovare dolorem,
Trojanos ut opes et lamentabile regnum
eruerint Danai, quaeque ipse miserrima vidi, 5
et quorum pars magna fui. quis talia fando
Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut duri miles Ulixi
temperet a lacrimis? et jam nox umida caelo
praecipitat, suadentque cadentia sidera somnos,
sed si tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros, 10
et breviter Trojae supremum audire laborem,
quamquam animus meminisse horret luctuque refugit
incipiam.

The Wooden Horse

fracti bello fatisque repulsi
ductores Danaum, tot jam labentibus annis,
instar montis equum divina Palladis arte 15
aedificant, sectaque intexunt abiete costas:
votum pro reditu simulant; ea fama vagatur.
huc delecta virum sortiti corpora furtim
includunt caeco lateri, penitusque cavernas
ingentes uterumque armato milite complent. 20

The Greeks retire to Tenedos

Joy of the Trojans—Conflicting opinions as to the disposal of the horse.

est in conspectu Tenedos, notissima fama
insula, dives opum, Priami dum regna manebant,
nunc tantum sinus et statio male fida carinis:
huc se provecti deserto in litore condunt.
nos abiisse rati et vento petiisse Mycenas. 25
ergo omnis longo solvit se Teucria luctu:
panduntur portae; juvat ire et Dorica castra
desertosque videre locos litusque relictum.
hic Dolopum manus, hic saevus tendebat Achilles;
classibus hic locus, hic acie certare solebant. 30
pars stupet innuptae donum exitiale Minervae,
et molem mirantur equi; primusque Thymoetes
duci intra muros hortatur et arce locari,
sive dolo, seu jam Trojae sic fata ferebant.
at Capys, et quorum melior sententia menti, 35
aut pelago Danaum insidias suspectaque dona
praecipitare jubent, subjectisque urere flammis;
aut terebrare cavas uteri et temptare latebras.
scinditur incertum studia in contraria vulgus.

Laocoon's Warning

"Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes"—He hurls his spear at the horse.

primus ibi ante omnes, magna comitante caterva, 40
Laocoon ardens summa decurrit ab arce;
et procul: 'o miseri, quae tanta insania, cives?
creditis avectos hostes? aut ulla putatis
dona carere dolis Danaum? sic notus Ulixes?
aut hoc inclusi ligno occultantur Achivi, 45
aut haec in nostros fabricata est machina muros
inspectura domos venturaque desuper urbi;
aut aliquis latet error: equo ne credite, Teucri.
quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.'
sic fatus validis ingentem viribus hastam 50
in latus inque feri curvam compagibus alvum
contorsit. stetit illa tremens, uteroque recusso
insonuere cavae gemitumque dedere cavernae.
et, si fata deum, si mens non laeva fuisset,
impulerat ferro Argolicas foedare latebras; 55
Trojaque nunc staret, Priamique arx alta, maneres.

Sinon's Perfidy

Sinon appears on the scene—His pitiful appeal.

ecce, manus juvenem interea post terga revinctum
pastores magno ad regem clamore trahebant
Dardanidae, qui se ignotum venientibus ultro,
hoc ipsum ut strueret Trojamque aperiret Achivis, 60
obtulerat, fidens animi, atque in utrumque paratus,
seu versare dolos, seu certae occumbere morti.
undique visendi studio Trojana juventus
circumfusa ruit, certantque illudere capto.
accipe nunc Danaum insidias, et crimine ab uno 65
disce omnes.
namque ut conspectu in medio turbatus inermis

constitit, atque oculis Phrygia agmina circumspexit:
'heu, quae nunc tellus,' inquit, 'quae me aequora possunt
accipere? aut quid jam misero mihi denique restat, 70
cui neque apud Danaos usquam locus, et super ipsi
Dardanidae infensi poenas cum sanguine poscunt?'
quo gemitu conversi animi, compressus et omnis
impetus. hortamur fari; quo sanguine cretus,
quidve ferat, memoret, quae sit fiducia capto. 75
ille haec, deposita tandem formidine, fatur:

Sinon's story of persecution by Ulysses.

'cuncta equidem tibi, rex, fuerit quodcumque, fatebor
vera,' inquit: 'neque me Argolica de gente negabo:
hoc primum; nec, si miserum fortuna Sinonem
finxit, vanum etiam mendacemque improba finget. 80
fando aliquod si forte tuas pervenit ad aures
Belidae nomen Palamedis et incluta fama
gloria, quem falsa sub proditione Pelasgi
insontem infando indicio, quia bella vetabat,
demisere neci, nunc cassum lumine lugent; 85
illi me comitem et consanguinitate propinquum
pauper in arma pater primis huc misit ab annis.
dum stabat regno incolumis, regumque vigebat
consiliis, et nos aliquod nomenque decusque
gessimus. invidia postquam pellacis Ulixi— 90
haud ignota loquor—superis concessit ab oris,
afflictus vitam in tenebris luctuque trahebam,
et casum insontis mecum indignabar amici.
nec tacui demens; et me, fors si qua tulisset,
si patrios unquam remeassem victor ad Argos, 95
promisi ultorem, et verbis odia aspera movi.
hinc mihi prima mali labes; hinc semper Ulixes
criminibus terrere novis; hinc spargere voces
in vulgum ambiguas, et quaerere conscius arma.



The Fates M. ANGELO.

Clotho colum retinet, Lachesis net, et Atropos occat.

nec requievit enim, donec Calchante ministro— 100
sed quid ego haec autem nequiquam ingrata revolvo?
quidve moror, si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos,
idque audire sat est? jamdudum sumite poenas:
hoc Ithacus velit, et magno mercentur Atridae.'
tum vero ardemus scitari et quaerere causas, 105
ignari scelerum tantorum artisque Pelasgae.'
prosequitur pavitans, et ficto pectore fatur:

After feigning hesitation, Sinon renews his story—Instigated by Ulysses, Calchas the seer dooms him to death.

'saepe fugam Danai Troja cupiere relicta
moliri et longo fessi discedere bello;—
fecissentque utinam!—saepe illos aspera ponti 110
interclusit hiems, et terruit Auster euntes.
praecipue, cum jam hic trabibus contextus acernis
staret equus, toto sonuerunt aethere nimbi.
suspensi Eurypylum scitantem oracula Phoebi
mittimus; isque adytis haec tristia dicta reportat: 115
sanguine placastis ventos et virgine caesa,
cum primum Iliacas, Danai, venistis ad oras:
sanguine quaerendi reditus, animaque litandum
Argolica. vulgi quae vox ut venit ad aures,
obstipuere animis, gelidusque per ima cucurrit 120
ossa tremor, cui fata parent, quem poscat Apollo.
hic Ithacus vatem magno Calchanta tumultu
protrahit in medios; quae sint ea numina divum,
flagitat. et mihi jam multi crudele canebant
artificis scelus, et taciti ventura videbant. 125
bis quinos silet ille dies, tectusque recusat
prodere voce sua quemquam aut opponere morti.
vix tandem, magnis Ithaci clamoribus actus,
composito rumpit vocem, et me destinat arae.
adsensere omnes, et, quae sibi quisque timebat, 130

unius in miseri exitium conversa tulere.
jamque dies infanda aderat; mihi sacra parari,
et salsae fruges, et circum tempora vittae.

Sinon tells of his escape from the Greeks—King Priam takes pity on him, welcomes him as a citizen of Troy, and bids him explain the object of the horse.

eripui, fateor, leto me, et vincula rupi;
limosoque lacu per noctem obscurus in ulva 135
delitui, dum vela darent, si forte dedissent.
nec mihi jam patriam antiquam spes ulla videndi,
nec dulces natos exoptatumque parentem;
quos illi fors et poenas ob nostra reposcent
effugia, et culpam hanc miserorum morte piabunt. 140
quod te per superos et conscia numina veri,
per, si qua est, quae restet adhuc mortalibus usquam
intemerata fides, oro, miserere laborum
tantorum, miserere animi non digna ferentis.'
his lacrimis vitam damus, et miserescimus ultro. 145
ipse viro primus manicas atque arta levari
vincla jubet Priamus, dictisque ita fatur amicis:
'quisquis es, amissos hinc jam obliviscere Graios:
noster eris; mihique haec edissere vera roganti.
quo molem hanc immanis equi statuere? quis auctor? 150
quidve petunt? quae religio aut quae machina belli?'

Sinon resumes—The horse was erected to atone to Minerva for the theft of the Palladium.

dixerat. ille dolis instructus et arte Pelasga,
sustulit exutas vinclis ad sidera palmas:
'vos aeterni ignes, et non violabile vestrum
testor numen,' ait, 'vos arae ensesque nefandi, 155
quos fugi, vittaeque deum, quas hostia gessi:
fas mihi Graiorum sacrata resolvere jura,



Minerva Bellica.

fas odisse viros, atque omnia ferre sub auras,
si qua tegunt: teneor patriae nec legibus ullis.
tu modo promissis maneas, servataque serves 160
Troja fidem, si vera feram, si magna rependam.

omnis spes Danaum et coepti fiducia belli
Palladis auxiliis semper stetit. impius ex quo
Tydides sed enim scelerumque inventor Ulixes,
fatale aggressi sacrato avellere templo 165
Palladium, caesis summae custodibus arcis,
corripuere sacram effigiem, manibusque cruentis
virgineas ausi divae contingere vittas;
ex illo fluere ac retro sublapsa referri
spes Danaum; fractae vires, aversa deae mens. 170
nec dubiis ea signa dedit Tritonia monstris.
vix positum castris simulacrum: arsere coruscae
luminibus flammae arrectis, salsusque per artus
sudor iit, terque ipsa solo—mirabile dictu—
emicuit, parmamque ferens hastamque trementem. 175
extemplo temptanda fuga canit aequora Calchas;
nec posse Argolicis exscindi Pergama telis,
omina ni repetant Argis, numenque reducant,
quod pelago et curvis secum avexere carinis.
et nunc, quod patrias vento petiere Mycenas, 180
arma deosque parant comites, pelagoque remenso
improvisi aderunt. ita digerit omina Calchas.
hanc pro Palladio moniti, pro numine laeso
effigiem statuere, nefas quae triste piaret.

Sinon's master-stroke—The Trojans tempted to bring the horse into the city.

hanc tamen immensam Calchas attollere molem 185
roboribus textis, caeloque educere jussit,
ne recipi portis, aut duci in moenia possit,
neu populum antiqua sub religione tueri.

nam si vestra manus violasset dona Minervae,
tum magnum exitium—quod di prius omen in ipsum 190
convertant!—Priami imperio Phrygibusque futurum:
sin manibus vestris vestram ascendisset in urbem,
ultro Asiam magno Pelopea ad moenia bello
venturam, et nostros ea fata manere nepotes.'
talibus insidiis perjurique arte Sinonis 195
credita res, captique dolis lacrimisque coactis
quos neque Tydides, nec Larissaeus Achilles,
non anni domuere decem, non mille carinae.

The Fate of Laocoon

hic aliud majus miseris multoque tremendum
objicitur magis, atque improvida pectora turbat. 200
Laocoon, ductus Neptuno sorte sacerdos,
sollemnes taurum ingentem mactabat ad aras.
ecce autem gemini a Tenedo tranquilla per alta—
horresco referens—immensis orbibus angues
incumbunt pelago, pariterque ad litora tendunt; 205
pectora quorum inter fluctus arrecta jubaeque
sanguineae superant undas; pars cetera pontum
pone legit, sinuantque immensa volumine terga;
fit sonitus spumante salo. jamque arva tenebant,
ardentesque oculos suffecti sanguine et igni 210
sibila lambebant linguis vibrantibus ora.
diffugimus visu exsangues: illi agmine certo
Laocoonta petunt; et primum parva duorum
corpora natorum serpens amplexus uterque
implicat, et miseros morsu depascitur artus; 215
post ipsum, auxilio subeuntem ac tela ferentem,
corripiunt, spirisque ligant ingentibus; et jam
bis medium amplexi, bis collo squamea circum
terga dati, superant capite et cervicibus altis.
ille simul manibus tendit divellere nodos, 220

perfusus sanie vittas atroque veneno;
clamores simul horrendos ad sidera tollit:
qualis mugitus, fugit cum saucius aram
taurus et incertam excussit cervice securim.
at gemini lapsu delubra ad summa dracones 225
effugiunt, saevaeque petunt Tritonidis arcem,
sub pedibusque deae, clipeique sub orbe teguntur.
tum vero tremefacta novus per pectora cunctis
insinuat pavor; et scelus expendisse merentem
Laocoonta ferunt, sacrum qui cuspide robur 230
laeserit, tergo sceleratam intorserit hastam.
ducendum ad sedes simulacrum, orandaque divae
numina conclamant.

The Horse Enters the City

dividimus muros et moenia pandimus urbis.
accingunt omnes operi, pedibusque rotarum 235
subjiciunt lapsus, et stuppea vincula collo
intendunt. scandit fatalis machina muros,
feta armis: pueri circum innuptaeque puellae
sacra canunt, funemque manu contingere gaudent.
illa subit, mediaeque minans illabitur urbi. 240
o patria, o divum domus Ilium, et incluta bello
moenia Dardanidum! quater ipso in limine portae
substitit, atque utero sonitum quater arma dedere.
instamus tamen immemores caecique furore.
et monstrum infelix sacrata sistimus arce. 245
tunc etiam fatis aperit Cassandra futuris
ora, dei jussu non unquam credita Teucris.
nos delubra deum miseri, quibus ultimus esset
ille dies, festa velamus fronde per urbem.

Night falls—The fleet returns from Tenedos—Sinon releases the Grecian heroes from within the horse.

vertitur interea caelum, et ruit Oceano nox 250
involvens umbra magna terramque polumque
Myrmidonumque dolos; fusi per moenia Teucri

conticuere; sopor fessos complectitur artus.
et jam Argiva phalanx instructis navibus ibat
a Tenedo, tacitae per amica silentia lunae, 255
litora nota petens, flammas cum regia puppis
extulerat, fatisque deum defensus iniquis,
inclusos utero Danaos et pinea furtim
laxat claustra Sinon. illos patefactus ad auras
reddit equus, laetique cavo se robore promunt 260
Thessandrus Sthenelusque duces, et dirus Ulixes,
demissum lapsi per funem, Acamasque, Thoasque,
Pelidesque Neoptolemus, primusque Machaon,
et Menelaus, et ipse doli fabricator Epeos.
invadunt urbem somno vinoque sepultam; 265
caeduntur vigiles, portisque patentibus omnes
accipiunt socios, atque agmina conscia jungunt.

The Ghost of Hector Warns Aeneas

tempus erat, quo prima quies mortalibus aegris
incipit, et dono divum gratissima serpit.
in somnis, ecce, ante oculos maestissimus Hector 270
visus adesse mihi, largosque effundere fletus,
raptatus bigis, ut quondam, aterque cruento
pulvere, perque pedes trajectus lora tumentes.
hei mihi, qualis erat! quantum mutatus ab illo
Hectore, qui redit exuvias indutus Achilli, 275
vel Danaum Phrygios jaculatus puppibus ignes!
squalentem barbam, et concretos sanguine crines,
vulneraque illa gerens, quae circum plurima muros
accepit patrios. ultro flens ipse videbar
compellare virum, et maestas expromere voces: 280
'o lux Dardaniae, spes o fidissima Teucrum,
quae tantae tenuere morae? quibus Hector ab oris
exspectate venis? ut te post multa tuorum
funera, post varios hominumque urbisque labores

defessi aspicimus! quae causa indigna serenos 285
foedavit vultus? aut cur haec vulnera cerno?
ille nihil, nec me quaerentem vana moratur,
sed graviter gemitus imo de pectore ducens,
'heu! fuge, nate dea, teque his,' ait, 'eripe flammis.
hostis habet muros; ruit alto a culmine Troja. 290
sat patriae Priamoque datum; si Pergama dextra
defendi possent, etiam hac defensa fuissent.
sacra suosque tibi commendat Troja Penates;
hos cape fatorum comites; his moenia quaere,
magna pererrato statues quae denique ponto.' 295
sic ait, et manibus vittas Vestamque potentem
aeternumque adytis effert penetralibus ignem.

The Destruction of the City

Aeneas awakes, rushes to the top of his father's house and beholds the city in flames.

diverso interea miscentur moenia luctu;
et magis atque magis, quamquam secreta parentis
Anchisae domus arboribusque obtecta recessit, 300
clarescunt sonitus, armorumque ingruit horror.
excutior somno, et summi fastigia tecti
ascensu supero, atque arrectis auribus adsto;
in segetem veluti cum flamma furentibus Austris
incidit, aut rapidus montano flumine torrens 305
sternit agros, sternit sata laeta boumque labores,
praecipitesque trahit silvas, stupet inscius alto
accipiens sonitum saxi de vertice pastor.
tum vero manifesta fides, Danaumque patescunt
insidiae. jam Deïphobi dedit ampla ruinam, 310
Vulcano superante, domus; jam proximus ardet
Ucalegon; Sigea igni freta lata relucent:
exoritur clamorque virum clangorque tubarum.
arma amens capio; nec sat rationis in armis;

sed glomerare manum bello et concurrere in arcem 315
cum sociis ardent animi. furor iraque mentem
praecipitant, pulchrumque mori succurrit in armis.

Panthus, priest of Apollo, brings tidings.

ecce autem telis Panthus elapsus Achivum,
Panthus Othryades, arcis Phoebique sacerdos,
sacra manu victosque deos parvumque nepotem 320
ipse trahit, cursuque amens ad limina tendit.
'quo res summa loco, Panthu? quam prendimus arcem?'
vix ea fatus eram, gemitu cum talia reddit:
'venit summa dies et ineluctabile tempus
Dardaniae. fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium et ingens 325
gloria Teucrorum. ferus omnia Juppiter Argos
transtulit: incensa Danai dominantur in urbe.
arduus armatos mediis in moenibus adstans
fundit equus, victorque Sinon incendia miscet
insultans: portis alii bipatentibus adsunt, 330
millia quot magnis umquam venere Mycenis;
obsedere alii telis angusta viarum
oppositi; stat ferri acies mucrone corusco
stricta, parata neci; vix primi proelia temptant
portarum vigiles, et caeco Marte resistunt.' 335

Maddened by the news, Aeneas rushes forth, and is joined by several Trojans.

talibus Othryadae dictis et numine divum
in flammas et in arma feror, quo tristis Erinys,
quo fremitus vocat et sublatus ad aethera clamor.
addunt se socios Rhipeus et maximus armis
Epytus, oblati per lunam, Hypanisque Dymasque, 340
et lateri agglomerant nostro, juvenisque Coroebus
Mygdonides. illis ad Trojam forte diebus
venerat, insano Cassandrae incensus amore,

et gener auxilium Priamo Phrygibusque ferebat,
infelix, qui non sponsae praecepta furentis 345
audierit.

These he exhorts to face death bravely, and together they press on like a pack of hungry wolves.

quos ubi confertos audere in proelia vidi,
incipio super his: 'juvenes, fortissima frustra
pectora, si vobis audentem extrema cupido
certa sequi, quae sit rebus fortuna videtis: 350
excessere omnes, adytis arisque relictis,
di, quibus imperium hoc steterat; succurritis urbi
incensae: moriamur, et in media arma ruamus:
una salus victis nullam sperare salutem.'
sic animis juvenum furor additus. *inde, lupi ceu* 355
raptores atra in nebula, quos improba ventris
exegit caecos rabies, catulique relicti
faucibus exspectant siccis, per tela, per hostes
vadimus haud dubiam in mortem, mediaeque tenemus
urbis iter.
nox atra cava circumvolat umbra. 360
quis cladem illius noctis, quis funera fando
explicet, aut possit lacrimis aequare labores?
urbs antiqua ruit, multos dominata per annos;
plurima perque vias sternuntur inertia passim
corpora, perque domos et religiosa deorum 365
limina. nec soli poenas dant sanguine Teucri;
quondam etiam victis redit in praecordia virtus,
victoresque cadunt Danai. crudelis ubique
luctus, ubique pavor, et plurima mortis imago.

The tide of battle turns—Androgeos and his band of Greeks surprised and slaughtered.

primus se, Danaum magna comitante caterva, 370
Androgeos offert nobis, socia agmina credens
inscius, atque ultro verbis compellat amicis:

'festinate viri : nam quae tam sera moratur
segnities? alii rapiunt incensa feruntque
Pergama : vos celsis nunc primum a navibus itis!' 375
dixit; et extemplo—neque enim responsa dabantur
fida satis—sensit medios delapsus in hostes.
obstipuit, retroque pedem cum voce repressit.
improvisum aspris veluti qui sentibus anguem
pressit humi nitens, trepidusque repente refugit 380
attollentem iras, et caerula colla tumentem :
haud secus Androgeos visu tremefactus abibat.
irruimus, densis et circumfundimur armis,
ignarosque loci passim et formidine captos
sternimus. adspirat primo fortuna labori. 385

Donning the armor of the fallen Greeks, Aeneas and his followers spread terror among the invaders. "Multos Danaum demittimus Orco."

atque hic successu exsultans animisque Coroebus,
'o socii, qua prima,' inquit, 'fortuna salutis
monstrat iter, quaque ostendit se dextra, sequamur :
mutemus clipeos, Danaumque insignia nobis
aptemus. dolus an virtus, quis in hoste requirat? 390
arma dabunt ipsi.' sic fatus deinde comantem
Androgei galeam clipeique insigne decorum
induitur, laterique Argivum accommodat ensem.
hoc Rhipeus, hoc ipse Dymas, omnisque juventus
laeta facit; spoliis se quisque recentibus armat. 395
vadimus immixti Danais haud numine nostro,
multaque per caecam congressi proelia noctem
conserimus; multos Danaum demittimus Orco.
diffugiunt alii ad naves, et litora cursu
fida petunt; pars ingentem formidine turpi 400
scandunt rursus equum, et nota conduntur in alvo.



Helen of Troy. SIR FRED'K LEIGHTON.

But, alas! the Fates are against them—Coroebus, by the rescue of Cassandra, draws fresh hordes of Greeks upon them.

heu nihil invitis fas quemquam fidere divis!
ecce trahebatur passis Priameia virgo
crinibus a templo Cassandra adytisque Minervae,
ad caelum tendens ardentia lumina frustra, 405
lumina, nam teneras arcebant vincula palmas.
non tulit hanc speciem furiata mente Coroebus,
et sese medium injecit periturus in agmen.
consequimur cuncti et densis incurrimus armis.
hic primum ex alto delubri culmine telis 410
nostrorum obruimur, oriturque miserrima caedes
armorum facie et Graiarum errore jubarum.
tum Danai gemitu atque ereptae virginis ira
undique collecti invadunt, acerrimus Ajax,
et gemini Atridae, Dolopumque exercitus omnis: 415
adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti
confligunt, Zephyrusque, Notusque, et laetus Eois
Eurus equis: stridunt silvae, saevitque tridenti
spumeus atque imo Nereus ciet aequora fundo.
illi etiam, si quos obscura nocte per umbram 420
fudimus insidiis, totaque agitavimus urbe,
apparent; primi clipeos mentitaque tela
agnoscunt, atque ora sono discordia signant.

Coroebus and others fall—The rest of the band are scattered.

ilicet obruimur numero: primusque Coroebus
Peneleï dextra divae armipotentis ad aram 425
procumbit; cadit et Rhipeus, justissimus unus
qui fuit in Teucris et servantissimus aequi;
dis aliter visum; pereunt Hypanisque Dymasque,
confixi a sociis; nec te tua plurima, Panthu,
labentem pietas, nec Apollinis infula texit. 430
Iliaci cineres, et flamma extrema meorum,

testor, in occasu vestro nec tela nec ullas
vitavisse vices Danaum, et si fata fuissent,
ut caderem, meruisse manu.

Destruction of Priam's Palace

Conflict at the doors of the Palace.

divellimur inde:
Iphitus et Pelias mecum; quorum Iphitus aevo 435
jam gravior, Pelias et vulnere tardus Ulixi;
protinus ad sedes Priami clamore vocati.
hic vero ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam
bella forent, nulli tota morerentur in urbe,
sic Martem indomitum, Danaosque ad tecta ruentes 440
cernimus, obsessumque acta testudine limen.
haerent parietibus scalae, postesque sub ipsos
nituntur gradibus, clipeosque ad tela sinistris
protecti objiciunt, prensant fastigia dextris.
Dardanidae contra turres ac tecta domorum 445
culmina convellunt: his se, quando ultima cernunt,
extrema jam in morte parant defendere telis;
auratasque trabes, veterum decora alta parentum,
devolvunt: alii strictis mucronibus imas
obsedere fores; has servant agmine denso. 450

Aeneas enters by a postern, rushes to the roof, and hurls a tower upon the Greeks below.

instaurati animi, regis succurrere tectis,
auxilioque levare viros, vimque addere victis.
limen erat caecaeque fores et pervius usus
tectorum inter se Priami, postesque relicti
a tergo, infelix qua se, dum regna manebant, 455
saepius Andromache ferre incomitata solebat
ad soceros, et avo puerum Astyanacta trahebat.

evado ad summi fastigia culminis, unde
tela manu miseri jactabant irrita Teucri.
turrim in praecipiti stantem summisque sub astra 460
eductam tectis, unde omnis Troja videri
et Danaum solitae naves et Achaica castra,
aggressi ferro circum, qua summa labantes
juncturas tabulata dabant, convellimus altis
sedibus, impulimusque: ea lapsa repente ruinam 465
cum sonitu trahit, et Danaum super agmina late
incidit.

But in vain: Pyrrhus and others press forward—An opening in the door is made.

ast alii subeunt; nec saxa, nec ullum
telorum interea cessat genus.
vestibulum ante ipsum primoque in limine Pyrrhus
exsultat telis et luce coruscus aena: 470
qualis ubi in lucem coluber mala gramina pastus,
frigida sub terra tumidum quem bruma tegebat,
nunc positis novus exuviis nitidusque juventa,
lubrica convolvit sublato pectore terga,
arduus ad solem, et linguis micat ore trisulcis. 475
una ingens Periphas et equorum agitator Achillis
armiger Automedon, una omnis Scyria pubes
succedunt tecto, et flammas ad culmina jactant.
ipse inter primos correpta dura bipenni
limina perrumpit, postesque a cardine vellit 480
aeratos; jamque excisa trabe firma cavavit
robora, et ingentem lato dedit ore fenestram.
apparet domus intus, et atria longa patescunt;
apparent Priami et veterum penetralia regum,
armatosque vident stantes in limine primo. 485

Scene of despair within the palace—The dread Pyrrhus bursts in—The household slaughtered—"tenent Danai, qua deficit ignis."

at domus interior gemitu miseròque tumultu
miscetur; penitusque cavae plangoribus aedes
femineis ululant; ferit aurea sidera clamor.
tum pavidae tectis matres ingentibus errant.
amplexaeque tenent postes, atque oscula figunt. 490
instat vi patria Pyrrhus; nec claustra, neque ipsi
custodes sufferre valent. labat ariete crebro
janua, et emoti procumbunt cardine postes.
fit via vi: rumpunt aditus, primòsque trucidant
immissi Danai, et late loca milite complent. 495
non sic, aggeribus ruptis cum spumeus amnis
exiit, oppositasque evicit gurgite moles,
fertur in arva furens cumulo, camposque per omnes
cum stabulis armenta trahit. vidi ipse furentem
caede Neoptolemum, geminosque in limine Atridas: 500
vidi Hecubam centumque nurus, Priamumque per aras
sanguine foedantem quos ipse sacraverat ignes.
quinquaginta illi thalami, spes tanta nepotum,
barbarico postes auro spoliisque superbi,
procubuere: tenent Danai, qua deficit ignis. 505

Death of Priam

forsitan et, Priami fuerint quae fata, requiras.
urbis uti captae casum convulsaque vidit
limina tectorum, et medium in penetralibus hostem,
arma diu senior desueta trementibus aevo
circumdat nequiquam umeris, et inutile ferrum 510
cingitur, ac densos fertur moriturus in hostes.
aedibus in mediis nudoque sub aetheris axe
ingens ara fuit juxtaque veterrima laurus,
incumbens arae atque umbra complexa penates.
hic Hecuba et natae nequiquam altaria circum, 515



Flight of Aeneas.

praecipites atra ceu tempestate columbae,
condensae et divom amplexae simulacra sedebant.
ipsum autem sumptis Priamum juvenalibus armis
ut vidit, 'quae mens tam dira, miserrime conjunx,
impulit his cingi telis? aut quo ruis?' inquit. 520
'non tali auxilio, nec defensoribus istis
tempus eget; non, si ipse meus nunc adforet Hector.
huc tandem concede; haec ara tuebitur omnes,
aut moriere simul.' sic ore effata recepit
ad sese, et sacra longaevum in sede locavit. 525
ecce autem elapsus Pyrrhi de caede Polites,
unus natorum Priami, per tela, per hostes
porticibus longis fugit, et vacua atria lustrat
saucius. illum ardens infesto vulnere Pyrrhus
insequitur, jam jamque manu tenet et premit hasta. 530
ut tandem ante oculos evasit et ora parentum,
concidit, ac multo vitam cum sanguine fudit.
hic Priamus, quamquam in media jam morte tenetur,
non tamen abstinuit, nec voci iraeque pepercit.
'at tibi pro scelere,' exclamat, 'pro talibus ausis, 535
di, si qua est caelo pietas, quae talia curet,
persolvant grates dignas, et praemia reddant
debita, qui nati coram me cernere letum
fecisti, et patrios foedasti funere vultus.
at non ille, satum quo te mentiris, Achilles 540
talis in hoste fuit Priamo; sed jura fidemque
supplicis erubuit, corpusque exsangue sepulcro
reddidit Hectoreum, meque in mea regna remisit.'
sic fatus senior, telumque imbelle sine ictu
conjecit, rauco quod protinus aere repulsum, 545
et summo clipei nequiquam umbone pependit.
cui Pyrrhus: 'referes ergo haec, et nuntius ibis
Pelidae genitori: illi mea tristia facta
degeneremque Neoptolemum narrare memento;

nunc morere.' hoc dicens, altaria ad ipsa trementem 550
traxit et in multo lapsantem sanguine nati,
implicuitque comam laeva, dextraque coruscum
extulit ac lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem.
haec finis Priami fatorum; hic exitus illum
sorte tulit, Trojam incensam et prolapsa videntem 555
Pergama, tot quondam populis terrisque superbum
regnatorem Asiae. jacet ingens litore truncus,
avulsumque umeris caput, et sine nomine corpus.

Turning sadly away, Aeneas espies Helen, and in rage is about to slay her,

at me tum primum saevus circumstetit horror.
obstipui; subiit cari genitoris imago, 560
ut regem aequaevum crudeli vulnere vidi
vitam exhalantem; subiit deserta Creüsa,
et direpta domus, et parvi casus Iuli.
respicio, et quae sit me circum copia lustro.
deseruere omnes defessi, et corpora saltu 565
ad terram misere aut ignibus aegra dedere.
jamque adeo super unus eram, cum limina Vestae
servantem et tacitam secreta in sede latentem
Tyndarida aspicio; dant clara incendia lucem
erranti passimque oculos per cuncta ferenti. 570
illa sibi infestos eversa ob Pergama Teucros,
et poenas Danaum et deserti conjugis iras
praemetuens, Trojae et patriae communis Erinys,
abdiderat sese, atque aris invisa sedebat.
exarsere ignes animo; subit ira cadentem 575
ulcisci patriam, et sceleratas sumere poenas:
scilicet haec Spartam incolumis patriasque Mycenas
aspiciet, partoque ibit regina triumpho?
conjugiumque domumque patres natosque videbit,
Iliadum turba et Phrygiis comitata ministris? 580

occiderit ferro Priamus? Troja arserit igni?
Dardanium toties sudarit sanguine litus?
non ita. namque, etsi nullum memorabile nomen
feminea in poena est nec habet victoria laudem,
exstinxisse nefas tamen et sumpsisse merentes 585
laudabor poenas, animumque explesse juvabit
ultricis flammae, et cineres satiasse meorum.

but he is checked by Venus, who reveals to him the fated destruction of the city and urges him to rescue his family.

talia jactabam, et furiata mente ferebar,
cum mihi se, non ante oculis tam clara, videndam
obtulit, et pura per noctem in luce refulsit 590
alma parens, confessa deam, qualisque videri
caelicolis et quanta solet; dextraque prehensum
continuit, roseoque haec insuper addidit ore:
'nate, quis indomitas tantus dolor excitat iras?
quid furis? aut quonam nostri tibi cura recessit? 595
non prius aspicies, ubi fessum aetate parentem
liqueris Anchisen? superet conjunxne Creüsa,
Ascaniusque puer? quos omnes undique Graiae
circum errant acies, et, ni mea cura resistat,
jam flammae tulerint inimicus et hauserit ensis. 600
non tibi Tyndaridis facies invisa Lacaenae,
culpatusve Paris, divum inclementia, divum,
has evertit opes, sternitque a culmine Trojam.
aspice—namque omnem, quae nunc obducta tuenti
mortales hebetat visus tibi et umida circum 605
caligat, nubem eripiam: tu ne qua parentis
jussa time, neu praeceptis parere recusa—
hic, ubi disjectas moles avulsaque saxis
saxa vides, mixtoque undantem pulvere fumum,
Neptunus muros magnoque emota tridenti 610
fundamenta quatit, totamque a sedibus urbem

eruit. hic Juno Scaeas saevissima portas
prima tenet, sociumque furens a navibus agmen
ferro accincta vocat.
jam summas arces Tritonia, respice, Pallas 615
insedit, limbo effulgens et Gorgone saeva.
ipse Pater Danais animos viresque secundas
sufficit; ipse deos in Dardana suscitat arma.
eripe, nate, fugam, finemque inpone labori.
nusquam abero, et tutum patrio te limine sistam.' 620
dixerat; et spissis noctis se condidit umbris.
apparent dirae facies, inimicaque Trojae
numina magna deum.

Despair of Aeneas

tum vero omne mihi visum considere in ignes
Ilium, et ex imo verti Neptunia Troja; 625
ac veluti summis antiquam in montibus ornum
cum ferro accisam crebrisque bipennibus instant
eruere agricolae certatim; illa usque minatur
et tremefacta comam concusso vertice nutat,
vulneribus donec paulatim evicta supremum 630
congemuit traxitque jugis avulsa ruinam.

Passing to his home, Aeneas in vain endeavors to induce his father to leave Troy.

descendo, ac ducente deo flammam inter et hostes
expedior; dant tela locum, flammaeque recedunt.
atque ubi jam patriae perventum ad limina sedis
antiquasque domos, genitor, quem tollere in altos 635
optabam primum montes primumque petebam,
abnegat excisa vitam producere Troja,
exsiliumque pati. 'vos o, quibus integer aevi
sanguis,' ait, 'solidaeque suo stant robore vires,
vos agitate fugam. 640

me si caelicolae voluissent ducere vitam,
has mihi servassent sedes. satis una superque
vidimus excidia, et captae superavimus urbi.
sic, o sic positum adfati discedite corpus.
ipse manu mortem inveniam: miserebitur hostis, 645
exuviasque petet. facilis jactura sepulcri.
jam pridem invisus divis et inutilis annos
demoror, ex quo me divum pater atque hominum rex
fulminis adflavit ventis, et contigit igni.'
talia perstabat memorans, fixusque manebat. 650
nos contra effusi lacrimis, conjunxque Creüsa
Ascaniusque omnisque domus ne vertere secum
cuncta pater fatoque urgenti incumbere vellet.
abnegat, inceptoque et sedibus haeret in isdem.

In desperation, Aeneas resolves to rush to his death, but his wife holds him back.

rursus in arma feror, mortemque miserrimus opto. 655
nam quod consilium aut quae jam fortuna dabatur?
'mene efferre pedem, genitor, te posse relicto
sperasti? tantumque nefas patrio excidit ore?
si nihil ex tanta superis placet urbe relinqui,
et sedet hoc animo, perituraeque addere Trojae 660
teque tuosque juvat, patet isti janua leto,
jamque aderit multo Priami de sanguine Pyrrhus,
natum ante ora patris, patrem qui obtruncat ad aras.
hoc erat, alma parens, quod me per tela, per ignes
eripis, ut mediis hostem in penetralibus, utque 665
Ascanium patremque meum juxtaque Creüsam
alterum in alterius mactatos sanguine cernam?
arma, viri, ferte arma: vocat lux ultima victos.
reddite me Danais; sinite instaurata revisam
proelia. numquam omnes hodie moriemur inulti.' 670
hinc ferro accingor rursus, clipeoque sinistram

insertabam aptans, meque extra tecta ferebam.
ecce autem complexa pedes in limine conjunx
haerebat, parvumque patri tendebat Iülum ;
'si periturus abis, et nos rape in omnia tecum ; 675
sin aliquam expertus sumptis spem ponis in armis,
hanc primum tutare domum. cui parvus Iülus,
cui pater, et conjunx quondam tua dicta relinquor?'

Anchises' obstinacy overcome by an omen.

talia vociferans gemitu tectum omne replebat ;
cum subitum dictuque oritur mirabile monstrum. 680
namque manus inter maestorumque ora parentum,
ecce levis summo de vertice visus Iuli
fundere lumen apex, tactuque innoxia molles
lambere flamma comas, et circum tempora pasci.
nos pavidi trepidare metu, crinemque flagrantem 685
excutere, et sanctos restinguere fontibus ignes.
at pater Anchises oculos ad sidera laetus
extulit, et caelo palmas cum voce tetendit :
'Juppiter omnipotens, precibus si flecteris ullis,
aspice nos—hoc tantum—et, si pietate meremur, 690
da deinde auxilium, pater, atque haec omina firma.'

vix ea fatus erat senior, subitoque fragore
intonuit laevum, et de caelo lapsa per umbras
stella facem ducens multa cum luce cucurrit.
illam, summa super labentem culmina tecti, 695
cernimus Idaea claram se condere silva,
signantemque vias ; tum longo limite sulcus
dat lucem, et late circum loca sulfure fumant.
hic vero victus genitor se tollit ad auras,
adfaturque deos, et sanctum sidus adorat. 700
'jam, jam nulla mora est ; sequor, et qua ducitis, adsum,
di patrii ; servate domum, servate nepotem ;
vestrum hoc augurium, vestroque in numine Troja est.
cedo equidem, nec, nate, tibi comes ire recuso.'

Aeneas, with Anchises on his shoulder, Iulus at his side and his wife Creusa following at a distance, proceeds to leave the city.

dixerat ille; et jam per moenia clarior ignis 705
auditur, propiusque aestus incendia volvunt.
ergo age, care pater, cervici imponere nostrae;
ipse subibo umeris, nec me labor iste gravabit;
quo res cumque cadent, unum et commune periclum,
una salus ambobus erit. mihi parvus Iülus 710
sit comes, et longe servet vestigia conjunx.
vos, famuli, quae dicam, animis advertite vestris.
est urbe egressis tumulus templumque vetustum
desertae Cereris, juxtaque antiqua cupressus,
religione patrum multos servata per annos: 715
hanc ex diverso sedem veniemus in unam.
tu, genitor, cape sacra manu patriosque penates:
me, bello e tanto digressum et caede recenti,
attrectare nefas, donec me flumine vivo
abluero.' 720
haec fatus, latos umeros subjectaque colla
veste super fulvique insternor pelle leonis;
succedoque oneri. dextrae se parvus Iülus
implicuit, sequiturque patrem non passibus aequis:
pone subit conjunx.

Loss of Creusa

Hurrying along in terror, Aeneas is by a sudden alarm separated from his wife.

ferimur per opaca locorum; 725
et me, quem dudum non ulla injecta movebant
tela, neque adverso glomerati ex agmine Graii,
nunc omnes terrent aurae, sonus excitat omnis
suspensum et pariter comitique onerique timentem.
jamque propinquabam portis, omnemque videbar 730
evasisse viam, subito cum creber ad aures

visus adesse pedum sonitus, genitorque per umbram
prospiciens, 'nate,' exclamat, 'fuge, nate; propinquant:
ardentes clipeos atque aera micantia cerno.'
hic mihi nescio quod trepido male numen amicum 735
confusam eripuit mentem. namque avia cursu
dum sequor, et nota excedo regione viarum,
heu! misero conjunx fatone erepta Creüsa
substitit, erravitne via, seu lassa resedit?
incertum; nec post oculis est reddita nostris. 740
nec prius amissam respexi, animumve reflexi,
quam tumulum antiquae Cereris sedemque sacratam
venimus: hic demum collectis omnibus una
defuit, et comites natumque virumque fefellit.

Leaving his father and son outside the city, he hastens back in search of Creusa.

quem non incusavi amens hominumque deorumque? 745
aut quid in eversa vidi crudelius urbe?
Ascanium Anchisenque patrem Teucrosque Penates
commendo sociis, et curva valle recondo;
ipse urbem repeto, et cingor fulgentibus armis.
stat casus renovare omnes, omnemque reverti 750
per Trojam, et rursus caput objectare periclis.

principio muros obscuraque limina portae,
qua gressum extuleram, repeto; et vestigia retro
observata sequor per noctem et lumine lustro.
horror ubique animo, simul ipsa silentia terrent. 755
inde domum, si forte pedem, si forte, tulisset,
me refero. irruerant Danai, et tectum omne tenebant.
ilicet ignis edax summa ad fastigia vento
volvitur; exsuperant flammae; furit aestus ad auras.
procedo, et Priami sedes arcemque reviso. 760
et jam porticibus vacuis Junonis asylo
custodes lecti Phoenix et dirus Ulixes

praedam adservabant. huc undique Troja gaza
incensis erepta adytis mensaeque deorum
crateresque auro solidi captivaque vestis 765
congeritur. pueri et pavidae longo ordine matres
stant circum.
ausus quin etiam voces jactare per umbram
implevi clamore vias, maestusque Creüsam
nequiquam ingeminans iterumque iterumque vocavi. 770

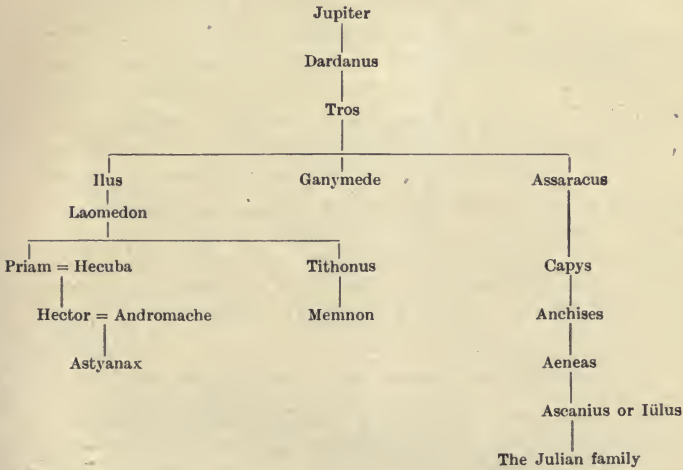
The shade of Creusa appears to Aeneas and, consoling him for her loss, predicts his glorious future.

quaerenti et tectis urbis sine fine furenti
infelix simulacrum atque ipsius umbra Creüsae
visa mihi ante oculos, et nota major imago.
obstipui, steteruntque comae, et vox faucibus haesit.
tum sic adfari, et curas his demere dictis: 775
'quid tantum insano juvat indulgere dolori,
o dulcis conjunx? non haec sine numine divum
eveniunt: nec te hinc comitem asportare Creüsam
fas aut ille sinit superi regnator Olympi.
longa tibi exsilia, et vastum maris aequor arandum, 780
et terram Hesperiam venies, ubi Lydius arva
inter opima virum leni fluit agmine Thybris;
illic res laetae regnumque et regia conjunx
parta tibi; lacrimas dilectae pelle Creüsae.
non ego Myrmidonum sedes Dolopumve superbas 785
aspiciam, aut Graiis servitum matribus ibo,
Dardanis, et divae Veneris nurus:
sed me magna deum Genetrix his detinet oris.
jamque vale, et nati serva communis amorem.'
haec ubi dicta dedit, lacrimantem et multa volentem 790
dicere deseruit, tenuesque recessit in auras.
ter conatus ibi collo dare bracchia circum;
ter frustra comprensa manus effugit imago,
par levibus ventis, volucrique simillima somno.

In the grey dawn Aeneas returns to his companions, and, taking up his aged father, "flees to the mountains."

sic demum socios consumpta nocte reviso. 795
atque hic ingentem comitum affluxisse novorum
invenio admirans numerum, matresque virosque,
collectam exsilio pubem, miserabile vulgus.
undique convenere, animis opibusque parati,
in quascumque velim pelago deducere terras. 800
jamque jugis summae surgebat Lucifer Idae,
ducebatque diem; Danaique obsessa tenebant
limina portarum, nec spes opis ulla dabatur:
cessi, et sublato montes genitore petivi.'

CONNECTION OF THE JULIAN FAMILY WITH THE TROJANS



NOTES ON VERGIL'S AENEID.

Book II

N.B.—In the grammatical references H. L. refers to the New First Latin Book by Henderson and Little. The numbers refer to the pages and sections on the page.

1. **conticuere—tenebant**: "*all were hushed, and, having their faces turned, they kept them (turned).*" The perfect (**conticuere**) describes a single completed act, while the imperfect (**tenebant**) expresses duration. —**ora** may be the object of **tenebant**, or accusative of Respect after **intenti**; cp. Aen. 6, 156, **defixus lumina,** H. L., 283, 7.

2. **orsus** sc. **est**, from **ordior**; often the parts of the verb **esse** are omitted in the perfect: see vs. 25, 165, 168, 172, 196.—**alto,** "*high*" above the others as a mark of honor.

3. **infandum**: note the emphasis gained by position: "*too grievous to tell is the woe thou bid'st me recall.*"—**jubeo**, like κελεύω in Greek, is used for both requests and commands.—sc. **me** with **jubes.**

4. **ut eruerint**: Indirect Question depending on the verb of *telling* implied in **renovare dolorem** since this is equivalent to **renovare dolorem narrando**: "*how the Greeks utterly destroyed the power of Troy and her woeful realm*": H. L., 200, 4.—**lamentabile**; adjs. in **-bilis** are usually passive as here. With the sentiment: cp. Tennyson, *Locksley Hall*—

> This is truth the poet sings,
> That a sorrow's crown of sorrow is remembering happier things.

5. **quaeque—fui**: "*and the very sad sights which I myself beheld and whereof I have formed a great part;*" both of these clauses are explanatory of **dolorem.** The narrative of Aeneas is largely personal and deals with the capture of Troy only; **quaeque** is epexegetic and limitative.

6. **talia fando**: "*in telling such a tale,*" or "*while such a tale is told,*" or equivalent to a conditional clause: "*if I were to tell such a tale.*"

7. **Myrmidonum—Dolopum—Ulixi**: Aeneas purposely mentions the most hard-hearted soldiers of the Grecian host. The Myrmidones and Dolopes were the soldiers from Phthia in Thessaly under the command of Achilles and his son Neoptolemus, while Ulixes, "the wiliest of men," is taken as a stock example of Greek perfidy.—**duri**, "*hardy*: cp. the Homeric πολυτλάς.—**Ulixi**, from the form **Ulixeus** (cp. Hor.

Od. 1, 6, 7), gen. **Ulixei** and then contracted into **Ulixi**; so also **Achilles,** gen. **Achillei, Achilli.** Note the difference between **-ve** disjoining members of the same class and **aut** disjoining different classes.

8. **temperet a lacrimis**: "*could refrain from tears*": Rhetorical Question; H. L., 193, 4. What answer is implied in a Rhetorical Question?—**caelo praecipitat**: "*is speeding down the slope of heaven*;" it is now past midnight. Night was said by the Romans to *rise* and *set* as the sun; v. 250.—**caelo**: H. L., 291, 3.

9. **suadentque—somnos**: bring out the alliteration in the original by translating, "*and the setting stars invite us to slumber.*"

10. **si,** sc., **est vobis**: H. L., 285, 6.

11. **supremum—laborem**: "*to hear Troy's last agony*;" so also we have the euphemistic expressions **dies supremus,** "*the day of death*;" **supremum iter,** "*the last journey.*"

12. **quamquam—refugit**: "*though my mind shudders at the recollection and has ever shrunk back from it in sorrow, I will begin.*" Distinguish between the construction of **quamquam** and **quamvis**: H. L., 254, 2, 3; 255, 4. Note the difference in the tense of **horret** and **refugit**; the former describes the present feelings of Aeneas and the latter an instantaneous act in the past whenever the request was made.—**luctu,** abl. of Cause.

13. **incipiam**: usually translated "*I will begin,*" but possibly "*I will undertake, or attempt.*"

14. **Danaum = Danaorum**: so also **Teucrum = Teucrorum**; **Achivum = Achivorum**; **virum = virorum**; **divum = divorum.**—**tot—annis**: "*when so many years were now slipping past*;" abl. abs. Troy was taken in the tenth year of the siege.

15. **instar montis**: "*as huge as a mountain.*" In Vergil **instar** is always accompanied by a genitive, except in Aen. 6, 865, **quantum instar in ipso,** "*what a model in himself*:" cp. Aen. 3, 637; 7, 707. It is an indeclinable noun used in the nom. and acc.; generally derived from root STA, "*to set up,*" hence, "*something set up,*" therefore "*an image.*"—**divina—arte.** Pallas favored the Greeks as Juno did the Trojans. The former was also the patroness of all kinds of art, hence by her aid the horse was built: Hom. Od. 8, 493; ἵππον, τὸν Ἐπειὸς ἐποίησεν σὺν Ἀθήνῃ. See also Il. 15, 70.

16. **secta abiete**: "*with interlacing planks of fir they form the sides.*" —**abiete**: abl. of Instrument. In scanning this verse **i** is consonantal in **abiete,** *i.e.*, it has to be pronounced **abyete,** and therefore the **ā** is long;

so also in 442, **părĭĕtĭbus**=**pāryĕtĭbus**; 492, **ărĭĕtĕ**=**āryĕtĕ**.—**intexunt**: a metaphor taken from weaving; the planks of the sides are placed horizontally across the ribs of the horse just as the horizontal threads of the woof are placed across the vertical threads of the warp.—**abiete**: note the variation in v. 112: **trabibus acernis.**

17. **votum** sc. **esse equum**: "*they pretend that it is a votive offering for their return*"—literally, "*that it has been vowed.*" Distinguish **simulare,** "*to pretend a thing to be what it is not;*" **dissimulare,** "*to conceal what a thing is.*"

18. **huc includunt**: "*they shut up in it;*" note **huc** is used, as motion is implied in **includunt**.—**delecta virum corpora**=**delectos viros** (by metonymy); object of either **sortiti** or **includunt**.—**sortiti**; literally, "*having chosen by lot*;" simply, "*having chosen.*"

19. **lateri caeco**: explanatory of **huc,** "*within the gloomy flank*"; we should have expected **in latus caecum.** Vergil is fond of using a dative of the *recipient* for the accusative with **ad** or **in**: cp, v. 36, **pelago**=**in pelagus**; v. 47, **urbi**=**in urbem**; v. 85, **neci**=**ad necem.**

20. **penitusque cavernas—complent,** a mere variation of the preceding clause. Point out a possible hendiadys here.

21. **in conspectu**: sc. **Trojae**: Tenedos was four miles from the shore of the Troad.

22. **dives opum**: "*rich of store*:" H. L., 288. Compare **dives** and decline **opum**: see vocabulary.—**dum manebant**: H. L., 259, 6.

23. **male fida**: literally, "*ill-faithful,*" *i.e.*, "*treacherous.*" With words of evil meaning, **male** intensifies their force; with words of good meaning, it contradicts it.

24. **huc**: join this with **provecti**: "*hither they proceed and conceal themselves on the deserted shore.*"—**deserto** shows a change in the fortunes of Tenedos.

25. **rati** sc. **sumus,** from **reor**: see note v. 2.—**vento,** abl. of Instrument: "*with a favoring breeze.*" **Mycenas**=**in Graeciam**: the royal city of Agamemnon, the leader of the Greeks, is put for the whole country.

26. Note that the slow and measured spondees well describe the lifting of the heavy load of grief from the hearts of the Trojans and with this contrast the liveliness of a squadron of horse: **quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.**—**longo—luctu**: "*the Trojan land puts her long grief away.*"—**luctu,** abl. of Separation.—with **Teucria** sc. **terra.**

27. **panduntur--portae**: a sign of peace: cp. Hor. Od. 3, 5, 25; **portasque non clausas**.—**juvat** sc. **vos**.—**Dorica** = **Graeca**: the Dorians were one of the leading tribes in the war of Troy; here put for the whole nation.

29. **hic—solebant**: the remarks of the Trojans are here quoted.—**tendebat** sc. **tentorium**, "*used to spread his tent.*" Homer says that during the siege the Greeks lived in wooden huts thatched with grass.

30. **pars stupet—mirantur**: **stupeo** is an example of an intransitive verb used transitively. Note the change in the number; the subject in the one case is regarded as a unit, in the other case the individuals are in the mind of the poet.—**Minervae**: Objective Gen. after **donum**, "*gift to Minerva.*"—**innuptae**: "*virgin,*" literally, "*unwedded*:" cp. the epithet παρθένος, "*a maiden;*" hence her temple at Athens was called **Parthenon**.

32. **primusque—Thymoetes**: "*and Thymoetes was the first that advised that it* (*i.e., the horse*) *be drawn within our walls and set in the citadel.*"—**duci**, sc. **equum**.—**arce**. = **in arce**; see note on v. 19. Poetry, both ancient and modern, often omits prepositions. The Pergama was the citadel of Troy. Note that Vergil uses an infinitive for **ut** with the subjunctive after **impello**, v. 55, 520; after **hortor**, v. 74, 627.

34. **sive—ferebant**: "*whether in guile or whether the doom of Troy was bringing on this end.*" Distinguish **nunc**, "*the present moment,*" "*now,*" Gk. νῦν; **jam**, including a period of the past up to the present and including it, "*all this time*:" Gk. ἤδη or δή.—**ferebant**; often **fero** is used with words such as **ita**, **sic**, without an object denoting a tendency of events: cp. Cic. Att. 2, 25, 2, **ut opinio et spes et conjectura nostra fert**, "*according to our opinion, hope and belief*:" Caesar, v. 13, **ut fert illorum opinio**.

35. **quorum—menti**, sc. **erat**: "*whose mind had better counsel*:" H. L., 285, 6.

36. **aut—latebras**: Capys advises three courses: (1) to hurl the horse headlong into the sea; (2) to burn it; (3) to examine it. The first two involve the destruction of the horse, and hence are connected by **que**; the main alternative is marked by **aut** between courses (1) and (2) on the one hand and (3) on the other. See note on **-ve** and **aut**; v. 7—**pelago** = **in pelagus**: see note on **lateri caeco**, v. 19.

39. **scinditur—vulgus**: the people are divided in opinion as to whether they should (*a*) draw the horse within the walls, or (*b*) destroy it (marked by (1) and (2)), or explore "the hidden caverns" (marked

by (3)), some adopting the advice of Thymoetes (*a*), others that of Capys (*b*).

40. **magnā—catervā**: "*followed by a great throng*:" abl. abs.

41. **ardens**: "*eagerly.*"—**arce**: Pergama, the citadel of Troy which overlooked the shore. Laocoon was the son of Priam and Hecuba and priest of Apollo.

42. **et procul**, sc. **exclamat**: the verb of *saying* is often omitted: cp. v. 287, **ille nihil**, sc. **respondit**, so also v. 547, **cui Pyrrhus.**

43. **aut—Danaum**: bring out the alliteration by translating "*or think you any gifts of Greeks from guile are free.*" H. L., 291, 3.—**Danaum** = **Danaorum**: see note v. 14.—**sic Ulixes**: "*is such your knowledge of Ulysses?*" Ulysses (as we have said before, see note v. 7) is taken throughout the Aeneid as a type of Greek cunning: cp. the Homeric epithets *πολύμητις*, *πολύτροπος*, *πολυμήχανος*.

45. **aut—Achivi**: "*either the Greeks are hid, caged in this wood.*"—**hoc ligno** = **in hoc ligno**: see note v. 32. As Gladstone in his **Juventus Mundi** points out, the three great appellatives of the Greeks were *Δαναοί* (Latin, **Danai**), *'Αργεῖοι* (**Argivi**) and *'Αχαῖοι* (**Achivi**), the general terms *Ἕλληνες* in Greek, and **Graeci** in Latin, were not yet applied to the whole race. Vergil following Homer calls the Greeks **Achivi, Danai** or **Argivi**, never **Graeci**, although he uses the adjective **Graius**, which was originally applied to a tribe of Epirus and probably after the time of Ennius applied in Latin to the whole country.

47. **inspectura**: the horse is looked upon as an engine of war (**machina**), which would look down on the houses of the city as a **turris** in a siege.—**urbi** = **in urbem**: see note v, 19.

48. **error**: "*trick.*"—**ne—equo**: note that in prose we do not have the negative imperative expressed in this way: H. L., 211, 4.

49. **et** = **etiam.** The gifts of foes were proverbially fatal: cp. Soph. Ajax, 664:

> *ἀλλ' ἐστ' ἀληθὴς ἡ βροτῶν παροιμία*
> *ἐχθρῶν ἄδωρα δῶρα κοὐκ ὀνήσιμα.*

cp. Psalm xxvi, 10: "*In whose hands is mischief, and their right hand is full of bribes.*"

50. **validis—viribus**: abl. of Manner; join with **contorsit**: "*with might and main.*" Of the five terms used by Vergil to express the casting of a spear, viz., **jacio, conjicio, torqueo, intorqueo** and **contorqueo**, the last is the strongest; "*with all the collected strength of a powerfully strong man.*"

51. **in—alvum**; "*against the flank and against the belly of the monster rounded with jointed timbers.*"—Note the emphasis gained by the repetition of the preposition **in.**—**compagibus**: abl. of Manner.—Note also that **-que** is added for explanation.

52. **illa**, sc. **hasta.**—**uteroque recusso**: "*by the reverberation of the womb:*" literally, "*the womb re-echoing.*"

53. **cavae**: perhaps to be taken predicatively, "*sounded hollow,*" or the structure may be the same as that of v. 38. Note the repetition of the same sound in **cavae cavernae**, to imitate the repetition of the echo. **In** in **insonuere** is intensive.

54. **laeva**: this line has been variously explained. (1) Conington says that with **fata, fuissent** alone should be supplied: "*had fate so willed it, had our mind been wise,*" taking **non laeva** closely. (2) **non** may be taken twice, with both **fata** and **mens**: "*had not the fates, had not our mind been perverse:*" (3) both **fata** and **mens** may be taken with **deum**: "*had heaven's decrees and will not been perverse.*"

55. **impulerat=impulisset**: "*he had surely moved us to mangle with the sword the hiding places of the Greeks.*" The indicative is more vivid and picturesque than the subjunctive in the apodosis of a conditional sentence since thus more reality and force are given to what would have happened.

56. We have as readings in this line both **staret—maneret** and **stares—maneres** as well as **staret—maneres.** The imperf. subj. means "*would now be standing—would now be remaining.*"—**manus—revinctum**: "*with hands tied behind his back.*"—**manus**: acc. of Respect, H. L., 283, 7. This is a frequent construction in Vergil: cp. **intenti ora** (v. 1); **oculos suffecti** (v. 210); **perfusus vittas** (v. 221); **trajectus lora** (v. 273); **exuvias indutus** (v. 273).

59. **qui—morti**: "*who, though a stranger, to compass this very thing,* (*namely*), *to open Troy to the Greeks, had designedly put himself in their way as they approached him; confident in soul* (*was he*) *and prepared for either issue, either to work out his craft or to submit to certain death.*"—**qui**: join with **obtulerat.**—**qui** introduces a clause explanatory of the clause preceding.—**animi** is gen. of Respect; or locative.—**morti**: H. L., 284, 2.—**Trojamque aperiret Achivis**: explanatory of **hoc ipsum.**

64. **certantque—capto**: "*and they vie with each other in jeering at the prisoner.*"—**certare** takes the infinitive **illudere** after it for the more common **ut illudant**: H. L., 239, 1; so also we have **impulerat foedare** (v. 55); **ardemus scitari** (v. 64); **aggressi avellere** (v. 165); **tendit**

divellere (v. 220); **glomerare ardent** (v. 455); **impulit cingi** (v. 520). Note the change from the singular **ruit** to plural **certant**: see note on line 30.

65. Aeneas assents to Dido's request: **dic—insidias, inquit, Danaum**; Aen. I, 753.

66. **omnes**: sc. **Danaos**: "*from the charge against one, learn to know all.*" Vergil died before he finished the Aeneid. According to the grammarian, Donatus, the poet on his deathbed desired that the poem should be burned, but ultimately left it in the hands of Varius and Tucca, his literary testators to edit: **Ea conditione ne quid adderent quod a se editum non esset, et versus etiam imperfectos, si qui erant, relinquerent.** These imperfect verses (*hemistichs*) are in all 58. In this book they are common: vs. 234, 346, 468, 614, 720, 767.

67. **namque**, like Greek γάρ, introducing a narrative, may be altogether omitted in an English translation.—**ut**, "*as*," always with the indicative in this sense.—**turbatus**, "*confused*," showing a want of self-possession.—**in conspectu**, "*in the centre of the gazing throng.*"

68. **circumspexit**: the heavy spondees bring out well the slow and measured gaze with which Sinon scanned his audience. In spondaic lines the last word is usually a quadrisyllable in Vergil, but there are not a few exceptions to the rule.

69. **nunc** = Greek νῦν, "*at the present moment.*"

70. **jam—denique**: "*now at last,*" "*after all.*"

71. **cui—poscunt**: "*who have neither any place among the Greeks, and besides the Trojans, with hostile feelings* (**infensi**), *clamor for the forfeit of my life;* (literally, *my life with my blood*)."—**cui**, sc. **est**: H. L., 285, 6. —**poenas cum sanguine** = **poenas et sanguinem**.—**poena**: cp. ποινή, the *wer-geld* or money paid in atonement for a crime committed: from root PŬ, "*to purify:*" cp. **purus, punio.** In this expression, **sanguis** is the **poenas**: translate: "*my blood, as atonement.*"

73. **quo—impetus**: "*by this lamentation our feelings were changed, and every thought of violence was suppressed.*"—**conversi**, sc. **sunt**; so also **compressus**, sc. **est**.—**quo gemitu**: abl. of Cause.

74. **hortamur fari**: see note on v. 64.—**quo sanguine cretus**, sc. **sit**: "*from what blood he is sprung:*" Indirect Question (H. L., 200, 3, 4, 5); so also **ferat, sit.** The words **quo—capto** in O.O. answering to **quo sanguine cretus sis, quidve feras, memora, quae sit fiducia (tibi) capto** in O.R. (H. L., 266 (d); 200, 3, 4; 268, 4).—**capto**, H. L., 285, 6.

77. **fuerit quodcumque**: "*whatever may betide,*" literally, "*whatever shall have come to pass:*" it is better to take **fuerit** as the future perfect indicative, *i.e.*, "I *shall confess, whatever shall* (*as the result of my confession*) *yet be in store for me.*"

78. **me**, sc. **esse**.

79. **hoc primum**: sc. **fatebor.—nec—finget**: "*nor, if fortune hath made Sinon unhappy, shall she in malice make him also a cheat and liar.*"

80. **vanum**, one who asserts what is not the fact, from ignorance, folly, or mistake; **mendacem**, one who does so from a desire to deceive.

81. **fando—lugent**: "*if, perchance, by hearsay, any name of Palamedes, a descendant of Belus, hath at all reached your ears, and his glory of famous renown, whom by false charge the Pelasgi sent down to death, though he was innocent, on wicked evidence because he forbade the war; now they bewail him bereft of light.*"—**Bēlīdes** here, for the more common **Bēlĭdes.** Considerable latitude in quantity is allowed in the case of proper names.—**incluta**, **gloria**, from same root KLU, "*to hear,*" **gloria** = **clu-oria**: cp. also **laus** = **clauds**; cf. **cliens.—proditione** = **crimine.**—Note the emphasis gained by the repeated **in—insontem infando indicio.**—**neci** = **ad necem**: dative of *recipient*, cp. v. 19.—**cassum**: perf. part. of **careo.—cassum lumine**, euphemism for **mortuum**; **lumine**: H. L., 291, 3.

84. **quia—vetabat.** Note the force of the Indic: *not* because *they said* he was forbidding (**quia vetaret**), *but* because he (*actually*) was forbidding. H. L., 252, 2. Notice here the supreme skill with which Sinon excites the sympathy of the Trojans.

86. **illi—annis**: "*me, as his comrade and nearly related in blood, my father, a poor man, sent hither to the war from my early years.*"—**illi**: Note the emphatic position of this pronoun: **in arma** (1) = **in bellum**, (2) "*to the profession of arms.*"—**primis ab annis** : = (1) **ab initio belli**, or, (2) "*from the first years of my manhood* = **ab ineunte aetate.**"

88. **dum—gessimus**: "*while he stood unshaken in royalty and potent in counsels of the chiefs, we, too, won a name and honor*:" **dum**, with indicative: H. L., 259, 5.—**regno** = **in regno**; so **consiliis** = **in consiliis**: cp. the Homeric *βουλὴ γερόντων.*

90. **pellacis**: first occurs here in Latin: derived from **per-lacio**, "*to allure*": said of one who allures another to crime. According to Festus: **lacit decipiendo inducit, lax etenim fraus est.** Vergil had evidently in his mind the stock epithets that Homer applies to Ulysses *πολύμητις*, *πολυμήχανος*.

91. **haud ignota loquor**: with **ignota** sc. **vobis** or **mihi**. In the first case the meaning is: "*you know the story*:" in the second, "*I speak things not from mere hearsay.*"—**superis—oris**: "*he left the upper regions,*" *i.e.*, "*the world above.*"—**ora** properly the coast line; then a dividing line of any kind. Here it means the line separating the world above from the world below: cf. Lucretius 1, 22, **in luminis oras**, "*into the realms of light.*"

92. **afflictus—trahebam**: "*crushed, I dragged on life in gloom and grief.*"—**affligo**, to dash to the earth.

93. **et—amici**: "*and in my own heart* (**mecum**), *I brooded in wrath over the misfortune of my guiltless friend.*"—**mecum**: alone by myself.—Observe the force of the imperfects **trahebam, indignabar**. H. L., 22, 4, and notice the change to the perfect (**tacui**) in the next line.

94. **nec—movi**: "*nor in my madness did I hold my tongue, and I vowed, should chance ever bring it about, should ever I return to my native Argos, as a victor, that I should be his avenger, and by my words I aroused fierce enmity.*"—**demens**, "*downright mad;*" cp. παράφρων; **amens**, "*foolish;*" cp. ἄφρων.—**tulisset—remeassem**: subj. in O.O., representing fut. pf. indic. in O.R.: **si quae fors unquam tulerit—remeavero.**—**Argos**: from the form **Argi, Argorum** (masc. pl.); we also have **Argos** nom. and acc. sing. neut.—**ultorem = me futurum esse ultorem.**

96. **verbis**: "*by my threats*": abl. of Means: **et** is epexegetic.

97. **hinc**: "*hence,*" either 'from this time' or 'from this cause.'—**prima mali labes**: "*the first slip towards destruction.*"—**labes** from **lābor**: English, *slip*.

98. **hinc—arma**: "*from this time Ulysses always continued to alarm me by new charges, to scatter dark sayings amid the crowd, and, knowing my purpose, sought for means to attack me.*"—Note the Historical infinitives **terrere, spargere, quaerere** for imperfect indicatives: **vulgum**: one of the few places where **vulgus** is masculine instead of neuter.—**quaerere conscius arma**: others take this to mean, "*to seek armed aid as a conspirator.*"

100. **nec—ministro**: "*and, indeed, he did not rest till by the aid of Calchas.*" Note the artful way in which Sinon breaks off when he is just on the point of arousing the curiosity of his audience, and compare the speech of Marc Antony over the body of Caesar in Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*, Act 3, Scene 2.—**Calchante ministro**: abl. abs.—This abrupt method of breaking off a discourse is called by the grammarians *aposiopesis*.

101. **sed—revolvo?** "*but why do I to no purpose repeat these bitter recollections?*" Distinguish **frustra** said of the person; **nequidquam** said of the result of the act; *e.g.* **suscipit frustra laborem,** "*he undertakes this labor without profit*": **nequidquam auxilium implorat**: "*he begs in vain for help.*"—**revolvo**: literally, "*unroll;*" the metaphor is taken from a *thread* revolving on the spindle, or from the turning over of the pages of a scroll.

102. **quidve—est**: "*or why do I delay, if you account all the Achaeans in one and the same class and it is sufficient to be called this* (*name of Greek*)."—**uno ordine = in uno ordine.**—**audio = appellor,** like the Greek ἀκούω: cp. κακῶς ἀκούειν οὐ μέλει θανόντι μοι, Eurip. Alc. 726: Horace: **Tu recte vivis si curas esse quod audis**: Milton's *Paradise Lost*, 3, 6.

> Or *hear'st* thou rather, pure ethereal stream,
> Whose fountain who shall tell?

103. **jamdudum sumite poenas = sumite poenas jamdudum sumendas:** "*take the vengeance, you should have taken long ago.*"—**jamdudum,** here = **statim,** at once. With **sumere poenas,** cp. λαβεῖν δίκην: "*to exact a penalty;*" **poenas dare,** cp. διδόναι δίκην, "*to pay a penalty.*"

104. **hoc—velit**: "*this, the chief of Ithaca, would wish*:" the conditional clause **si hoc faciatis** is understood: H. L., 250, 3. **Ithacus = dux Ithacus = Ulixes.**—**magno**: "*at a great price*:" H. L. 293, 4 (*a*).

105. **tum—causas**: "*then, indeed, we press on to ask and enquire the cause.*"—**tum vero**: note the emphasis.

106. **ignari—Pelasgae**: "*ignorant of wickedness so great and of Pelasgic craft.*" For the genitive, see H. L., 288.—**Pelasgae**: the **Pelasgi** were a Thessalian or Epirotic tribe: the name was applied afterwards to the Greeks in Eurip. Or. 857 and often in Vergil.

107. **ficto—pectore**: "*with false heart.*"—H. L., 292, 1. Possibly **pectore** here = "emotion." Note the double alliteration in this line. Translate "*trembling he tells his tale and with untruthful utterance he speaks.*"

108. **saepe—saepe**: note the repetition: "*often the Danai desired to take their flight, leaving Troy behind, and to disband through weariness of the long war.*" In prose the repetition of **saepe—saepe** would be expressed thus: "*As often as the Danai . . . so often a storm prevented them.*"—**cupiere = cupierunt.**—**bello** goes with **fessi.**

110. **fecissentque utinam**: explain fully the force of the mood and tense with **utinam**: H. L., 193, 3, (*b*).

111. **interclusit** sc. **eos** : "*barred their way.*"—**Auster** : from, **uro**, *αὔω, parch* ; hence the *parching* wind.—**euntes** : "*just going.*" Heyne takes **euntes** = **ire volentes** : others say "*on their way,*" a deceitful statement on the part of Sinon. This wind would be adverse for those sailing from Troy to Greece.

112. **praecipue—nimbi** : "*most of all when this horse already stood framed with maple beams, storm clouds roared throughout the whole sky.*" In v. 16 the planks are spoken of as of pine : in v. 86, as of oak.—**trabibus** : abl. of Means.—**aethere** ; Local abl. = **in aethere.**

113. **staret** = **esset,** Heyne, Forbiger ; but surely the full force of **staret** is here more vivid and poetic.

114. **scitantem.** Another reading is **scitatum,** probably an incorrect one, for the supine rarely governs a case : cp. Livy 21, 6 : **legati a Saguntinis Romani—missi auxilium ad bellum orantes.** The great oracle of Apollo was at Delphi ; others were at Patara, Delos, and other places. In Homer no mention is made of oracles.

115. **adytis** : "*from the sanctuary* :" cp. ἄδυτον (*a, not* and δῦναι, *to enter*) properly the inner shrine containing the image of the god.

116. **sanguine et virgine caesa** : a hendiadys = **sanguine virginis caesae,** "*with the blood of a maiden slain.*" The Greek fleet was detained by head winds at Aulis till Agamemnon consented to sacrifice his daughter Iphigenia to Diana.

117. **cum primum—venistis** : H. L., 262, 3, (*b*) ; so **ut—venit, v. 119.**

118. **litandum** : impersonal, "*expiation must be made* :" "*Heaven's favor must be won.*" Supply **sunt** with **quaerendi** and **est** with **litandum.**

121. **tremor—parent** : the subjunctive in **parent** is the subjunctive of Indirect Question. The meaning is they shivered as they enquired of each other, "*for whom fate prepares their doom.*"

122. **magno tumultu** : "*with boisterous vehemence.*"

123. **quae—flagitat** : "*demands what that heavenly intimation means* :" H. L. 200, 3.—**flagitare** implies violence and persistency.

124. **jam—canebant** : "*all the while many a one continued to warn me.*" It is best to take **mihi** as an Ethical Dative. H. L., 285, 4, (*a*). Vergil dignifies the warning of the Greeks with the verb **canebant** as if they were oracular, for oracles were always given in verse.

125. **artificis** : "*the contriver,*" *i.e.*, Ulysses.

126. **bis quinos** : the distributive is regularly used with adverbs for the cardinal numeral.—**tectus** : either, "*shut up in his tent,*" or "*concealing his thoughts.*"

128. **Ithaci** = **ducis Ithaci** = **Ulixis**: see v. 104.

129. **composito**: "*by concert.*"—**rumpit vocem**, "*breaks silence*": cp. *ῥηγνύναι φώνην.*

130. **quae—tulere**: "*the ills each feared for himself, they bore with patience, when turned to the destruction of one unhappy man.*"—**unīus** here.—The whole sentence is extremely sarcastic. All men bear lightly the ills of others when such ills do not affect themselves. Others take **conversa tulere** = **converterunt et tulerunt**: "*they turned and carried to very destruction.*" With **tulere**: cp. *ἔτλησαν*: with root TLA, "*bear*" cp. Scottish *thole.*

132. **sacra parari**: the **sacra**, "*preparations for the sacrifice*" are defined in the next line.—**parari**: Historical infin., used for the impf. indic.

133. **salsae fruges**: the coarse barley meal mixed with salt (**mola salsa**) was sprinkled on the head of the victim just before the sacrifice: cp. *οὐλοχυταί.*—**vittae**: not merely the priest, but also the victims were crowned with garlands.

134. **eripui—rupi**: "*I broke away, I confess it, from death; and I burst my bonds,*"—**leto**: abl. of Separation. Human victims were usually bound for sacrifice: cp. *Genesis* xxii, 9; Ovid. Eleg. ex Pont: 3.

135. **limosoque lacu**: "*and in a miry marsh*;" note the alliteration. Vergil may have had in his mind's eye Marius, who took refuge in the marsh at Minturnae when he was trying to escape the soldiers of Sulla.—**obscurus in ulva**: "*screened amid the sedge.*"

136. **delitui**: from **delitesco**.—**dum—dedissent**: "*till they should set their sails, if haply they (ever) should set them.*"—**dum—darent**: Virtual Oratio Obliqua, describing what was passing in Sinon's mind. With **darent vela**, sc. **ventis**. In direct narration this would be: "*I shall lie hid until they shall set sail* (**dum vela dabunt**) *if they haply shall have set sail* (**si forte dederint**)": the fut. pf. indic. in O.R. becomes the plupf. subj. in O.O., H. L., 269, 8.

137. **mihi—spes ulla**, sc. **est**.

138—**dulces natos**: some find a difficulty here, for in v. 87 the children of Sinon must have been considerably advanced in years, while v. 57, he is called **juvenem**. But **juventus** was from the 17th to 45th year, *i.e.*, the period of active military service.

139—**quos—reposcent**: "*of them will they even haply claim vengeance as due* (**re-**) *for my flight.*"—**quos—poenas**: for the two accusatives

see H. L., 282, 2; the one accusative may also be taken in apposition to the other, "*whom perchance they will even demand as atonement for my flight.*"

140—**et—piabunt**; "*and they will wash away this crime of mine by the death of (those) hapless (ones).*" Note the force of **hanc**. H. L., 140, 1.

141—**quod—ferentis**—"*therefore, by the gods above, by the deities to whom the truth is known, I beseech thee, by all the faith yet unsullied that is any where left among mortals, pity woes so great, pity an undeserving sufferer.*"—**quod**: often used in introducing adjurations: cp. Aen. 6, 363, **quod te per caeli jucundum lumen—oro.**—**per**: the object of **per** is the whole clause, **si qua—fides**: Aen. 10, 903: **per si qua est victis venia hostibus oro**: cp. Aen. 4, 317; 6, 459; 12, 56. The antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative.—**restet**: the doubt in Sinon's mind of any pledge being too sacred for one to violate is expressed by the subjunctive. What would **restat** express? H. L., 250, 3.—**intemerata**: in = Gk. ἄνευ (contracted ἀν), Eng. *un*; and **temerare**, "*to profane.*"—**laborum—miserere**: distinguish in meaning and construction **misereor** with genitive "*I feel pity*": **miseror**, with accusative, "*I show pity.*"

145—**his lacrimis**: abl. of Cause: see **quo gemitu**: v. 73.—**ultro** (connected with **ultra**): the word is applied to acts that go beyond what the circumstances require. Here the idea is, "*we grant him not only his life but besides we also pity him.*"

146—**viro**: taken best as an *Ethical* dative, *i.e.* = dative of the person interested: others take it as the ablative of *Separation* by an inversion of construction, the usual construction being **virum—manicis atque artis levari vinclis**: H. L., 291, 3.

147—**dictis**: abl. of Manner.

148—**amissos obliviscere Graios** by *prolepsis* = **amitte Graios et obliviscere**: "*let the Greeks go and forget them.*" What is the usual construction with **obliviscor**; H. L., 288, 1, II. The meaning is that the Greeks are not to be regarded as your countrymen since their acts are hostile. Possibly **amissos obliviscere Graios** = "*forget that the Greeks are lost,*" **esse** being understood.

149—**noster**: "*one of us*": cf. **alienus**, "*a foreigner.*" A Roman general receiving a deserter addressed him with the words: **quisquis es, noster eris.**—**mihi—roganti**: "*and in answer to me unfold the truth.*"

150. **quo—statuere**: "*to what end have they built this huge and monstrous horse?*"—**immanis** from **in** "*not,*" and root MA, "*to*

measure": hence immeasurable in size. Note that the repeated questions well mark the impatience of Priam.—**quis auctor?** "*who suggested it?*"

151. **quae religio?** "*what religious purpose did it imply?*": **religio** from prefix **red** or **re** and **lig**, "*bind*": the restraining feeling from a belief in the unseen universe.—**machina**: "*engine*": from μηχανή, μῆχος connected with μήδομαι, μῆτις, root MA, "*to think.*"

152. **ille**, *i.e.*, Sinon.—**dolis—Pelasga**: "*schooled in the wiles of Pelasgic craft*": cf. Il. 4, 339: κακοῖσι δόλοισι κεκασμένε. Note the *hendiadys* in **dolis et arte Pelasga**: (abl. of Means). For **Pelasga** see v. 83.

153. **sustulit—palmas**: "*raised to the skies his hands freed from bonds.*"—**vinclis**: abl. of Separation.—**palmas**: with **palma**, cp. παλαμή "*blade of an oar*": root PAL or PAD, "*to spread*": cf. **palor, pando**. Note the treachery of Sinon.

154. **ignes**: heavenly bodies.

155. **ensesque nefandi**: "*and ye accursed knives,*" referring to the sacrificial knives.

156. **hostia**: from the obsolete **hostio**, "*to strike*:" **hostia dicta est ab eo quod est hostīre ferīre**: Festus. Hence, "*the thing struck,*" "*the victim.*"

157. **fas—jura**: "*it is right for me to break the allegiance I have sworn to the Greeks.*" Distinguish **fas** = Gk. θέμις, established right by divine law: **jus**, human law. According to Servius, **sacratum jus** = **sacramentum**, the ordinary oath of a Roman soldier, and **jusjurandum, the** rights (**jura**) that that oath implies.

158. Note the beginning of successive lines by the same word **fas** (*anaphora*).—**omnia—sub auras**: "*bring all things to light*": cp. ἄγειν ὑπ' αὐγάς; Hor. Od. 1, 18, 13; **sub divum rapiam.**

159. **qua** = **quae**, after **si**: "*whatever they keep secret.*"

160. **tu—rependam**: "*only do you abide by your promise, and do thou, O Troy, preserve faith with thy preserver, if I shall reveal the truth, and shall make a large recompense.*" With **promissis manere**, cp. **stare jurejurando**: the ablative is Local, or of Means. So also we have **stare decreto, consilio.**

162. **Danaum** = **Danaorum.**—**coepti—belli**: "*confidence in undertaking the war,*" equivalent to **fiducia quā bellum inceperunt**; others take it to be the gen. of Reference, or a Causal gen.

163. **Palladis—stetit**: "*by Pallas' aid ever stood firm.*"—Note the emphatic position of **Palladis.—sto** is often used in the sense of "*to remain firm,*" "*to stand secure*": cp. Verg. Georg. 4, 208: **stat Fortuna domus**: Hor. Od. 3, 3, 42: **stet Capitolium.—auxiliis** is ablative of Instrument.

164. **sed enim**: "*but, indeed, ever since the wicked son of Tydeus and Ulysses, the contriver of crimes, made bold to tear the fated Palladium from her sanctuary and to cut down the sentries on the towered height.*"—**impius**, on account of Diomede wounding Venus (Homer Il. 5, 330-347). —**scelerum inventor**: see note on v. 90.—**ex quo**, sc. **tempore**: we have a similar omission in Gk. ἐξ οὗ, scil. χρόνου.—**sed enim** = ἀλλὰ γάρ: there is always an ellipsis after these words which may in this case be supplied thus: "*but (a change came) for, etc.*"—**fatale**: the preservation of Troy was linked by fate (**fatalis**) with the preservation of the Palladium or image of Pallas; cp. Matthew Arnold, Palladium: "*Backward and forward rolled the waves of fight round Troy; but while this stood, Troy could not fall.*"—**caesis custodibus**, abl. abs.—**summa arx**: ἀκρόπολις or ἀκρὴ πόλις.

167. **corripuere—mens**: "*(ever since) they seized the holy image and dared with bloody hands to touch the maiden chaplets of the goddess, from that time the hope of the Greeks ebbed and slid away backwards, their strength was broken, the mind of the goddess estranged.*"—**virgineas vittas**: the fillet, with some slight differences, was worn by both matrons and maids: cf. the "*snood*" worn by maidens and the "*coif*" or "*curch*" worn by the married women among the Scottish women of the former days. Scott's *Heart of Midlothian*, chap. xxii: "*Tresses of long, fair hair, which . . . Effie dared no longer confine with the snood or riband, which implied purity of maiden fame.*" So also *Una* in Spencer's *Fairie Queen*, 1, 3, 4—

> From her faire head her fillet she undight.

ex illo, sc. **tempore.—fluere ac referri**, Historical infinitives = **fluxit ac relata est**: a metaphor from the ebb and flow of the tide. The final monosyllable as well as the rhythm describes the abrupt and slow motion of the tide.

171. **nec—monstris**: "*and by no uncertain tokens did the Tritonian goddess give signs thereof.*" **Tritonia** sc. **dea**: derived probably from Tritonis, a lake in Libya, where she is said to have been born, or from Triton, a torrent in Boeotia. Other derivations are given.—**ea signa**: cp. Aen. 4, 237, **hic nuntius**, "*news of this*": 7, 595, **has poenas**; 12,

468, **hoc metu.**—**monstrum**=**monestrum** : from **moneo** "*to warn*"; hence "*a warning.*"

172. **vix—arsere** : note that Virgil and especially Homer are fond of writing clauses co-ordinately (*parataxis*) whereas we would make one clause subordinate to the other (*hypotaxis*); "*scarcely was the image placed in the camp, when there flashed forth sparkling flames from its upraised eyes.*" —**positum** sc. **est** : see v. 10. —**castris**=**in castris.** —**luminibus** : Abl. of Separation. —**arrectis,** raised eyes were significant of fury just as downcast eyes were a sign of sullen anger : cf. Aen. 1, 482 : **diva solo fixos oculos aversa tenebat.**

173. **salsus sudor** : sweat is naturally salt; the epithet adds to the realism of the description. The sweating of images was looked upon as portentous : cp. Livy, 22, 1 : **scuta duo sanguine sudasse** : 27, 4, **quattuor signa sanguine multo sudasse.**

174. **terque—trementem** : "*and thrice from the ground the goddess herself, wonderful to tell, leaped forth bearing her buckler and quivering spear.*"—**solo** : abl. of Separation :—**dictu** : give the construction of the supines in **-um** and **-u** respectively : H. L., 182, 2, 3.—**emicuit** : "*flashed forth,*" the apparition of the goddess suddenly appearing and then disappearing like lightning.

175. **extemplo** taken with **canit** : "*Calchas at once prophesies that the sea must be hazarded in flight, nor can Troy's towers be overthrown by Argive weapons, unless they seek new auspices at Argos, and bring back that divine presence which they have borne over the deep on their curved ships.*"—**temptanda** sc. **esse** : alluding to the dangers of the deep.—**canit,** often said of oracles, as these were in the hexameter measure and probably *chanted* : cp. ἀείδω : Thucydides 2, 21, 2; ᾖδον χρησμοὺς παντοίους.—**Pergama (-orum),** neut. pl. "*the citadel of Troy*" : cp. πυργός, "*tower*" : English—*burgh*—*borough*,—*bury* : German *burg*, properly "*a fortress.*"—**ni repetant,** alluding to the Roman custom of returning to the city of Rome from the camp to take anew the auspices, if anything unlucky happened. For subj. in O.O. see H. L., 265, 2 (*b*). —**avexere** : the indicative expresses a remark of Sinon : H. L., 268, 5.—**Argis** : from the nom. plu. **Argi -ōrum** : we also find **Argos** neut. nom. and acc. : from root ARG, "*bright,*" hence the word may mean *Brighton* : cp. **argentum,** ἀργυρίον.—**numen** : the favoring presence of the god.—**pelago** : the way *by which* is often put in the abl. : cp. Cic. Fam. x, 9 : **via breviore equites praemisi** : Livy, 37, 14 : **Aegaeo mari trajecit.**—**curvis—carinis** : abl. of Accompaniment : cp. the Homeric

νῆες γλαφυραί, νῆες κοῖλαι. It is implied in these lines that the Palladium had been carried from Troy to Greece.

180. **et nunc—aderunt** : "*and now in that they have sought their native Mycenae with the wind, they are gathering arms and gods to attend them, and after remeasuring the sea, they will be here unawares.*"—**quod** meaning "*as to the fact that*" with the indic. : H. L., 244, 2.—**remenso** : from **remetior** : passive use of a deponent verb. Mycenae was the royal city of Agamemnon.

181. **digerit** : literally, "*arranges*" *i.e.*, "*expounds*" in detail what course must be taken to propitiate the gods.

183. **hanc—piaret** : "*this image at his warning they reared in recompense for the Palladium and the injured deity, to expiate the horror of sacrilege.*"—**moniti** sc. **ab Calchante**.—**pro numine laeso**, *i.e.*, to make amends for the offences committed against the deity.—**quae = ut ea** : H. L., 232, 2.

185. **hanc—tueri** : "*yet Calchas bade them raise it to this vast size with oaken cross-beams, and build it up to heaven that it may not find entry within the gates nor be drawn within the city, nor protect your people under the sanctity of the old faith.*"—**tamen** : in spite of the protestations of Sinon that the withdrawal of the deity would hasten the doom of Troy. Note that we have Sinon's own words (180-188, and 189-194); the words of Calchas are in Oratio Obliqua.—**caelo = ad caelum** : v. 19.—**portis = intra portas**.—Note that **ne—aut** are cumulative, the **aut** connecting parts of the same general idea, **neque = necque**, introducing another idea.

189. **donum Minervae**, Objective gen., "*gift to Minerva.*"—**violavisset** : plupf. subj. in O.O. representing fut. perf. indic. in O.R. : H. L., 265, 3.

190. **quod—convertant** : "*which evil may the gods first turn on himself* :" for the subjunctive see H. L., 193, 3.—**prius**, *i.e.*, before it reaches you.—**ipsum = Calchanta**.

191. **futurum**, sc. **esse** : O.O. following the verb of saying implied in **jussit**.

192. **sin** : "*if, on the other hand.*"

193. **ultro** : "*further,*" see v. 59. Asia would not merely repel the invading Greeks, but would *further* carry on an offensive war against them.—**Pelopea moenia = Argos**, founded by Pelops.

194. **et—nepotes** : "*and such destiny awaits our descendants* :" with **ea fata** cp. **magnum exitium**, v. 190.—**nostros** : of us Greeks.

195. **perjuri**: **per** in **perjuro, perjurus, perfidus** is not **per** intensive as in **permagnus**, but a remnant of the same word found in Gk. *παρά*: cp. *παράφρων*, "*beside one's self*:" hence, "*away from.*"

196. **credita** sc. **est**: so **capti** sc. **sumus.—coactis**, "*forced*," hence, "*unnatural*:" cp. Ovid, Am., 1, 8, 83: **discant oculi lacrimare coacti**: Juvenal, 13, 133: **vexant oculos humore coacto.**

197. Note **neque—nec**; **non—non**: such variations are not allowable in prose.—**Larissaeus**, from Larissa, the chief town in Phthia, a district of Thessaly, from which Achilles came, meaning "Rock-town" according to Leaf. The name is found in both European and Asiatic Greece.

199. **hic—magis**: "*here, another sight, greater, alas, and far more terrible is presented to us hapless mortals.*"—**miseris** sc. **nobis**: H. L., 284, 2. The famous group of statuary representing the death of Laocoon and his two sons was discovered in the sixteenth century, and is now in the Vatican.

Compare carefully Vergil's pen-picture with the piece of statuary. What are the discrepancies and how would you account for them?

Note Vergil says the serpents *first* (**primum**) kill the two sons and afterwards (*post*) seize the father as he comes to the rescue; but according to the sculptor the serpents are twined about and kill the father and the sons simultaneously.

In the statuary the figures are nude; in Vergil the probability is that the father, at any rate, would have on his priestly vestments.

Henry says, "Sculpture could not represent *successive acts*; the chisel could fix no more than a single instant of fleeting time. . . . Such is the infinite inferiority of sculpture, and of painting, to poetry. The sculptor, or painter, labors day and night, and for years together, on one object; and, in the end, his work, representing but an instant of time, fails to present to the mind as many ideas as the poet supplies in half a dozen lines, the work, perhaps, of half an hour."

improvida pectora: "*our benighted minds*": **improvida**, *i.e.*, not foreseeing the future.

201. **Neptuno**: dat. of Reference used for the gen., H. L., 285, 3.—**ductus sorte**: literally "*drawn by lot*," *i.e.*, chosen by lot: a Roman custom is here ascribed to the Trojans: cp. Tacitus Ann. 1, 54: **sorte ducti e primoribus civitatis unus et viginti.**

202—**sollemnes**: "*accustomed*": derived from Oscan **sollus**=**totus** and **annus**: originally applied to religious feasts held *yearly*: hence, "*accustomed.*"

203—**ecce** : observe the dramatic order of the Latin by translating: "*but lo! from Tenedos over the tranquil deep—I shudder while I tell the tale—two serpents with enormous coils press down the seas and advance side by side to the shore.*"—**gemini** : often used for **duo** : cp. Aen. 5, 162, **gemini scopuli**: 5, 266; **geminos lebetas**: 6, 894, **sunt geminae somni portae**: 6, 789; **huc geminas nunc flecte acies.**—**immensis orbibus**: abl. of Description : H. L., 293, 6.

206—**arrecta** : "*raised up.*" The traditional sea-serpent had a mane : cp. Pindar, Pyth. 10, 47 : *καὶ ποίκιλον κάρα Δρακόντων φόβαισιν ἤλυθε* : Plautus Amphi. 5, 1, 56: **devolant angues jubati**: Livy 43, 13: **in aede Fortunae anguem jubatum a compluribus visum esse.** Evidently Pliny, a good authority in Natural History, disbelieves the truth of this : cf. 11, 37, **draconum cristas qui viderit non reperir .** Milton (*Paradise Lost*, 7, 495) follows the traditional account :

> The serpent, subtlest beast of all the field,
> Of huge extent, sometimes, with brazen eyes
> And hairy mane terrific.

207—**pars—legit**: "*the other part* (*of the body*) *skims the sea behind, and in rolling folds they writhe their monstrous backs.*" The verb **lego** (so also Gk. *λέγω* : German *legen*) is often said of a person *picking* one's steps : cp. Aen. 9, 392 : **vestigia retro observata legit.** Here it is said of the monster.

209—**fit sonitus spumante salo** : Note the hissing sound indicated by the recurring s's (*onomatopoeia*) ; also notice the *alliteration* : "*as the salt sea surges into foam, a sound is heard.*"

210—**ardentesque—ora** : "*and with their blazing eyes suffused with blood and fire, they licked with quivering tongues their hissing mouths.*" —**oculos** : acc. of Respect, H. L., 283, 7.

212—**visu** : abl. of Cause.—**agmine certo** : "*with unwavering course.*" —**agmen** properly *a moving* (**ago**): hence (1) an army on the march ; (2) a moving, advance. Both ideas are involved here. The advance of the serpents portended the advance of the Grecian host.

213. According to Hyginus the two sons were Antiphantes and Thymbraeus ; according to others, Ethron and Melampus.

215. **morsu** : "*with their fangs.*"

216. **post**=**postea.**—**auxilio** : "*to their help,*" literally, "*for a help,*" dat. of Purpose : H.L., 286, 8 : some say an abl. of Instrument. The force of **sub-** in **subire, succurrere, subsidium** conveys the idea of support : cp. v. 467.

218. **bis—dati** : "*twice encircling his waist, twice encircling his neck with their scaly bodies.*"—**circum—dati**=**circumdati** is an example of *tmesis* (a figure in which the preposition is separated from the verb to which it belongs).—**collo** is a dative.—**terga** is acc. of Respect : see note on **manus**, v, 56.

219. **superant—altis** : "*they tower above him with their heads and lofty necks.*"—**capite—cervicibus** : abl. of Manner : H. L., 293, 5.

220. **ille** : the position of the pronoun indicates a change of subject.—**tendit divellere** : "*struggles to tear asunder.*"

221. **perfusus—veneno** : "*having his fillets steeped in gore and black venom*" : for the accus. see note **manus** : v. 56 : **vittas** from root VI, "*to bend*" or "*twist together*" : cp. **vitis**, **vimem**, **vieo** : ϝιτυς, "*a felloe*" : English *withe.*

223. **qualis mugitus** : sc. **tollit**=**talem mugitum tollit qualis est mugitus tauri saucii** : "*he raises such bellowing as is (the bellowing) of a wounded bull.*" The simile is found in Homer, Il. 20, 403.—Note **fugit** : perfect often found in *similes* and expressing an act repeated or customary. The simile may have been suggested by the fact that Laocoon was engaged in sacrificing a bull at the time (v. 202). The bellowing and the struggling of a victim at the altar were looked upon as ill-omened signs. In **fugit—excussit** we have perhaps an example of *ὕστερον πρότερον.*

224. **incertam—securim** : "*shakes from his neck the erring axe.*"—**incertam**, *i.e.*, ill-aimed ; cp. **certa hasta**, "*an unerring spear*" : **certa sagitta**, "*an arrow that strikes the spot aimed at.*"—**securim** : what words of the third declension have **-im** in acc. sing. ? H.L., 62.

225. **at** : introduces a change of subject.—**gemini** : see note v. 203.—**lapsu—effugiunt** : "*glide in flight*" : literally "*with gliding motion escape.*"—**lapsu** : abl. of Manner.—**delubra ad summa** : "*to the high sanctuary,*" *i.e.*, to the citadel.—**delubrum** (from **de** and **luo**=λούω, "*wash*") the place of expiation, hence "*a shrine.*"—The words **draco**, **auguis** and **serpens** all mean "*serpent*" and each conveys some striking characteristic quality. The word **draco** : from root DRAK, to "*look*" (cp. δέρκομαι) hence "*the bright eyed* :" **anguis** (from **ango**, ἄγχω, "*choke*" or "*bind*"), "*that which chokes or squeezes its prey*" or "*wriggles*" : **serpens** (from **serpo**=ἕρπω "*creep*"), "*that which creeps.*"

226. **Tritonidis** sc. **deae** : we have adj. **Tritonis**, gen. **Tritonidis**, and **Tritonius** : for derivation see note on v. 171.—**saevae** : in withholding her protection from the Trojans : see v. 163.

227. **teguntur = se tegunt**: "*they conceal themselves*:" reflexive use of the passive voice.

228. **cunctis = cunctorum**: see note on v. 201.

229. **et—ferunt**: "*and they say that Laocoon has paid the penalty of his crime deservedly.*"—**scelus = poenas sceleris**: cp. Aen. 11, 208: **scelerum poenas expendimus omnes.**

230. **qui = quippe qui, utpote qui** or **quum is**: "*seeing that he outraged*": H. L., 252, 4. Compare the curse on the sailor who killed the albatross in Coleridge's *Ancient Mariner.*

231. **tergo**: cp. v. 51 and 52 where the "side," "belly," and "womb" of the beast are struck. But **tergus, tergŏris** and **tergum, -i** may mean simply "*hide*," and may apply to all parts of the body.—**laeserit—intorserit**, are Causal subj. or subj. of Virtual O.O.

233. see note v, 66.

234. **dividimus—urbis**: "*we cleave the walls, and we throw open to view the battlements of our city.*" Generally **moenia** (root MUN, "*to defend*") is an outer wall of a city for defensive purposes: **murus** (= **munrus** from the same root) is a general term for a wall of any kind. Here, however, **murus** must mean the outer wall, while **moenia** must be the fortified dwellings within: cp. Aen. 6, 549: **moenia lata videt triplici circumdata muro.**

235. **accingunt = se accingunt**: see v. 227, literally, "*gird themselves*," *i.e.*, apply themselves, alluding to the long loose robes of the ancients which were tucked up for active work: hence **succinctus, accinctus**, "*active*"; **discinctus**, "*idle*."—**rotarum lapsus = rotas labentes**, "*smoothly gliding wheels*": cf. Hor. Od. 1, 12, 10: **fluminum lapsus = flumina labentia.**

237. **stuppea—intendunt**: "*draw taut upon its neck the hempen bands*:" alluding to the senators and young nobles of Rome drawing the **tensae** or *sacred cars* containing the images of the gods, which were drawn to and from the Capital.

238. **feta armis = feta armatis viris**: "*teeming with armed men.*"

239. **sacra canunt = sacra carmina canunt**: "*chant hymns.*" Vergil is evidently thinking of the hymns chanted at the secular games when maidens and youths sang songs to Apollo and Diana.

240. **minans—urbi**: "*towering high glides into the midst of the city*:" with this meaning of **minor** cp. Aen. 1, **geminique minantur in caelum scopuli**: from root MIN, "*project*": cp. **mons**, "*a mountain*"; **minae**, "*the gable ends of a house.*"

241. Note the feeling expressed by this outburst. The line is a quotation from Ennius.

242. **Dardanidum** = **Dardanidarum.**—**ipso—substitit**: "*at the very threshold it stood still.*"—**limen** = **ligmen**: from **ligo**, "*bind*:" hence 'the sill of the door': here 'the ground of the breach.'—**portae**: connected with **per**, πόρος, περάω: English *-fare* in thorough*fare*, A.S. *faran*, "*to go.*"

243. **utero**: abl. of Specification, or = **in utero.**

244. **immemores**: "*regardless.*"

245. **sacrata arce** = **in sacrata arce**: v. 8.

246. **tunc—Teucris**: "*then, too, Cassandra opens her lips to speak the doom that was to be—lips, by heaven's command, never believed by the Teucri.*"—**etiam**: besides other warnings. For the story see Cassandra in Vocabulary.—**fatis futuris**: abl. of Instrument or Circumstance: or dative.—**credita**: verbs that govern a dative in the active are almost always used impersonally in the passive; only in poetry have we a few examples of the personal use of such verbs: Horace has **imperor, invideor**: Ovid, **credor** more than once.—**Teucris**: dative: H. L., 176, 4.

248. **nos—urbem**: "*we, poor wretches, to whom that day was to be the last, deck the shrines of the gods throughout the city with festal boughs.*"—**quibus esset**: the subj. may be either *Causal* or *Concessive*: implied in the relative, *i.e.*, **quibus esset** = **quippe is nobis esset** or **quamvis nobis esset**: H. L., 252, 4; 254, 2 (*b*).—**velamus** = **coronamus**: Aen. 3, 405; 3, 545; 5, 72. The leaves would be those of the trees sacred to each particular god: of laurel, to Apollo; oak, to Jove; myrtle, to Venus, etc.

250. **vertitur—nox**: "*meanwhile the sphere of heaven wheels round, and night rushes up from the sea.*"—**vertitur**: reflexive use of the passive voice. The ancients believed that the heavens consisted of two hemispheres, one of light and the other of darkness, and by the revolution of those hemispheres light and darkness were produced: cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, 9, 52—

> and now from end to end
> Night's hemisphere had veiled the horizon round.

Night is said to 'rush up from the ocean' in pursuit of the retreating day.

251. Note the effect of the heavy spondees of this line.

252. **fusi per urbem** : "*stretched out to rest throughout the town*" : so **fusi per herbam**, said of the revelling crew of Aeneas : Aen. 1, 214.

254. **et—Tenedos** : "*and by this time the Argive host was setting out from Tenedos with its array of ships.*"—**instructis navibus** : abl. abs. : note the military term.

255. **tacitae—lunae** : "*amid the favoring stillness of the quiet moon.*" Two directly opposite views have been taken of this passage. Some say that the passage shows that the moon was quietly shining, others that there was no moon shining. Some quote in support of the latter view Milton, *Samson Agonistes* :—

> dark
> And silent as the moon,
> When she deserts the night,
> Hid in her vacant interlunar cave.

From v. 340 we know that the moon was up. Vergil brings out prominently the light and calm of the night furthering the designs of the Greeks.

256. **flammas extulerat** : "*when the royal bark had raised aloft the fire signal*" : this clause is subordinate to the clause containing **ibat** with which **laxat** is co-ordinate, **laxat** being an Historical present. With **regia puppis** : cp. Shakespeare, *Henry IV.*, Pt. I, Act 3, Sc. 3 : "Thou art our admiral, thou bearest the lantern in the poop." For **cum** with the indic., see H. L., 261, 1.—**effero** is the technical word "*to raise*" the standard.

257. **fatisque—iniquis** : "*protected by the malign decrees of heaven.*"

258. Note the *zeugma* in **laxat** : "*(releases) the Greeks pent up in the womb and stealthily loosens the pine bars.*"

263. It is difficult to see, if Machaon was the first to issue from the horse, why he should be mentioned seventh. It may be an imitation of Homer, Il. II, 505 : ἀριστεύοντα Μαχάονα, ποιμένα λαῶν : hence some translate it "*peerless.*"

265. **somno vinoque sepultum** : "*buried in a drunken slumber.*" It is best to make **somno vinoque** an example of *hendiadys*=**somno vinoso**. Ennius (A. 8) has the expression **vino domiti somnoque sepulti**. Hence some look on **sepultum** in this passage of Vergil as a *zeugma*, "*o'ercome with wine and buried in sleep,*" but the order of the words precludes this.

266. **portis** : abl. of Means.

267. **agmina—jungunt** : sc. **sibi** : "*unite to themselves their confederate bands.*"

268. **mortalibus—aegris**: cf. Homeric δειλοῖσι βροτοῖσι.

272. **raptatus—bigis**: "*dragged along by the car, as formerly.*" After slaying Hector, Achilles fastened his body to his chariot, and dragged it thrice around the walls of Troy, or, as Homer says, to the ships and round the tomb of Patroclus, Il. xxii.

273. **trajectus—lora**: "*having had thongs bored through his swollen feet.*" We sometimes find Latin verbs used in a middle sense, expressing the action done to one's self by some one else, or done to one's self, in imitation of the Greek. The accusative in this case resembles the accusative of Respect: cp. note on **manus**, v. 56.

274. **hei—erat!** "*Ah me! what a sight he was.*"—Note the force of **illo**: cp. ἐκεῖνος, "*that illustrious Hector*": H. L., 140, 6 (*b*).

275. **qui—Achilli**: "*who returns, having donned the spoils of Achilles.*" —**redit**: is a graphic present for the perfect **rediit**.—**exuvias**: we can say in the active, **exuvias mihi induo**, and in the passive, **exuvias ego induor** or **exuviis me induo** and **exuviis ego induor**.—**Achilli**: as if from the nominative **Achilleus**, gen. **Achillei**, contracted **Achilli**: see note on **Ulixi**: v. 7. Hector slew Patroclus, who had donned the armor of his friend Achilles.

276. **vel—ignis**: sc. **qui redit**: "*who returns, after hurling the Phrygian flames on the ships of the Greeks.*" **puppibus = in puppes**: see note v. 36.

277. **squalentem barbam—patrios**: "*wearing as he did a squalid beard and hair all matted with blood, and having all the many wounds which he received around his ancestral walls.*"—**vulnera**: the wounds he received by being dragged around the walls of Troy.

279. **ultro**: without waiting for an answer: see v. 59.—**flens ipse**: "*in tears too, I myself.*"

281. **lux Dardaniae**: **lux** is the Homeric φάος, "*safety*": cp. Hom. Il. vi. 6, φόως δ' ἑτάροισιν ἔθηκεν: 2 Sam. xxi, 17, where David is called "*the light of Israel.*"

283. **expectate**: vocative for nominative: "*from what regions dost thou, Hector, long expected, come?*"—**ut**: exclamatory, join with **aspicimus**. The meaning of **ut** in such cases must be inferred from the context, here **ut = ut libenter**: "*how gladly!*"

284. **labores**: cp. πόνος: "*sufferings.*"

285. **quae—vultus?** "*what cruel cause has marred the serene beauty of thy face?*"

287. **ille mihi,** sc. **respondit**: see note v. 42.—**nec—moratur**: "*nor pays he any heed to my idle question*": for this use of **moror**: cp. Aen. 5, 400, **nec dona moror,** "*nor care I for gifts*": so Horace Epist. 1, 15, 17: **vina nihil moror illius orae**: 2, 1, 164: **nil moror officium quod me gravat.**

289. **nate—dea**: "*goddess-born*": for **deā**: see H. L., 291, 2.

290. **ruit—Troja**: "*Troy from its very summit is sinking in ruins.*"

291. **sat—datum**: "*you have fulfilled your duty to your native land and to Priam*"—**sat=satis** used as an indecl. neut.—**satis dare** is a legal phrase for giving security for payment of a debt, here for the payment itself, more commonly expressed by **satisfacere.**

292. **hac**: "*by this* (*right hand*) *of mine.*"

293. **sacra suosque—Penates**: "*her rites and household gods.*"—**sacra**: seems to be a general term for the religious ceremonies, and **penates** a particular term. What the **penates** were, it is difficult to say. They were probably ancestral deities represented in little images of wood or stone, and the word may be derived from PA, "*to protect*" or "*feed*": cp. **pater, pasco, penus.**

294. **his—ponto**: "*for these seek a city, a mighty city, which thou shalt erect at length after wandering over the sea.*" This of course refers to the future city of Rome.—**moenia quaere, magna—quae**: with this punctuation (the one adopted in our text), **magna** is predicative: "*which thou shalt build mighty.*" The other punctuation, however, **moenia quaere magna, pererrato,** is common.

296. **vittas Vestamque=Vestam vittatam**: "(*the image of*) *Vesta wearing a fillet*": *hendiadys.*

297. **aeternum—ignem**: the **penates** of the family were closely identified with Vesta, the goddess of the hearth. In the temple of Vesta at Rome, "*the eternal fire*" was maintained, the extinguishing of which foreboded the doom of the city.

298. **diverso—luctu**: "*meanwhile the town is filled with tumultuous woe in all directions,*" or, more freely, "*throughout the city meanwhile confusion reigns with manifold cries of agony.*"—**luctu**: the wailing for the lost. Possibly **diverso** means "*in a distant quarter of the city.*" Note the emphatic position of **diverso.** This, with the latter interpretation, is particularly significant as marking the transition.

299. **magis—magis**: join with **clarescunt**: "*the noises begin to grow clearer and clearer.*—**secreta—obtecta**: both predicates of **recessit**:

"*though the house of my father Anchises lay deep withdrawn and screened by trees.*" In Homer Anchises is not an inhabitant of Troy, but an independent prince of Dardania.

301. **armorumque—horror**: "*and the clash of arms rolls onward.*"—**ingruit**: root GAR, "*to call*" or "*shout*": cp. **garrire, garulus, grus**: *γέρανος, γηρύειν.* Note the imitative harmony produced by the recurring of the *r* sound.

302. **excutior**: middle, "*I shake myself from sleep.*"—**fastigia**: properly the *gable* of the roof: here put for the roof itself. **fastigia tecti**, *i.e.*, **tectum fastigatum**, a sloping or ridged roof.

304. The construction is: **adsto veluti....stupet pastor.** The contrast is between Aeneas listening to the din of battle and the shepherd hearing the roaring of a conflagation or a torrent from the top of a crag. The simile is suggested by Homer, Il. 4, 455. Cp. Thomson's imitation in his *Seasons*, Autumn, v. 340-348.—**furentibus Austris**: "*when the winds are raging*": abl. abs.

305. **montano flumine** is a kind of abl. of Quality with **torrens**: "*a whirling mountain torrent,*" or "*the roaring torrent of a mountain stream.*"

306. **sternit—sternit**: note the rhetorical effect gained by repetition, and cp. 325, **fuimus—fuit**: 483, **apparet—apparent**: 499, **vidi—vidi**: 560. **subiit—subiit.**—**boumque labores** is the Homeric *ἔργα βοῶν.*

307. **inscius**: "*perplexed*"; not knowing what to make of it because he is still dazed.

309. **manifesta**: perhaps a predicate, "*the truth is evident.*" Others make **fides** one of the nominatives to **patescunt**, but the two distinct predicates have double the force and energy of a single predicate.—**Danaum**: see v. 14.—**fides** here is not "*faith,*" but "*that which causes faith.*"

310. **dedit ruinam**: "*has fallen in ruins,*" literally, "*has made a fall.*"—**dare**, from root DHA; cp. *τίθημι,* often used in the sense of "*make*": *νόμους ἔθηκε.* That the house of Deiphobus was first attacked is evident from Homer, Od. 8, 517.

311. **Vulcano superante**: abl. abs.: "*amid the overpowering flames*": **Vulcanus=ignis** (*metonymy*).—**proximus Ucalegon=domus Ucalegtonis quae proxima erat**: the owner is put for the house (*metonymy*). Note the lively effect of the sudden introduction of the figure.

312. **igni—relucent**: "*gleam with the blaze.*" What words in the 3rd declension may have the ablative in **-e** or **-i**? H. L., 62.

313. This is a fine example of imitative harmony (*onomatopoeia*): the braying of the trumpets is well represented by the **r**'s: "*there arise the heroes' shout and trumpets' bray.*" There is an *anachronism* here, as trumpets were not used in Homer's time to give signals in battle.

314. **nec—armis**: "*nor in (taking) arms is there any reason good.*"—**sat = satis.**—**armis = in armis capiendis.**

315. **bello**: dative of Purpose: "*but my feelings burn to gather a troop for war.*"

316. **furor—armis**: "*fury and wrath drive me headlong, and I think how glorious it is to die in arms.*"—**succurrit**: literally, "*it occurs to me that it is glorious*": cp. Horace, Od. 3, 2, 13: **dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.**

318. **telis**: abl. of Separation: H. L., 291, 3.

319. **Othryades**: patronymic.

321. **trahit**: *zeugma*: "*carries the sacred vessels and the conquered gods in his hands and hurries along his little grandson.*" For the latter meaning cp. v. 457, **puerum Astyanacta trahebat.**—**sacra** sc. **vasa.**—**cursu**: "*distractedly*": literally "*with speed.*"—**limina**: "*to the house of Anchises.*

322. **quo—loco?** literally "*in what position is our state?*" or "*how fares our state?*"—**quo loco = in quo statu**: Hor. Ep. 1, 12, 25: **quo sit res Romana loco.**—**summa res**: Nettleship shows that **summa res** is an old phrase for the later **res publica,** "*our all,*" "*the main chance.*" Others take the meaning to be, "*where is the struggle hottest?*"—**Panthu** vocative: **Panthus** = Πάνθους = Πάνθοος: voc. Πάνθοε, Πάνθου.—**prendimus**: the indicative is far more vivid than the customary subjunctive, "*what stronghold are we to occupy?*" Occasionally we find a rhetorical question in the indicative: as Aen. vii, 359: **exulibusne datur ducenda Lavinia?** xii 637: **quid ago?**

323. **cum—reddit**: H. L., 261, 1.

324. **summa dies**: see note on v. 11.—**ineluctabile tempus**: cp. "*the inevitable hour*" in Gray's *Elegy.*—**Dardaniae**: dative.

325. **fuimus, fuit**; the perfect of *sum* is often used *euphemistically*: "*we were,*" but "*are no longer*": cp. Tib. 3, 5, 3, **sive erimus seu nos fata fuisse velint**: "*whether we shall be alive or whether the fates may will that we should be dead*:" cp. Gen. xlii, 13, "*the youngest is this day with our father and one is not*:" Matt. ii, 18, "*Rachel weeping for her children, and would not be comforted, because they are not.*"

327. **transtulit**: according to the Scholiast on Aes. Theb. 310, the gods departed in a body from Troy on the night of its destruction bearing their images with them.

328. **arduus—equus**: "*the horse, as it stands high in the heart of the town, pours forth armed men and triumphant Sinon insolently spreads fire and confusion.*" Note the double alliteration.—**moenibus** : see note v. 334.

330. **bipatentibus** : "*wide open* :" with both halves thrown open.

331. **millia quot = tot millia quot.**

332. **angusta viarum** : either for **angustas vias**, "*the narrow streets*," or for **augusta loca viarum**, "*the narrow places of the streets.*"

333. **stat—stricta** : "*the keen sword stands drawn with gleaming edge.*"

334. **primi—vigiles**: either "*the guard at the entrance,*" or "*the guards first attacked.*"

336. **numine** : "*by the will.*"

337. **tristis Erinys**: "*fell Fury.*" Warner explains Erinys here as the demon of battle : cp. Lucan, 4, 187, **civilis Erinys.**

339. **maximus armis** : others read for **armis, annis.**

340. **oblati per lunam** : "*meeting us in the moonlight.*"

342. **illis—amore**: "*it so happened that he had come to Troy in these* (*direful*) *days fired with frantic love for Cassandra.*"—**Cassandrae :** Objective gen.

343. **insano** : = "*because it hurried him to his ruin.*"—Conington. (1) **quia belli tempore amabat** ; (2) **aut perpetuum epitheton amoris est.** —Servius. The second interpretation of Servius seems the best : *i.e.*, "*passionate,*" or "*violent*" : cp. Plant. Curc. I, 3, 20 : **nam bonum est pauxillum amare sane ; insane non bonum est,** and Ovid Art. Amat. 1, 371 : **insano juret amore mori.**

344. **gener** used proleptically because he does not seem to have ever married Cassandra. According to Roman custom, after betrothal relationship (**affinitas**) was considered complete : cp. Tacitus Ann. xii, 4 : **praebebat Caesar aures accipiendis adversus generum suspicionibus** (said of Lucius Silanus who was newly betrothed to Caesar's daughter, Octavia). The meaning then is : "*in hope of becoming a son-in-law he was bringing aid.*"

345. **qui—audierit**: "*inasmuch as he did not listen to the warnings of his raving betrothed.*" Causal rel. and subj.

346. See note on v. 230.

347. **quos—vidi**: "*and when I saw them banded together rushing boldly into battle.*"—**confertos** : from **confercio** : others read **consertos.**

348. **incipio super his.** It is best to take **super** adverbially, and to supply **dictis** with **his** : "*thereupon I begin with these words.*"—**fortissima frustra** : bring out the alliteration by translating "*bootlessly brave.*"

349. **si—sequi** : "*if you have a fixed desire to follow one of desperate daring*:" with **cupido certa,** sc. **est. extrema** is neuter pl. : sc. **me** with **audentem.**

350. **sit** : Indirect Question.

351. **excessere** sc. **ex urbe Troja.** It seems to have been a universal belief among the ancients that the gods left a doomed city. Josephus relates that during the siege of Jerusalem voices more than human were heard crying on the day of Pentecost : *μεταβαίνωμεν ἐντεῦθεν*, "*let us go hence :*" cp. Aesch. Theb. 207 :—

ἀλλ' οὖν θεοὺς
τοὺς τῆς ἁλούσης πόλεος ἐκλείπειν λόγος.

So also Milton, *Ode on Nativity* :—

Apollo from his shrine
Can no more divine,
With hollow shriek the steep of Delphos leaving.

352. **quibus** : abl. of Instrument : "*by whose grace this empire stood firm :*" for the force of **steterat** : see v. 56.

353. **incensae** : emphatic from its position : "*in flames is the city you are trying to succour.*"—**succurritis** : a *conative* present.—**et** is epexegetic (*i.e.*, explanatory) ; the clause introduced by it explaining how they would meet death : "*let us meet death by rushing into the heart of the foe.*" Usually the passage is explained as an example of *ὕστερον πρότερον* : "*let us die and let us rush into the midst of the foe*" = "*let us rush into the midst of the foe and die.*"—**arma** = **armatos hostes.**

354. **una—salutem** : note the emphatic position of **una** : "*the only safety the vanquished have is to expect no safety :*" with **salus** sc. **est.**

355. **animis** : "*courage.*"—**additus** sc. **est.**—**lupi ceu** : this may be an echo of the Homeric λύκοι ὥς ending the line in Iliad 11, 72 ; 16, 156.

356. **improba** : generally denoting *excess* of all kinds in Vergil : cp. **improbus ira,** "*excessive in rage :*" **improbus anser,** "*greedy goose :*" **improbus amor,** "*insatiate love :*" **improbus labor,** "*unflinching toil.*" With **improba ventris—rabies** may be compared the Shakespearian "*belly-pinched wolf.*" Possibly here a strong personal epithet :

"reckless;" cp. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, iv, *"a prowling wolf, whom hunger drives."*

357. **exegit caecos**: *"has driven them blindly forth," i.e.*, to prowl at random.

358. **siccis**: *"thirsting for blood."* The second part of the simile is without the connective **sic** with **per tela, per hostes.**

359. **mediaeque—iter**: *"and we pursue our way into the heart of the city."*—**mediae urbis** is a Descriptive Gen.: H. L., 288, 5.

360. **nox—umbra**: *"dark night hovers round us with encircling gloom."*—**cavus**, *"hollow," i.e., "encircling."*

361. **quis—labores?** *"who can unfold the carnage of that night, who (can unfold) in language the losses, or who is able to measure its troubles by his tears."* Note the studied alliteration, **funera fando: lacrimis labores.—fando**: see note v. 6.

363. **dominata**: *"that has held sway."*

364. **plurima—limina**: *"unnumbered both throughout the streets and the houses and the awful courts of the gods lie strewed the lifeless corpses."* With **inertia corpora**: cp. ἀμένηνα κάρηνα of Homer.

366. **poenas dant sanguine**: *"pay forfeit with their life:"* cp. v. 72.

367. **quondam—Danai**: *"anon too into the hearts of the vanquished valor returns and the victorious Danai fall."* Note the alliteration **victis—virtus—victores.**

368. **crudelis**: *"ruthless."*

369. **pavŏr**: Note the quantity of the final syllable of **pavor**: possibly long, because the stress of the voice (**ictus**) falls on it and also because the letter *r* is trilled: cp. v. 411.—**plurima—imago**: *"many a form of death"* = *"death in many a form:"* cp. Thucy. 3, 81: *πᾶσα ἰδέα κατέστη θανάτου.*

370. **se—offert**: *"comes to meet us."*

371. **socia agmina credens**: **socia agmina (esse) credens.**

372. Notice the emphasis gained by putting the adjective at the beginning of the line with a pause after it: so also **infelix**, v. 345: **saucius**, v. 529.—**ultro**: *"unaccosted by us."*

374. **rapiunt—feruntque**: ordinarily the phrase is **ferre et agere** (cp. *φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν*: **ferre** referring to the *"carrying off"* of portable property, and **agere** to the *"driving"* of captives or cattle. Here there is little or no distinction between the words: Tr. *"plunder and pillage."*

377. **sensit delapsus**: a *Graecism* for **sensit se delapsum esse**: cp. *ἤσθετο ἐμπεσών.* So also Milton, *Paradise Lost*, 9, 792:—

> greedily she gorged without restraint
> And knew not eating death.

i.e., that she was eating.

So also Catullus iv, 2:—

> Phaselus ille quam videtis hospites
> Ait fuisse navium celerrimus.

379. **aspris sentibus nitens**: "*struggling amid rough brambles*:" for the abl.: see H. L., 292, 1. The same simile occurs in Homer's Iliad 3, 33. Note here **aspris = asperis**.

380. **refugit**: perfect of instantaneous action, or aorist. Often the perfect is used in similes for the present: see note, v. 223. Note that the recurring dactyls and the repetition of **re-** well brings out the sudden recoil of the unwary traveller.

381. **attollentem—tumentem**: "*as it rises in anger and puffs out its deep blue throat.*"—**caerula** = **caelulea** from **caelum**, "*sky*," hence, "*skyblue.*"—**colla**: acc. of Respect.

382. **visu**: may go with **tremefactus** or with **abibat**; perhaps the former.—**abibat**: "*was beginning to retreat*:" or Conative imperf.: "*was attempting to retreat.*"

385. The metaphor in **adspirat** is that of a favorable breeze.

388. **dextra**: for the more usual **dextram**.

389. **insignia**: devices on the shields, crests of helmets, or any other mark that would serve to distinguish one warrior from another. Perhaps *badge* is nearest to it in English.

390. **dolus—requirat**: construe **quis in hoste requirat utrum dolus (sit adhibendus) an virtus**: "*who in the case of a foe would ask whether fraud or courage is to be employed?*"—**requirat**: Rhetorical Question.

391. **ipsi**: *i.e.*, the enemy will themselves supply the arms we are to use against them.

392. **insigne**: is a subst. as in v. 389: "*the fair device of his shield*:" or as we should say "*on his shield.*"—**comantem—galeam**: cp. Homeric *κόρυς ἱπποδασεῖα.*

393. **induitur**: "*dons*": reflexive or middle use: cp. 511, **ferrum cingitur**.

396. **haud—nostro**: "*not under the protection of our own gods.*" By donning the Greek armor they were no longer under the protection of the Trojan gods.

397. **caecam—noctem**: see v. 340.—**congressi proelia conserimus**: "*meeting (the Greeks) we engage in many a battle.*"

398. **Danaum** : see v. 14.—**Orco**=**ad Orcum** : see v. 19.

399. **cursu** : "*speedily*" : cp. Aen. 5, 265 : cp. *δρόμῳ*.

400. **fida—litora**: "*the safe refuge of the coast,*" where the ships were moored.—**formidine turpi** : "*in craven fear.*"

402. **scandunt**: a *sense* construction: see note v.32.—**conduntur**=**se condunt**: "*hide themselves*" : a reflexive use of the passive corresponding to the middle voice.

402. **heu divis**: "*alas! it is not at all right for any one to trust to the gods against their will.*"—**nihil** is the Adverbial Acc. With **fas** supply **est.** Distinguish **fas est**=*χρή*, said of the will of heaven; **jus est** = *δεῖ*, said of human right.—**invitis divis** : dative after **fidere** or abl. abs.

403. **passis—crinibus**: either the abl. of Description: "*with her tresses all loose,*" or the abl. of Means : "*by her loosened tresses*" : **passis** from **pando.**

404. **a templo—Minervae**: "*from the temple, aye, from the very shrine of Minerva.*"—**templum** (cp. Gk. *τέμενος*) is applied to the whole building and the land enclosed for sacred purposes (from *τέμνειν*, "*to cut off*"); **adytum** (*a*, "*not,*" *δύειν*, "*enter*") is the "*unenterable*" place where the image of the goddess was kept. The Oilean Ajax was said to have dragged Cassandra and the image, to which she was clinging, from the temple.

The precincts of religious buildings have from time immemorial been places of refuge: cp. the Jewish cities of Refuge; "the Sanctuary" at Westminster. The altar was considered especially inviolable: cp. I Kings, ii, 28; Matt. xxiii, 35.

406. **arcebant** : "*confined,*" so that they could not be raised in prayer —**palmas** : see v. 153.

407. **non—Coroebus** : "*Coroebus with infuriate mind brooked not this sight.*"—**furiata mente** : abl. of Description.

408. **periturus** : for the more usual **periturum** : see note v. 377. Tr. "*resolving to die, he flung himself into the midst of the band.*"

409. **densis armis**=**densatis armis**: "*closing our ranks,*" "*in dense array.*"

410. Note **primum** : **tum** (v. 413) ; **etiam** (v. 420).

411. **nostrorum**: "*of our own men.*"—**obruimūr**: Note the quantity of **-ūr**. A final syllable naturally short may be lengthened when it is caesural: cp. Aen. 4, 64; 3, 464.—**miserrima**: because inflicted by friends.

412. **facie**: "*appearance*," literally "*make*" (from **facio**).—**Graiarum errore jubarum**: "*through the mistake caused by our Grecian plumes*": Subjective Gen.

413. **ereptae—ira**: "*in wrath at the rescue of the maid.*"—**virginis**: Causal genitive. Latin is sadly deficient in verbal nouns; their place is often supplied by the perf. part. passive: cp. v. 643, **capta urbs**, "*the capture of the city*"; **ab urbe condita**, "*from the foundation of the city.*" Milton uses the same idiom in *Paradise Lost*, 9, 16:—

> or rage
> Of Turnus for Lavinia disespoused.

414. **acerrimus**: "*most fierce*": The Oilean Ajax felt aggrieved at the loss of his prize.

415. **gemini Atridae**: see note, v. 203.

416. **adversi—equis**: "*as at times, when a hurricane bursts forth, the west and south winds strive in opposing conflict, and the east wind exulting in the coursers of the Dawn.*"—**adversi**, predicate.—**laetus—equis** is the Homeric ἱππιοχάρμης.

418. Note the alliterative harmony of this line: translate, "(*then*) *creak the forests and fierce in foam Nereus stirs up the seas from their lowest depths.*"—**spumeus** equally applicable to the angry god and angry sea.

421. **tota—urbe**: note that the abl. and not **per** with acc. is the usual construction when **totus** accompanies a noun.

422. **mentita**: "*false*": see v. 46.

423. **ora—signant**: *and they mark the jarring accent of our speech*": literally, "*our lips disagreeing in speech* (*with their own*)." In Homer the Trojans and Greeks alike speak Greek. Vergil means here that there was a slight difference in dialect or accent.

424. **ilicet**: "*thereupon.*" Originally **ilicet**(=**ire** (**vobis**) **licet**) was the technical word used by the priests after the sacrifice or by the consul in dismissing an assembly: "*You may go.*" Then came its interjectional meaning.

425. **divae**: Minerva.

426. **unus**: imparts to superlatives or to adjectives of a superlative idea an additional force: cp. εἷς ἄριστος, "*by far the best*": Homer's Iliad 12, 243: εἷς οἰωνὸς ἄριστος ἀμύνεσθαι περὶ πάτρης. Tr.: "*the justest of the just.*"

428. **dis—visum**: "*heaven willed otherwise.*" The meaning of course is '*Heaven's ways are not ours;*' according to human reasoning Rhipeus, the most just of men, should have been spared. Seneca recommends his friend on the occasion of any loss to say constantly without complaining, *dis aliter visum est*, or rather *di melius*, in which sc. *dent.*

430. **labentem**: "*in thy fall.*"

431. **flamma—meorum**: "*expiring flame of my countrymen.*" The burning city was the funeral pyre of her defenders.—**et flamma**, etc.: explanatory of the previous clause.

433. Supply **me** before **vitavisse**.—**vices**: "*encounter*": root VICK, "*to move*": cp. Ϝείκειν: **vitare** (= **victare**), **vicissim**: German **weichen**, "*change*," "*turn*": English *weak*.—**si—manu**: "*if fate had so willed that I should fall, I earned* (*my fall*) *by my deeds*."—**ut caderem** belongs to **si fata fuissent** and not to **meruisse.**

436. **gravior**: "*somewhat enfeebled.*"—**Ulixi**: "*caused by Ulysses*": Subjective Gen. For the form see v. 7.

438. **hic**: at the royal palace of Priam.

441. **acta testudine**: "*by the advancing shielded column.*" The **testudo** consisted of a body of men who locked their shields together and held them over their heads: cp. Tennyson, *Dream of Fair Women*:—

> heroes tall,
> Dislodging pinnacle and parapet
> Upon the *tortoise creeping to the wall.*

442. **parietibus**: see note on v. 18: it may be a dat. or abl.—**postesque—gradibus**: "*and hard by the door posts themselves they struggle up the rungs.*"—**gradibus**: the steps of the scaling ladders.

443. **clipeosque—objiciunt**: "*and* (*thus*) *protected, with their left hands they present their shields to the missiles.*" Others take **clipeos** governed either by **protecti** used here in the middle sense, or by **objiciunt**: "*placing their shields before them with the left hand they present them* (*i.e., the shields*) *to the missiles.*"

444. **fastigia**: "*battlements.*"

445. **tecta—culmina**: "*the roof covering.*"

446. **his—telis**: "*with such weapons, since they see their doom, even in death's extremity they prepare to defend themselves.*"

448. **decora alta**: "*stately splendor.*"

449. **imas obsedere fores**: "*have blockaded the doors below.*"

451. **instaurati animi**: sc. **sunt**: "*our spirits are braced anew.*"

453. **limen—tergo**: "*there was a threshold, and a secret door and a passage connecting the chambers of Priam's palace one with another, and a gate in the rear unobserved.*"—**limen** = **ligmen**: properly, "*that which binds,*" hence the *sill* or *lintel.*—**pervius usus**: by entering the door, one had access to the different rooms.—**relicti**: perhaps means overlooked by the assailants and unnoticed by the defenders.

455. **infelix**: notice the emphatic position of this word.

457. **soceros**: "*to her parents-in-law*": in the masculine term are included Priam and Hecuba, the father and mother of her husband Hector.—**avo** = **ad avum**: see v. 36.

458. **summi fastigia culminis**: "*to the ridge of the roof*": for **fastigia** see v. 302.

460. **in praecipiti**: "*on the brink,*" "*on the sheer edge.*"—**summisque—tectis**: "*and towering with its roof to the stars.*"

462. **Danaum**: see v. 14.—**solitae**, sc. **sunt**. What verbs are semi-deponent?

463. **aggressi—impulimusque**: "*assailing with iron bars where the topmost stories afforded weak joinings, we wrench it from its deep foundations and push it forward.*"—**summa tabulata** are the stories that rise above the roof of the main building. Note that the present **convellimus** represents a continued act, and the perfect **impulimus** a single, momentary one.

465. **ea—trahit**: "*it toppling over suddenly, falls in ruin with a crash.*"

467. **subeunt**: "*come to their aid.*"

469. **vestibulum**: the open space before the door of a Roman house. Some derive it from **ve-sti-bu-lum**, "*a place for standing outside*": from **ve-sto.**

470. **telis—aena**: "*gleaming in arms of brazen sheen*": note the *hendiadys.*

471. **qualis—trisulcis**: "*like as when a snake, fattened on baleful herbs, which chill winter kept swollen underground, now all new, its slough cast off, and shining in youth, rolls along with breast erect, its slimy length*

towering to the sun, and in its mouth it makes its three-forked tongue quiver." It was a common belief among the ancients that the snake drew its venom from the food on which it fed. The simile is taken from Iliad 22, 93, when Hector is awaiting the attack of Achilles:—

> *ὡς δὲ δράκων ἐπὶ χειῇ ὀρέστερος ἄνδρα μένῃσιν,*
> *βεβρωκὼς κακὰ φάρμακ' ἔδυ δέ τέ μιν χόλος αἰνος,*
> *σμερδαλέον δὲ δέδορκεν ἑλισσόμενος περὶ χειῇ.*

"*As a serpent of the mountains upon his den awaiteth a man, having fed on evil poisons, and fell wrath hath entered into him, and terribly he glareth as he coileth himself about his den*": cp. Shelley's *Hellas ad finem*:—

> *The earth doth like a snake renew*
> *Her winter weeds outworn.*

So also Tennyson, *The Two Voices*, when he describes the dragon-fly:—

> *An inner impulse rent the veil,*
> *Of that old husk; from head to tail*
> *Came out clear plates of sapphire mail.*

—**novus—juventa**: probably Vergil is thinking of the other name of Pyrrhus, Neoptolemus, "*young warrior.*"—**ore=in ore**: Local abl.—**linguis**: abl. of Means.

476. **agitator equorum**=Homeric *ἡνίοχος ἵππων.*

477. **Scyria pubes**: Pyrrhus brought a number of warriors from Scyros, one of the Cyclades, where his grandfather Lycomedes dwelt: Hom. Il. 19, 325.

479. **dura limina**: "*the stubborn door*": for **limen** see note on v. 458.

480. **perrumpit—vellit**: the present expresses incomplete and continuous action, and also an attempt: "*is striving to burst through and wrench*": the perfect **cavavit—dedit**, a momentary, complete act: "*and now having cut out a panel, he has hewn a breach in the stout oak and made a huge opening with a yawning mouth.*" The hinges (**cardines**) in a Roman house were not as with us fastened to the side of the door, but were pivots working in sockets, one in the lintel (**limen superum**) and the other in the sill (**limen**). The doors were double doors (**valvae**).—**cardo**: from KRAD, "*to move,*" "*to swing*": cp. **cor**, *καρδία, κράδη, κραδαίνω, κόρδαξ.*

486. **at**: marks a change in the narrative.

487. **miscetur**: "*is in confusion.*" The **domus interior** probably refers to the women's apartments, *γυναικωνῖτις*, which in a Greek house

were in the back.—**cavae aedes**: either the "*vaulted*" or "*hollow halls*," or = **cavaedium**, an opening in the roof of the **atrium** over the **impluvium** or cistern containing rain water.

488. **ululare**: often said of a woman's shriek of grief as **vagire** is of an infant's wail. It may be observed that though *ὀλολύζω* is etymologically connected with **ululare**, it generally is applied to female invocations of gods or to expressions of joy, and is seldom said of grief: English *howl.*—**aurea**: the contrast is in the splendor of the sky and the wretchedness of the palace.

489. **tectis = in tectis.**

490. The kisses were a sign of sorrowful parting: cp. Ovid Metam. 13, 412:—

> Dardanidas matres patriorum signa deorum
> Dum licet amplexas.

491. **vi patria**: "*in all his father's might*": abl. of Manner. Achilles was the father of Pyrrhus.

492. **labat—crebro**: "*totters before the frequent blows of the battering ram.*" Scan this line: see v. 16.

493. **emoti**: "*wrenched*": see note on v. 480.

494. **aditus**: cognate object: "*they burst an entrance.*"

496. **non sic—trahit**: "*not so furiously does the river, when bursting its banks it has gone forth foaming and has beaten down the opposing dykes with its whirling tide, rush raging over the fields in a mass and throughout all the plains carries away the herds and the stalls together.*" Note the double alliteration in v. 498. No doubt this would be a familiar image to Vergil seen both on the Mincius and the Padus.—**cumulo**: abl. of Manner.

499. **ipse**: "*with my own eyes.*"

501. **centumque nurus**: according to Homer (Iliad 6, 244), Priam had fifty sons and fifty daughters. The hundred mentioned here must refer to both daughters-in-law and daughters.

503. **illi**: "*those famous.*"

504. **barbarico**: to a Greek, all nations outside of Greece were barbarians, especially the Asiatic nations. The phrase "barbaric gold" suggests the idea of Oriental magnificence: cp. Milton's *Paradise Lost*, 2, 3:—

> Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
> Show'rs on her kings barbaric pearl and gold.

The Romans often adorned the walls of their houses and temples with the spoils of war.

506. **forsitan—requiras**: note that in Vergil **forsitan** takes the subjunctive: **forte, forsan,** the indicative: **fortasse,** once the indicative, otherwise the subjunctive.

507. **convulsa—limina**: "*the bursting of the doors of his house.*"

510. **ferrum cingitur**: "*girds on his useless sword*": middle use.

511. **fertur moriturus**: "*is rushing resolved to die.*"

512. **nudoque—axe**: "*under the open canopy of heaven.*" Vergil has probably had in his mind a Greek house here. The **atrium** was the main hall of a Roman house in which were the images of the **penates** and an altar. The roof of this was partly open and below the open space was a cistern (**impluvium**). Around it ran a pillared portico to which rooms opened, with an altar of **Jupiter hospitalis** (Ζεὺς ἑρκεῖος).

513. **laurus**: so in the description of the palace of Latinus we find (7, 59):

> **Laurus erat tecti medio in penetralibus altis.**

516. **praecipites**: cp. Tennyson, *In Memoriam*, xv: "*The rooks are blown about the skies.*"

518. **sumptis juvenalibus armis**: "*donning his youthful armor.*"

519. **mens dira**: "*so dreadful a thought.*"

520. **cingi**: "*to gird yourself*": reflexive.

521. **defensoribus istis**: "*such defenders as you.*" The idea is that in prayers, not in arms, our hope is.

522. **non** sc. **egeret**, from the **eget** preceding: "*the hour would not need such aid and such defenders were even my own Hector now beside us.*"

523. **tandem**: some say, "*retire, I beseech thee, hither,*" or "*come hither, for it is high time.*" Conington says: "*while yet there is time.*"

524. **moriere simul**: "*you will die along with us.*"

526. **elapsus—caede**: "*having escaped the sword of Pyrrhus.*"

527. **porticibus longis**: "*flies adown the long cloisters*": abl. of the *way by which* one goes: see note v. 175.—**lustrat**: "*traverses.*"

529. **saucius**: note the emphatic position of the adjective.—**illum—insequitur**: "*him eagerly Pyrrhus follows in act to deal a deadly blow.*" —**infesto = infensto**: root GHAN, Gk. *θεν*—Lat. FEND, "*to strike*": cp. **defendo,** *θείνω*.

530. **jam jamque**: note that the repetition of **jam** makes the description vivid: "*now now he holds him in his grasp, and follows hard upon him with his spear.*" The meaning is not that he actually holds him in his grasp, but he is so close to him that he seems to have caught him.

533. **quamquam—tenetur**: "*though he is now hemmed in by death on every side.*"

535. **at**: a frequent particle in imprecations: "*Nay, may the gods, he cries, if there is any kind power in heaven which regards such deeds, render you all the thanks you deserve, and yield you your due reward, for such a crime, for such a sacrilege, you who have made me witness the death of my son before my eyes, and have defiled a father's face with a death.*" —**pietas** commonly used of the dutiful feeling of men to the gods, to their country, or to others who have a claim on them. Here it is used for the reciprocal feeling of gods to men.—**quae—curet**: Consecutive use of the relative: H. L., 236, 2.—**qui fecisti**: direct address: "*thou who hast made.*" Distinguish this from **qui—feceris.** The infinitive **cernere** for **ut cernerem** is rare after **facere.**—**foedasti**: defilement from seeing his son's death.

540. **at—Priamo**: "*but that hero, Achilles, whose son you falsely say you are, was not like you in the case of Priam, his foe.*"—**at**: see note v, 486.—**satum** from **sero.**—**quo**: abl. of Origin, H. L., 291, 2. This does not mean that Pyrrhus was illegitimate, but that his nature and conduct showed him to be no true son of Achilles.—**jura—erubuit**: "*he respected the rights and trust of a suppliant.*"—**fidem supplicis**: the confidence reposed by the suppliant, and the protection in return.—**erubuit**: *ᾐδεῖτο, ᾐσχύνετο.*

542. **corpusque**: after the death of Hector, Priam went to the tent of Achilles to beg the corpse of Hector. Achilles granted his request, and allowed him to depart in safety.

544. **sine ictu**: "*without inflicting a wound.*"

545. **rauco**: "*hollow sounding*": root RU, "*roar*": cp. *ὀ-ρύ-μαγδος, ὠ-ρύ-ω*: *ru-mor, rugire, rumen* (=*rugmen*): A. S. rún, rune (originally "*a murmur*").—**repulsum.**— sc. **est.**

546. **umbone**: the **umbo** was the projecting boss of the shield, constructed in such a way as to turn aside a weapon. It was covered with leather: root AMBH, "*to project,*" cp. **umbilicus**, *ὀμφαλος.*

548. **Pelidae genitori=ad Pelidam genitorem.**—**tristia**: "*fell.*"

550. **ipsa**: "*very.*"

553. **lateri**=**in latus**, see note on v. 19.

555. **tulit**=**abstulit.**

556. **populis terrisque**: "*proud in so many nations and countries:*" abl. of Cause; or Local abl. with **regnatorem.**

557. **litore**=**in litore.** Vergil may have in mind the sad fate of Pompey. According to Servius, Priam's body was exposed on the Sigeum promontory.

559. **at**: see note v, 486.—**saevus**—**horror**: "*fell dread.*"

560. **subiit**, sc. **animum.**

562. **deserta**: "*desolate.*"

563. Scan this line, and state any irregularity in the scansion.

564. **copia**: "*force:*" for the more usual **copiae**:

565. **deseruere**—**dedere**: "*all had left me in utter weariness, and had flung themselves to the earth, or had sunk in despair into the flames.*"

567. This episode of Vergil is left out of all good MSS., though Servius says it was written by Vergil but left out by Varius and Tucca. The main argument against the genuineness is that in Aeneid 6, 570 seq. Helen is spoken of as betraying Deiphobus to the Greeks.—**super eram**=**supereram**, *tmesis.*—**adeo**: (cp. δή) emphasizes the word to which it is joined.

570. **erranti**: not on the ground, but on the roof. He does not descend till v. 632.

571. **sibi** goes with **praemetuens**, not with **infestos**; "*she fearing for herself the Trojans who were hostile to her on account of the overthrow of Troy.*"—**infestos**: for the derivation, see v. 529.

573. **Erinys**: so Aeschylus (Ag. 749) calls Helen νυμφόκλαυτος Ἐρινύς.

574. **invisa**: "*a hateful being*:" others take it "*unseen.*"

575. **animo**=**in animo.**

576. **sceleratas**—**poenas**=**sceleris poenas**: "*to exact vengeance for guilt.*"

577. **scilicet**: "*forsooth*:" generally used in bitter irony.

578. **regina**: "*in queenly state,*" *i.e.*, not as a captive like the other Trojan ladies.

579. **conjugium**: abstract for the concrete **conjugem.**—**patres**=**parentes**: according to Euripides (Orestes 473) Tyndareus and Leda are represented as being alive after the death of Clytemnestra, but Homer (Od. 11, 298) introduces Leda in the shades.

580. **comitata** : passive use of a deponent verb.

581. **occiderit—arserit—sudarit** : the future perfect is often used to express indignation that an event spoken of as future should be realized. The sense is "*shall she return now that Priam has been murdered, Troy burned, Dardania bathed in blood ?*"

584. **habet** : "*brings with it.*"

585. **nefas = nefastam**, "*the wicked one.*"—**sumpsisse merentes—poenas** : "*to have exacted a penalty that deserved* (*to be exacted*)." = **sumpsisse poenas merentes ut sumerentur.**

586. **animumque—flammae** : "*and it shall be my delight to have filled my soul with avenging fire.*" No where else does **explere** govern a genitive, though many other verbs of fulness take one.

589. **cum—deam** : "*when my kind mother, revealing the goddess, presented herself in visible presence, never before so clear to my sight, and she shone in pure radiance through the night, in form and stature such as she is wont to appear to the heavenly host.*"—**cum—obtulit** : when does **cum** take the indicative? H. L., 262, 5, 6.—**ante = antea.**—**deam** : there is no need of supplying **se esse.**—**qualis et quanta** : physical superiority in size and beauty were according to the Greek and Roman inseparable from mental superiority in size and beauty : cp. Homeric ἠύς τε μέγας τε.

592. **reprensum—continuit** : "*she seized and held* (*me*)."

593. **roseo—ore** : Aen. 1, 402 : **rosea cervice.**

594. **dolor** : "*indignation.*"

595. **quonam—recessit ?** "*whither, pray, hath departed thy care for me.*"—**nostri** : Objective Gen., H. L., 287, 3, after **cura.**—**tibi** : dative of Reference, H. L., 285, 3.

596. **non—aspicies** : "*wilt thou not go and see.*"—**non = nonne.**—**prius** before doing anything else.—**ubi—liqueris** : Indirect Question.

597. **superet conjunxne** : construe **non prius aspicies superetne conjunx** : Indirect Question also.

599. **ni—ensis** : "*unless my guardianship were still withstanding them, already the flames would have swept them away and the sword of the enemy would have drained their blood.*" The ordinary form would be **resisteret—tulissent.** The present represents a continuous effort, and the perfect the completion of the act if the effort were relaxed.

601. **tibi** : "*as you think* :" dative of Reference, H. L., 285, 3.

603. **a culmine** : cp. κατ' ἄκρης, literally, "*from the top to the bottom* :" "*completely.*"

604. **quae—caligat**: *"which now veils your sight and dims your mental vision and lies damp and dark around you."*—**caligat**: root SKAL, *"to cover:"* cp. **squal-or**, *κελαινός, κηλίς*. Note the emphatic position of **tu**, *"do you not,"* no matter what others do.

608. **avulsaque saxis saxa**: *"and rocks rent from rocks."*—**saxis**: abl. of Separation, H. L., 291, 3.

609. **undantem**: *"rolling in billows."*

610. **Neptunus**, the founder of Troy, is destroying the work of his own hands.

612. **Scaeas**: from *σκαιός*, *"left"* or *"west,"* hence the gate looking westward to the sea, for the Greek augur when he divined looked north, and hence *"west"* or *"left"* were with him synonymous: cp. Hom. Od. 3, 295: *σκαιὸν ῥίον*, *"the western headland"*: others connect it with Siko, the name of a Trojan hero, or demigod, and see the remnant of the same word in **Sigeum, Sichaeus, Scamander.**

615. **jam—insedit**: *"already, lo, Tritonian Pallas has perched on the top of the citadel."*

616. **limbo**: *"robe,"* or *"border,"* referring to the *πέπλος*: another reading is **nimbo**, *"a halo."*—**Gorgone**: on the shield or **aegis** of Minerva was the head of the Gorgon Medusa.

619. **eripe fugam**: a stronger expression than **cape fugam**: with an intimation that he would be rescued from all dangers.

620. Referring to the fact that Aeneas would be safely conducted to Italy, which was the original home of the Trojans.

622. **inimica—numina**: Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva.

624. **considere in ignes**: *"to sink down into the flames."*

625. **ex imo**: cp. **e culmine**: v. 603.

626. **ac—ruinam**: *"and even as when on the top of mountains, the woodmen with rivalry strive to cut down an aged ash, hacked by the steel and hard plied axes: threateningly it ever hangs and trembling shakes its foliage with quivering top."* The fall of a hero is often compared to the fall of a tree: cp. Hom. Il. 4, 482: when the fall of Simoïsius is compared to that of a poplar; so also the fall of the boxer Entellus in Aen. 5, 448, is compared to that of a hollow pine tree:

> ut quondam cava concidit aut Erymantho,
> aut Ida in magna, radicibus eruta pinus.

So also Macaulay, *Lay of Horatius* :—

> And the great Lord of Luna
> Fell at that deadly stroke,
> As falls on Mount Alvernus
> A thunder-smitten oak.

630. **vulneribus—ruinam**: "*till gradually overpowered by blows it gives one final deep groan and torn from its ridge falls with a crash.*"—**congemuit—traxit**: the perfects (corresponding to the gnomic aorist in Gk.) for a present, to express a frequent act.—**jugis**: abl. of Separation, H. L., 291, 3.

632. **deo = deae**, *i.e.*, Venus.

633. **expedior = me expedio**: "*I extricate myself,*" "*I find my way out.*"

634. **perventum**, sc. **est mihi = perveni**: "*I have reached.*"

637. **excisa**: it is more probable that **exscissa** is the correct reading, as **exscindere urbem** is common but not **excidere urbem.**

638. **quibus sanguis**: "*whose blood is untouched by age.*"—sc. **est.**—**aevi** is the gen. of *respect*: cp. **maturus aevi, anxius aevi.**

639. **solidaeque—vires**: "*whose strength stands firm in all its native vigor*:" abl. of Means.

641. Note the emphatic position of **me** and the emphatic repetition of **mihi.**—**ducere vitam = vitam producere** (v. 6, 637). Metaphor taken from spinning: cp. Milton's *Lycidas* :—

> Comes the blind fury with the abhorred shears
> And slits the thin-spun life.

642. **satis—urbi**: "*enough and more than enough* (*it is*) *that I have seen one destruction and that we have survived the capture of the city.*" Vergil refers to the destruction of the city by Hercules in revenge for the perjury of Laomedon.—**superare** is used here for **superesse.** For **capta urbs**: "*the capture of a city*"; see note v. 413.

644. **positum**: cp. *κείμενος*, "*laid out for burial.*"—**adfati**: "*having saluted*": referring to the utterance (**conclamatio**) of the words **salve, vale, ave**, as the friends departed from the body at the funeral pile: Aen. 6, 231, 506; 11, 97.

645. **manu**: either "*by my own hand,*" or, as Heyne says, "*at the hand of the foe,*" or "*by attacking the foe.*" The latter part of the line would seem to imply that the enemy would through compassion either put an end to his life, or accord him the right of burial by casting three handfuls of earth upon his remains; see next note.

646. **facilis—sepulcri** : the usual interpretation of this passage is, "*a trifling thing is the loss of a sepulchre,*" a most unnatural speech to put in the mouth of Anchises, unless it is meant as the language of reckless and bitter despair, for the loss of a sepulchre was looked upon as the greatest of all losses. Another interpretation, suggested by Horace, Od. 1, 28, 35, is as follows : "*The casting of a few handfuls of earth in token of burial is an easy thing (and one which the enemy surely will not hesitate to perform).*" **jactura**, from **jacio**, although it usually means "*a loss,*" may mean "*the act of throwing.*" **Sepulcri** would be an easy and natural metonymy ; and **facilis**, literally, "*doable,*" would not be strained into "*slight,*" "*trifling*" or "*easily sufferable.*" Moreover, it is a question whether the tragic despair indicated in a willingness to forego burial and thus submit to eternal unrest simply to escape a few years of uncertainty and sorrow in this life, is not just a little too improbable to be artistic, and at any rate out of accord with Vergil's fine appreciation of the niceties of things and his pathetic tendency to soften painful effects wherever possible. It all hinges on the meaning of **ipsa manu**, v. 645. Taking the most reasonable meaning of this, viz. : "*by my own hand,*" the sequence of thought would be : "*I will slay myself, the enemy will pity me, strip my body of spoils and (in return) perform the easy task of burial,*" cp. Horace's

> Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa ; licebit
> Injecto ter pulvere curras.

648. **annos demoror**, either "*long since have I delayed the years,*" or "*long have I lingered through the years.*"—**ex quo** sc. **tempore** : "*since.*"

649. **fluminis—igni** : "*blasted me with the breath of his thunderbolt and smote me with his lightning.*" Anchises is said to have been so punished for boasting of the love of Venus.—**fulminis ventis** : perhaps Vergil refers to the theory of Epicurus that lightning was a fiery wind.

650. **perstabat memorans** : "*he continued to speak*" : cp. διετέλει λέγων.

651. **effusi lacrimis** sc. **sumus** : "*were melted in tears.*"

652. **ne** : dependent on the request implied in **effusi sumus**.

653. **fatoque—vellet** : "*and would be willing to add his weight to the doom that was pressing us down.*"

654. **haeret** : an example of *zeugma* : "*and he clings to his purpose and sticks to the same spot.*" Often the preposition is omitted before the former and expressed with the latter of two nouns.

656. **quod—dabatur** : "*what plan or what chance was any longer offered us?*"—**consilium** : means of human safety.—**fortuna** : divine aid.

657. **mene—ore** : "*did you expect, my father, that I could withdraw and abandon thee, and has an expression so unnatural fallen from a father's lips?*"—**te relicto** : abl. abs.—**posse—speravisti** : the verb **spero** is often used in the sense of "*expect,*" not "*hope,*" and takes the present infinitive.—**excidit** : according to Servius, Aeneas uses this and not a stronger word, to soften the rebuke of his father: cp. Homeric, *ποῖόν σε ἔπος φύγεν ἕρκος ὀδόντων.*

659. **superis** sc. **deis** : "*the gods above*" : cp. **dei inferi.**

660. **et—animo** : "*and (if) this is thy firm resolve*" :—**animo** : Local ablative = **in animo** —**perituraeque—juvat** sc. **te** : "*and if it is thy pleasure to add thyself and thine to the fate of Troy doomed to perish.*"—note the force of **periturae.**

661. **isti** : "*which thou dost covet.*"—**janua** : referring to the words of Aeneas, v. 645.

662. **jam** : "*straightway.*"—**multo de sanguine** : "*reeking with the blood*" : or "*fresh from the flowing blood.*"

663. **pătris, pātrem** : such variations are common when a mute is followed by a liquid after a short vowel : c. **tenēbris** (Georg. 3, 551 ; 3, 401) : **pharētram, pharĕtram** (Aen. 1, 336, 324) ; **rētro, rĕtro** (Aen. 11, 405 ; 5, 428) ; **dūplex, dŭplicem** (Aen. 12, 198 ; 1, 655).

664. **hoc—cernam ?** "*was it for this that you rescued me through the darts, through the fire, that I might see the enemy in my inmost chambers, and Ascanius and my father and Creusa by their side, one slaughtered in the blood of the other?*"—**quod me eripis** is the subject of the sentence, and **hoc = propter hoc.**—note **cernam** after **ut** : the idea is "*this was your object all along that I may now see,*" or it may be a case of vivid sequence as in Greek.

668. **arma—arma** : emphatic repetition : cp. Shakespeare, *Richard III.*, Act 5, Sc. 4 : "*a horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!*"

669. **sinite—revisam = sinite ut revisam** : "*permit me to seek again*" : **ut** is often omitted with such verbs ; **fac venias**, "*see that you come*" : **licet abeas**, "*you may go.*"—**instaurata** : used proleptically. = **revisam et instaurem proelia** : "*allow me to seek again and renew.*"

670. **nunquam** : here equivalent to an emphatic **non** : cp. Verg. Ecl. 3, 49 : **nunquam hodie effugies.**

671. **accingor** : see note v. 227.

672. **clipeoque—aptans** : "*and I was fitting my left hand into the clasps of the shield.*" The imperfect may either express the difficulty he had in doing this or the reluctance with which he left the palace.—It is noteworthy that the strap or handle of the shield, through which the left hand passed, was called **insertorium.**

674. With the passage 674-678: cp. the Iliad 6, 339, seq. where Andromache in this way speaks of Astyanax.

675. **periturus**: "*determined to perish.*"—**in omnia** sc. **pericula**: "*to all dangers.*"

676. **sin** : "*but if, on experience, you rest your hope on resorting to arms.*"—**expertus** : literally, "*having tried arms,*" sc. **arma.**

678. **quondam**: a bitter taunt: a wife no longer, since you desert me.

680. **dictu—mirabile**: give the construction of the supine in **-u**: H. L. 180, 3.

681. **inter manus—ora** : in the hands of his mother and being held up he was at once above the face of Creusa and that of Aeneas. Translate: "*for a while held in the hands and between the faces of his sorrowful parents.*"

682. **ecce pasci** : "*lo! a light crest seemed to shed a lustre from the head of Iulus, and with harmless touch (it seemed) to lick his wavy locks and to play around his temples.*" Distinguish in meaning **lĕvis** and **lēvis**.—**visus** sc. **est**.—**apex** is properly the point of the cap of a flamen, something like the spike of a modern helmet: here the 'tongue of fire.' It was originally wound round with wool: root AP, 'to tie,' 'to wind': cp. **apto, aptus.**—**tactu** : abl. of Specification: H. L., 293, 6. —**pasci**: metaphor of cattle or sheep moving quietly while feeding on pasture land.

685. **trepidare**: Historical infinitive: so also **excutere, restinguere.**

688. **caelo = ad caelum** : see note v. 36.

690. **hoc tantum** sc. **precor** : "*this is my only prayer.*"

691. **deinde**: "*do thou then grant us thine aid.*"—**deinde** marks a sequence of the condition **si pietate meremur**.—**auxilium** : This is the MSS. reading, but Probus, Peerlkamp, Keil, Ribbeck and others read **augurium** to harmonize with Aen. 3, 89, where almost the identical expression "**da pater augurium**" is used. We have followed the MSS., but it may be a case where all the earliest extant MSS. have been tainted from the same source. Scan this line and tell what metrical figure is in it.—**firma** : "*ratify*" : by a second omen.

693. **intonuit laevum**: "*it thundered on the left*": Adverbial Acc.: H. L. 283, 9. Thunder on the left was a good sign according to Roman augury: see note v. 54.

694. **stella—luce**: "*a star drawing a trail accompanied with much light.*" A meteor or shooting star was a phenomenon regarded with superstition among the ancients. Cp. Aen. 5, 523: so also Shakespeare, *Julius Caesar*, Act 2, Sc. 2:

> When beggars die there are no comets seen:
> The heavens themselves blaze forth the death of princes.

So also *Richard II.*, Act 2, Sc. 4:

> The meteors fright the fixed stars of heaven:
> The pale-faced moon looks bloody on the earth,
> And lean-faced prophets whisper fearful things;
> These signs forerun the death or fall of kings.

696. **Idaea silva**: indicating that Mt. Ida was the point for which they should set out. Servius says that the light signified the future glory of the house of Aeneas: the fiery trail, that some would stay behind; the length of the path, their long voyage: the furrow **(sulcus)**, that it would be by sea: and the sulphur-smoke, the death of Aeneas, or the war in Italy.

697. **signantemque vias**: "*and marking out its way*" (in the heaven).—**tum—lucem**: "*then in a long train its furrow sheds a gleam.*" —**tum**: after its appearance.

699. **hic vero**: for the more usual **tum vero.—se—auras**: Anchises was probably before this stretched on his bed: see v. 644.

700. **mora**: delay on my part. Note that the presents **est, sequor,** mark strongly the promptness of Anchises.

702. **domum**: "*family.*"

703. **augurium**: probably meant at first omens from the cry of birds: **avis**, and root GAR, "*to cry*": cp. *γηρύειν, garrire, graculus.*—**Troja**: all that is left of Troy, meaning Iulus, Anchises and Aeneas, or some say future Troy.

704. **cedo**: "*I yield,*" "*I resist no more.*"

706. **propiusque—volvunt**: Conington takes **incendia** subject and **aestus** object: "*and now the fire rolls its burning tides nearer*": others take **aestus** subject and **incendia** object: "*the conflagration rolls a fiery flood.*"

707. **imponere**: passive used in a middle sense = **te impone.**

708. **subibo humeris**: "*support you on my shoulders.*"—**labor iste**: "*the burden you cause.*"

711. **longe**: Servius thinks that Vergil is leading up to the loss of Creusa.

712. **quae dicam** = **mea verba**. Note that **dicam** is future indicative. —**animis advertite**: literally "*turn to (regard) my words with your minds.*" It is rare to find such a construction with **adverto**: the usual construction is **animum alicui rei advertere** or **animum ad aliquam rem advertere**.

713. **egressis** sc. **vobis**: "*there is to you having left the city*": or "*as you quit the city there is*": cp. *ἐστί σοι εἰσπλέονται τὸν κόλπον ἄστυ*: "*as you sail into the harbor there is a city,*" dat. of Reference: H. L., 285, 3.

714. **desertae**: "*lonely*": temples to Ceres were usually in a solitary quarter outside the walls.

715. **religione patrum**: "*by the veneration of my forefathers.*" Derive **religione**: v. 151.

716. **sedem**: "*trysting place.*"—**ex diverso**: "*from different quarters.*"

718. Note the emphatic position of **me**: "*As for me it is a sin to handle them, having come away from so bloody a war and from recent carnage.*"

719. **donec—abluero**: running water was held indispensible for purification: cp. the teaching of the Twelve Apostles where baptism is ordered to be *ἐν ὕδατι ζῶντι*.

721. **latos—leonis**: "*I spread over my broad shoulders and my neck stooped (to receive the burden), the tawny lion's hide as a covering.*"—**latos umeros**: is the Homeric *εὐρέας ὤμους*: cp. Tennyson, *The Passing of Arthur*: "*Make broad thy shoulders to receive my weight.*"—**super**: adverb.—**insternor**: a middle use of a passive.—**veste—pelle**: *hendiadys.*

724. **implicuit**: "*clung tight.*"

725. **opaca locorum**: "*through the shady places*": see note v. 332.

726. **dudum**: "*but now.*"

727. **neque—Graia**: "*nor the Greeks massed in opposing ranks.*"—**ex** is used in a pregnant sense: the Greeks were not merely massed in opposing ranks, but were also hurling their darts *from* these ranks.

729. **suspensum**: "*hesitating.*"

731. **omnemque—viam** : "*and I thought that I had passed safely through all my journey.*"—**creber—sonitus** : "*the thick trampling of feet.*"

732. Note that the succession of dactyls well marks the agitation of the movement.

735. **hic—mentem** : "*here it was that some unfriendly power confused and bereft me of my senses in my panic.*"—**nescio quod** : literally, "*I know not what*" : a weak **aliquod.**—**male amicum** : see note on **male fida** : v. 23.

736. **namque viarum** : "*for while I speedily kept along the unfrequented places, and diverge from the familiar line of the road.*"—**avia** sc. **loca.**—**cursu** : see note v. 175, **pelago**—**regione** : "*direction,*" the original meaning from **rego,** "*I direct*" : cp. Livy, 21, 31 : **recta regione iter instituit.**

738. **heu—incertum** : "*alas! to my sorrow my wife Creüsa torn from me by fate either halted or strayed or sat down being weary, I cannot say.*" —**misero** : Ethical Dative. The indicatives **substitit—erravit—resedit** for the subjunctives **substiterit — erraverit — resederit** of indirect question may be explained by supposing that Vergil intended the question to be originally a direct one : "*did she stop, or did she wander away or did she sit down?*" The minor alternative is introduced by **seu.**

741. **nec—reflexi** : "*nor did I look back for my lost wife or turn my thoughts to her till I had come to the mound and holy abode of ancient Ceres.*"—**amissam** sc. **conjugem.**—**tumulum**=**ad tumulum.**—**antiquae** : cp. **desertae** v. 713.

742. **demum** : used only with (1) pronouns as **is, idem,** or (2) adverbs, **tum, ibi, sic, nunc, jam** : "*here at last,*" "*here and not before.*"

743. **una** : "*she was the only one missing.*"

744. **fefellit** : "*was missed by.*" Note that **fallo** is transitive.

745. Note the hypermetric line, the final **que** is elided before **aut** of the next line.

749. **cingor** : see note v. 227.

750. **stat** : "*my purpose is fixed*" : see note v. 660. Here **stat**=**stat mihi sententia** : cp. Aen. 12, 678 : **stat conferre manum Aeneae.**

751. **caput** : "*life.*"

752. **obscura limina** : "*the dark portals of the gate.*"

753. **qua—lustro** : "*by which I had taken my departure and tracing back our footsteps I follow them through the darkness and scan them with my eyes.*"

756. **si forte** : "*if haply—if haply—she had returned home.*" The repetition expresses the last ray of hope. With **si**, "*to see whether,*" cp. Greek εἰ.

758. **ilicet** : "*forthwith.*"

761. **porticibus—asylo** : Local abl. : H. L., 119, 5. Perhaps Vergil is thinking of the shrine of Juno in the capitol of Rome.

765. **auro solidi = auro solido** : "*of solid gold*" : abl. of Description: H. L., 293, 6.

770. **ingeminans** : "*repeating*" : the name Creüsa.

771. **tectis furenti** : "*rushing madly among the houses* :" **tectis** : see note v. 528.

773. **nota major** : like the gods, the dead no longer "*cribbed, cabined or confined*" were larger than mortals : so Romulus when he appeared after death according to Ovid Fasti, 2, 503 : **pulcher et humano major.**

774. Note the shortening (*systole*) in **stĕtĕrunt** : cp. **tulĕrunt** (Eclogues 4, 61) : **stĕtĕrunt** (Aen. 3, 48 : 10, 338) : **constĭtĕrunt** (Aen. 3, 681).

775. **adfari—demere** : Historical infin.

778. **asportare** : "*to take away*" **(abs-portare).**

779. **fas** : as well as **regnator** is subject of **sinit.**

781. **terram = ad terram—Hesperiam** : Italy was called **Hesperia** (Greek, ἑσπερία, "the western land" : cp. ἕσπερος, **Vesper,** "*evening*" : root VAS, "*to dwell,*" the dwelling place of the sun) : Spain, **ultima Hesperia.—Lydius** : the Etruscans were said to come from Lydia (Herod. 1, 94), and the Tiber flowing by Etruria is called **Tuscus Tiberis** (Georg. 1, 499).

782. **opima virum** : "*rich in men*" : others take **virum** with **arva** : "*the rich lands tilled by the husbandmen*" : cp. Homeric, ἔργα ἀνδρῶν.

783. Note the alliteration—**res—regnum—regia** : "*riches, realm and a royal bride.*"

784. **parta tibi,** sc. **est** : "*is already won for thee*" : though not yet possessed. Prophecy describes the future as present.—**Creüsae** : Objective Gen. : "*for thy loved Creüsa.*"

785. **non ego**: note the emphatic position: so also Hector had this fear for Andromache: Il. 6, 454, *ὅτε κέν τις Ἀχαιῶν χαλκοχιτώνων Δακρυοέσσαν ἄγηται.*

786. **servitum ibo**: "*shall go to be a slave.*" Explain this construction of the supine in **-um**: H. L., 180, 2.

787. **Dardanis**: "*I, a descendant of Dardanus.*"

788. **deum genetrix**: "*mother of the gods*": Cybele, a Phrygian goddess, specially worshipped on Mt. Ida, and also a patroness of Troy.

790. **lacrimantem** sc. **me.**

792. **ter—somno**: These lines are translated from Od. 11, 204, where Ulysses says of the shade of his mother:—

> *τρὶς μὲν ἐφωρμήθην, ἑλέειν τέ με θυμὸς ἀνωγει,*
> *τρὶς δέ μοι ἐκ χειρῶν σκιῇ εἴκελον ἢ καὶ ὀνείρῳ*
> *ἔπτατο.*

> Thrice sprang I towards her, and was minded to embrace her;
> Thrice she flitted from my hands as a shadow or even as a dream.

So also Wordsworth's *Laodamia*:—

> Forth sprang the impassioned Queen her Lord to clasp;
> Again that consummation she essayed:
> But unsubstantial Form eludes her grasp
> As often as that eager grasp was made.

794. **somno**: a vision seen in sleep, rather than sleep itself.

798. **exsilio**: "*for exile*"; dative of Purpose: H. L., 286, 8.

799. **animis—parati**: sc. **ire** or **sequi**: "*ready with heart and wealth to go.*"

800. **pelago deducere**: "*to lead them over the sea.*"—**deducere** is the regular word used of a colonizing expedition.

801. **Lucifer** = *φώσφορος*: "*the Light bringer.*" The story goes that the star of Venus guided Aeneas to Italy.

803. **spes opis**: either "*hope of giving aid,*" or "*hope of receiving it.*"

804. **cessi**: used in two senses: metaphorical, "*I yielded*" to fate, and literal, "*I left*" the scene.

SIGHT TRANSLATION

Introduction

BOOK I

Before resigning his consulship at the end of 59 B.C., Caesar was invested with proconsular power for five years over the two Gauls and over Illyricum. The Gauls were always a turbulent people, torn by factions and dissensions, and were also a constant menace to the Romans of the Province (Provincia) which occupied the southern part of the Rhone valley. The dangers, however, which threatened the Romans at this time did not come so much from the Gauls, as from two other quarters, namely, from the Helvetii, a tribe which occupied what is now Switzerland, and from the German chief Ariovistus.

The events in *B.* I naturally fall into two divisions:

(1) The campaign against the Helvetii: chap. 1-30;

(2) The campaign against Ariovistus: chap. 31 to end.

The Helvetii were old foes of the Romans. In 107 B.C. they had joined forces with the Cimbri and had defeated the Romans. The latter were fully aware that this might happen a second time. As early as 61 B.C. news reached Rome of the intended migration of the Helvetii, but their departure was delayed by the death of their leader, Orgetorix. At last in 58 B.C. they made full preparations for setting out from their homes and moving into southwestern Gaul. They gathered provisions, burned their villages, and with their whole population were on their way to the rich plains of Aquitania. Of the two routes which they might take, the more difficult lay through the territories of the Sequani; the other, easier and more direct, was through the Roman Provincia. The Helvetii decided to go by the latter route, and by the end of March were already starting on their journey. Within a week Caesar was at Genâva (*Geneva*), levied an army in the *Provincia* and broke down the bridge over the Rhine. He thus hemmed in the Helvetii between Mt. Jura and the Lake of Geneva. Checked by works that Caesar constructed, they turned into the territory of the Sequani, who allowed them to pass; and they then attempted to enter the territory of the Haedui. The Haedui had been

friendly to the Romans, and Caesar, deciding to defend his allies, cut to pieces one canton of the Helvetii. Caesar was, however, hampered by lack of provisions. The Haedui had promised grain but it had not yet arrived, and they were constantly putting off Caesar by fair promises which naturally aroused his suspicions. He soon found out that politics were at the bottom of this delay. The Haeduan state was torn by rival parties, one led by Dumnorix, and the other by his brother Divitiacus, a high official. Caesar, for the present, reprimanded Dumnorix, and provisions were obtained. Finally Caesar overtook the Helvetii and signally defeated them at Bibracte (*Autun*).

After the defeat of the Helvetii, the Haedui invited Caesar to assist them in driving out the Germans under Ariovistus. Two factions stirred up Gaul, one led by the Haedui, friendly to Rome, the other headed by the Arverni and Sequani, opposed to Rome. The two latter tribes had invited Ariovistus, a German chief, to assist them in the conquest of Gaul. After fruitless negotiations between Caesar and Ariovistus, the two armies met near *Basle*, and Ariovistus was defeated.

Gaul and its divisions (*B.* I, 1).

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quarum unam incolunt[1] Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnes linguā, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona[2] et Sequana[3] dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu[4] atque humanitate[5] provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe[6] commeant[7] atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos[8] pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecēdunt, quod fere cotidianis[9] proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos[10] prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

---

[1]inhabit. [2]the Marne. [3]the Seine. [4]mode of life. [5]civilization. [6]**minimē saepe** = very seldom. [7]go, resort. [8]to weaken their courage. [9]daily. [10]the Germans.

II

Orgetorix, chief of the Helvetii, persuades his countrymen to leave their homes (*B.* I, 2).

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, Marco Messalā et Marco Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem[1] nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit ut de suis finibus cum omnibus copiis exirent: (dixit) perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helvetii continentur[2]: unā ex[3] parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetiorum a Germanis dividit: alterā ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertiā, lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit.

---

[1]league, in which the members swear fidelity to each other (**con**, together, and **jūrō**, swear). [2]are confined by the character of their country. [3]on.

III

Caesar overtakes a part of the Helvetii and defeats them (*B.* I, 12).

Flumen est Arar[1], quod per fines Haeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate ita ut oculos in utram partem[2] fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de[3] tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes[4] aggressus magnam eorum partem concidit[5]: reliqui fugae sese mandaverunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

---

[1] the Saône. [2] direction. [3] in the course of. [4] off their guard. [5] **concīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum,** cut to pieces.

IV

Caesar meets with a reverse and follows the Helvetii cautiously (*B.* I, 15).

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor millium, quem ex omni provincia et Haeduis atque eorum sociis coactum[1] habebat, praemittit qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius[2] novissimum agmen[3] insecuti alieno[4] loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati[5] Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentiā[6] hostem rapinis,[7] pabulationibus[8] populationibusque[9] prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt uti[10] inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum[11] non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.[12]

---

[1]**cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactum,** collect. [2]too eagerly. [3]the rear. [4]unfavorable. [5]elated: perf. part. pass. of **tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.** [6]held it sufficient for the time being. [7]plundering. [8]foraging. [9]raiding. [10]**uti = ut.** [11]**primum** sc. **agmen,** the van. [12]**intersum, -esse, -fuī,** be between.

V

Caesar advances against the enemy (*B.* I, 21).

Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse[1] millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura[2] montis et qualis ascensus[3], qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De[4] tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus,[5] qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum[6] montis ascendere jubet;

quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur[7] et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

---

[1]**consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum,** encamp. [2]character. [3]ascent. [4]after. [5]guides. [6]ridge. [7]was considered.

VI

Caesar prepares for battle with the Helvetii (*B.* I, 24).

Postquam id animadvertit[1], suas copias Caesar in proximum collem subducit[2], equitatumque qui sustineret[3] hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum[4], ita uti[5] supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat[6], et omnia auxilia collocaret[7], ac totum montem hominibus compleret[8]; interim sarcinas[9] in unum locum conferri et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant[10] muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris[11] secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissimā[12] acie, rejecto[13] nostro equitatu et phalange[14] facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt[15].

---

[1]**animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** notice. [2]lead up. [3]**sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** check. [4]**veterānus, -a, -um,** veteran. [5]so that (uti = ut) join with **collocāret.** [6]**con-scrībō,** enrol. [7]place. [8]**com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum,** fill. [9]**sarcina, -ae,** baggage carried by individual soldiers = packs; **impedīmenta,** baggage of legion not carried by the soldiers. [10]**con-sistō, -sistěre, -stitī,** no sup., take up position. [11]**carrus, ī-,** cart. [12]**confertus, -a, -um,** dense, closely crowded. [13]**re-jiciō, -jicěre, -jēcī, -jectum,** drive back, repel. [14]**phalanx, phalangis,** F., solid mass in close order. [15]**succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,** advance.

BOOK II

Belgic Campaign, 57 B.C.

The campaign of 57 B.C. is marked by the signal defeat of the tribes of the Belgic confederacy. The Belgae occupied northeastern Gaul, *i.e.*, the country between the Sequana *(Seine)* and the Rhenus *(Rhine)*, roughly speaking, part of France bordering on Belgium, the whole of Belgium, and part of Holland west of the Rhine. In the time of Caesar that part of Europe was covered by extensive swamps and impenetrable forests. It was, however, peopled by a race fond of freedom and, therefore, difficult to conquer. The tribes inhabiting this district were rather of Germanic than of Celtic origin.

Caesar estimates the number of the fighting force of the enemy at about 250,000 men, while his own force opposed to them, numbering eight[1] legions, would hardly be more than one tenth that number.

In a hurried march from Cisalpine Gaul, Caesar set out against them. Only the Remi were friendly and these were attacked by the other tribes but were relieved by Caesar. Advancing to the Axona *(Aisne)* he left six cohorts to guard the bridge. He occupied successively Bibron, Noviodunum and Bratuspantium. After these towns were captured, he fought one of his severest battles against the Nervii, near the river Sabis, in which the defeat of the Roman army was prevented by the personal courage and coolness of the general. Finally the Aduatuci were reduced to submission.

---

[1] In the year 58 B.C. in his first campaign against the Helvetii and Ariovistus, Caesar had *six* legions*:* the 10th he formed in Gaul: the 11th and 12th he enrolled in the *Provincia:* three he obtained from Aquileia in northeastern Gallia Cisalpina, the 7th, the 8th, the 9th; in 57 B.C. he enrolled the 13th and the 14th in Cisalpine Gaul.

VII

Caesar marches against the Belgae (*B.* II, 2).

His nuntiis litterisque commotus[1] Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita[2] aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli[3] copia esse inciperet[4] ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium[5] Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti[6] ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de

his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manūs cogi[7], exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum[8] non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentariā comparatā castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

---

[1]**com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** influence. [2]**in-eō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum,** enter into: perf. part. pass.; translate: "*in the beginning of summer.*" [3]**pabulum, -ī,** fodder. [4]**in-cipiō, -cipěre, -cēpī, -ceptum,** begin. [5]task. [6]**uti**=**ut**. [7]**cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactum,** muster. [8]supply **sibi esse**: "*that he should delay.*"

VIII

Caesar marches to relieve the Remi (*B.* II, 7).

Eo[1] de[2] mediā nocte Caesar iisdem ducibus usus qui nuntii ab Iccio[3] venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios[4] et funditores[5] Baleares subsidio[6] oppidanis[7] mittit; quorum adventu et Remis studium propugnandi[8] accessit[9], et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi[10] oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper[11] apud oppidum morati[12] agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis[13] aedificiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab millibus passuum minus duobus[14] castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo[15] atque ignibus significabatur,[16] amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

---

[1]to that place, thither. [2]after. [3]a nobleman of the Remi. [4]**Crēs Crētis,** a **Cretan,** a native of **Crete.** [4]**sagittārius, -ī,** bowman. [5]**funditor, -ōris,** slinger. [6]**subsidium, -ī,** help. [7]**oppidān-us, -ī,** (pl.) townspeople (of Bibron). [8]eagerness for a defence. [9]**ac-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, cessum,** come to: trans. was inspired in the Remi. [10]gerundive: **potior, potīrī, potitus sum,** gain. [11]for a short time. [12]**moror, -ārī, -ātus,** delay. [13]**vīcus, -ī,** village. [14]less than two miles off. [15]**fūmus, -ī,** smoke. [16]**significō,** show.

IX

Caesar marches against the Nervii, a tribe in the north-east of Gallia Transalpina (*B.* II, 16).

"That day he overcame the Nervii."—*Shakespeare.*

Cum per eorum fines triduum[1] iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim[2] flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse; trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare unā cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur)[3]; exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere; mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum[4] locum conjecisse[5], quo[6] propter paludes[7] exercitui aditus non esset.

---

[1]three days. [2]**Sabis, -is,** a river in north-eastern Gaul, now the *Sambre.* [3]**ex-perior, -perīrī, -pertus,** try. [4]a. [5]station; supply **eōs** as subject. [6]whither = to which. [7]**palūs, -ūdis,** marsh.

X

Caesar's soldiers equal to an emergency (*B.* II, 20).

NOTE:—Carefully read the uses of the gerundive, H. L., p. 187.

Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda; vexillum[1] proponendum[2] (quod erat insigne[3] cum ad arma concurri[4] oporteret), signum tubā[5] dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, ii qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causā[6] processerant arcessendi,[7] acies instruenda, milites cohortandi.[8] Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et incursus[9] hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio,[10]—scientia[11] atque usus[12] militum, quod superioribus proeliis

exercitati, quid fieri oporteret ipsi sibi praescribere[13] poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat[14].

---

[1]banner. [2]**pro-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** hang out: supply **fuit.** [3]**insigne, -is,** N. signal. [4]**con-currō, -currere, currī, -cursum,** rush. [5]trumpet. [6]for the purpose of seeking material for the mound. [7]**arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum,** summon. [8]**co-hortor, -hortārī, -hortātus,** address. [9]onset. [10]**subsidium, -ī,** help. [11]skill. [12]experience. [13]**praescribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum,** give directions. [14]**vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum,** forbid.

XI

A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome in honor of Caesar (*B.* II, 35).

His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pacatā,[1] tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio[2] perlata[3] est uti[4] ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolerent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, initā proximā aestate[5] ad se reverti[6] jussit. Ipse, in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis[7], in Italiam profectus est. Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio[8] decreta[9] est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

---

[1]**pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** pacify. [2]impression. [3]**per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** spread. [4]**uti = ut.** [5]See VII. [6]**revertor, revertī,** dep. in present tenses, perf. **revertī, reversum,** return. [7]**dē-dūcō, -dūcere, duxī, -ductum,** withdraw. [8]thanksgiving. [9]**dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum,** decree.

BOOK III (56 B.C.).

The third campaign in Gaul (56 B.C.) naturally falls into three divisions: (1) the campaign against the Alpine tribes (chapters 1–6); (2) the Venetic War (chapters 7–19); (3) the campaign against the Aquitani (chapters 20–29).

The valleys of the Alps leading to Italy were inhabited by predatory tribes who gained a scanty living by working the mines, and exacting

tolls from people passing through their lands. From the days of Hannibal to those of Caesar these wild mountaineers had been a constant menace to the Roman armies who had occasion to pass from Italy to Gaul. Already two legions under Quintus Pedius (*B.* II, 2), had been attacked. The present expedition was undertaken to strike terror into the hearts of the barbarians in order to prevent the recurrence of a similar attack.

The Veneti were a people of Brittany, in north-western France. They were a nation of hardy mariners. They were fond of freedom and adventure. Their country was rugged, rocky and precipitous, with bold headlands on which their towns were perched. To subdue them, Caesar caused a fleet to be built at the mouth of the Loire. They were finally defeated in a naval battle fought in the Bay of Quiberon.

The campaign against the Aquitani seems to have been fought simply to complete the conquest of Gaul, for they had been, so far, a peaceable people.

XII

A new route to Italy (*B.* III, 1).

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitatus in Veragros misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis[1] mercatores ire consueverant, patefieri[2] volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse[3] arbitraretur, uti[4] in eis locis legionem hiemandi causā collocaret. Galba, secundis[5] aliquot proeliis factis castellisque[6] compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas ibi collocare et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum[7], qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adjectā[8] planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur.

---

[1]**portōrium, -ī,** N. (generally in plural) toll. [2]pass. of **pate-faciō,** open. [3]to be necessary. [4]**uti**=**ut.** [5]**secund-us, -a, -um,** successful. [6]**castellum, -ī,** N., fortress. [7]**Veragrī, -ōrum,** M. pl. Veragri, an Alpine tribe. [8]**adjectus, -a, -um.** (perf. part. of **adjiciō**) used as an adj., adjacent.

XIII

The Romans saved by a sortie (*B.* III, 5).

Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter[1] pugnaretur, ac non solum vires[2] sed etiam tela nostros deficerent[3], atque hostes acrius instarent[4], languidioribusque[5] nostris vallum[6] scindere[7] et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum[8], Publius Sextus Baculus, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Caius Volusenus, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione[9] factā extremum auxilium[10] experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter militibus imperat ut paulisper intermitterent[11] proelium, ac tantummodo[12] tela missa exciperent[13] seque ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

---

[1]without interruption. [2]pl. of **vis**, strength. [3]**dēficiō**, 3, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, fail. [4]**instō**, 1, **-stitī**, **-stātum**, press on. [5]as our men grew feebler. [6]palisade, rampart. [7]**scindō**, **-ere**, **scidī**, **scissum**, tear down. [8]and when the battle had been brought to a final crisis. [9]**ēruptiō**, **-ōnis**, sally. [10]last resource. [11]discontinue. [12]merely. [13]*i. e.*, on their shields.

XIV

Caesar's motives for making war (*B.* III, 10).

Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi quas supra diximus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant[1]: injuriae retentorum equitum[2] Romanorum, rebellio[3] facta post deditionem, defectio[4] datis obsidibus, tot civitatum conjuratio, in primis ne[5], hac parte[6] neglectā, reliquae nationes ĭdem sibi licēre[7] arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere[8] et ad bellum celeriter excitari,

omnes autem homines naturā libertati studere[8] et condicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates conspirarent[9], partiendum[10] sibi ac latius distribuendum[11] exercitum putavit.

---

[1]urged. [2]wrongs done by detaining the cavalry. [3]renewal of hostilities. [4]revolt. [5]supply **timor.** [6]district. [7]**licet, licēre, licuit** (impersonal), it is allowed, "*the same course was lawful for them.*" [8]to be eager for. [9]formed a league. [10]**partior, -īrī, -ītus sum,** divide. [11]**distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum,** distribute.

XV

The naval battle against the Veneti (*B.* III, 14).

Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra[1] tantum laborem sumi[2], hostium fugam captis oppidis non reprimi[3], statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ducentae et viginti naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae[4], profectae ex portu, nostris adversae constiterunt[5]; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, constabat[6] quam rationem pugnae insisterent[7]. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris—falces praeacutae[8]. His cum funes[9] qui antennas[10] ad malos[11] destinabant[12] comprehensi adductique[13] erant, navigio[14] remis incitato, praerumpebantur[15]. Quibus abscissis[16], antennae necessario concidebant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque[17] consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus[18] navium uno tempore eriperetur.

---

[1]in vain. [2]**sūmo, -ěre, sumpsī, sumptum,** expend. [3]**re-primō, -primere -pressī, -pressum,** check. [4]fully equipped. [5]**con-sistō, -sistere, -stitī,** take position. [6]and it was not very clear to Brutus. [7]**in-sistō, -sistěre, -stitī,** adopt. [8]**falx, falcis,** hook, translate: hooks sharpened to a point. [9]ropes. [10]yardarms. [11]**mālus, -ī,** F. mast. [12]made fast. [13]draw tight. [14]ship. [15]break off. [16]**abscīdo, -ěre, abscīdī, abscīsum,** tear away. [17]tackle. [18]control.

XVI

Disastrous defeat of the Gauls (*B.* III, 19).

Locus erat castrorum editus[1] et paulatim ab imo acclivis[2] circiter mille passus. Huc magno cursu hostes contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii[3] ad se colligendos[4] armandosque Romanis daretur exanimatique[5] pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hostatus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferebant onerà, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est[6] opportunitate loci, hostium inscientiā ac defetigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites nostri consectati[7] paucos reliquerunt. Civitates omnes se statim dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

---

[1]high. [2]sloping. [3]as little time as possible, subject of **daretur.** [4]**colligō, 3, -lēgī, -lectum,** form into a body. [5]out of breath. [6]the result was. [7]**consector, 1,** follow.

BOOK IV (55 B.C.).

The fourth campaign, 55 B.C., naturally falls into two divisions: (1) the campaign against the Germans: (chapters 1-19): and (2) the first expedition against Britain.

The tribes on the Gallic frontier, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been hard pressed by their more powerful neighbors the Suevi, and had crossed the Rhine into northern Gaul. Caesar comes forward, as he had done in the war against Ariovistus, as the defender of the Gauls. He drove back the invaders, builds a bridge, which was a marvel of engineering skill, in the incredible short space of ten days, crosses over into Germany, recrosses the Rhine and breaks down the bridge.

XVII

Customs of the Suevi (*B.* IV, 1).

Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos[1] habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia[2] armatorum bellandi causā ex finibus ducunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt[3]. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus[4] belli intermittitur[5]. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco colendi[6] causā licet. Neque multum frumento sed maximam partem lacte et pecore vivunt multumque sunt in venationibus[7]; quae res et cibi genere et cotidianā exercitatione et libertate vitae et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit.

---

[1] district, canton. [2] each a thousand. [3] alō, -ĕre, aluī, altum, maintain. [4] ratiō, theory; usus, practice. [5] is interrupted. [6] of tilling the soil. [7] they are much given to hunting.

XVIII

The Ubii, tributaries of the Suevi (*B.* IV, 3).

Publice[1] maximam putant esse laudem quam latissime a[2] suis finibus vacare agros; hac re significari magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque unā ex parte a Suevis[3] circiter millia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt[4] Ubii quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens ut est captus[5] Germanorum: ei paulo sunt, quam ejusdem generis sunt ceteri, humaniores propterea quod Rhenum attingunt multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus adsuefacti.[6] Hos cum Suevi multis saepe bellis

experti[7] propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales[8] sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.[9]

---

[1]as a nation. [2]on the side of. [3]from the country of the Suevi in one direction. [4]come next. [5]according to German ideas; **captus, -ūs,** literally, "what may be grasped." [6]conformed. [7]tried. [8]tributary. [9]**redigō -ĕre redēgī, redactum,** render.

XIX

Fickle character of the Gauls (*B.* IV, 5).

His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem[1] Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles[2] et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum[3] existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis[4] uti[5] et viatores[6] etiam invitos[7] consistere cogant, et[8] quid quisque eorum de quāque re audierit aut cognoverit quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat[9], quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint pronuntiare[10] cogat. His rumoribus atque auditionibus[11] permoti, de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt.

---

[1]fickleness. [2]easily influenced. [3]no trust should be placed in them. [4]this is a characteristic of the Gallic custom. [5]**uti = ut,** introducing a number of result clauses in apposition with **hoc.** [6]travellers. [7]against their will. [8]Join to **quaerant.** [9]**circum-sistō, -sistĕre, -stitī,** surround. [10]tell. [11]hearsays.

XX

The course of the Rhine described (*B.* IV, 10).

Mosa[1] profluit[2] ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte[3] quādam ex Rheno receptā quae appellatur Vacalus[4], insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius inde millibus passuum octoginta in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt et longo spatio per fines multarum gentium[5] citatus[6] fertur; et ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes[7] multis ingentibusque

insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur—ex quibus sunt qui piscibus[8] atque ovis[9] avium[10] vivere existimantur,—multisque capitibus[11] in Oceanum influit.

[1]Meuse. [2]flows. [3]tributary. [4]Waal. [5]tribes. [6]quickly. [7]branches. [8]**piscis, -is,** fish. [9]**ovum, -ī,** egg. [10]**avis, -is,** bird. [11]mouths.

XXI

Gallant conduct of two brothers (*B.* IV, 12).

In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta: in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus[1], amplissimo[2] genere natus, cujus avus[3] in civitate suā regnum obtinuerat[4] amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso[5] ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit[6], ipse equo vulnerato dejectus[7], quoad[8] potuit fortissime restitit[9]; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset[10], atque id frater, qui jam proelio excesserat[11], procul animadvertisset[12], incitato[13] equo se hostibus obtulit[14] atque interfectus est.

[1]An Aquitanian, belonging to Aquitania, a division of Gaul. [2]most illustrious. [3]grandfather. [4]had held sovereign power. [5]**inter-clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** cut off. [6]**ē-ripiō, -ripĕre, -ripuī, -reptum,** rescue. [7]thrown. [8]**quoad,** as long as. [9]**re-sistō, -sistĕre, -stitī,** resist. [10]from **cadō,** fall. [11]had withdrawn. [12]governed by **cum**; had noticed. [13]spurring on his horse. [14]he rushed against; literally, he threw himself upon.

BOOK V (54 B.C.).

The fifth campaign naturally falls into two parts: (1) the second expedition against Britain, and (2) the uprising in Gaul. We shall deal with the second part.

The uprising in Gaul had been fostered by (1) the absence of Caesar in Britain; (2) the distribution of the winter camps.

Caesar arrived in Gaul from Britain at the end of September. The summer had been unusually dry, the crops failed and he was compelled to separate his seven and a half legions[1] so far apart that it appeared to

[1] The fourteenth was divided, one half being drafted into other legions.

the Gauls possible to attack them individually before the one could lend aid to the other. The disturbance began with the murder of Tasgetius, a chief of the Carnutes who was friendly to Caesar. Then followed the attack upon the camp of Sabinus and Cotta stationed at Aduatuca, by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones. In the council of war divided councils prevailed. Cotta was for holding out till aid should come from Caesar. Sabinus was for starting out to try and reach the camp of Cicero. They were surrounded and cut to pieces, only a few escaping to carry the word to Labienus. Ambiorix by his success was able to rouse the Aduatuci, the Nervii and other tribes to attack the headquarters of Cicero. At length, after gallantly defending himself till his resources were almost exhausted, he was relieved by Caesar. By the prompt action of Caesar danger was openly averted; still the Treviri were secretly urging the Germans to aid them against the Romans. Caesar was compelled to spend the winter of 54-53 B.C. in Transalpine Gaul. He enrolled another legion, the fifteenth, in Gallia Cisalpina.

XXII

The murder of Tasgetius (*B.* V. 25).

Erant in Carnutibus summo loco natus[1] Tasgetius, cujus majores in suā civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic[2] Caesar pro[3] ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari ejus opera[4] fuerat usus, majorum locum restituerat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimici multis palam[5] ex[6] civitate auctoribus[7] interfecerunt. Defertur[8] ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat[9], ne civitas eorum deficeret[10], Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet ibique hiemare, quorumque operā cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, eos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quibus legiones tradiderat[11] certior factus est, in hiberna perventum[12] locumque hibernis esse munitum.

---

[1]Compare **amplissimō genere nātus,** xvii. [2]indirect object of **restituerat.** [3]for. [4]assistance. [5]openly. [6]in. [7]**auctor, -ōris,** abettor. [8]**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** is reported. [9]**per-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** concern. [10]**dēficiō,** revolt. [11]**trādō,** hand over. [12]Supply **esse cōpiīs,** that the troops had reached the winter quarters.

XXIII

Cotta opposes leaving the camp (*B.* V, 28).

Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt[1] magnaque inter eos exsistit[2] controversia[3]. Lucius Cotta compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum[4] centuriones nihil temere[5] agendum, neque ex hibernis injussu[6] Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis[7] copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant; rem esse testimonio[8] quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō[9] vulneribus illatis[10] fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria[11] se non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctore hoste[12] de summis rebus capere consilium?

---

[1]lay before. [2]**ex-sistō, -sistĕre, -stitī**, arise. [3]dispute. [4]**ordō, -inis**, M., rank. [5]rashly. [6]without orders. [7]no matter how great. [8]what had happened (**rem**) was a proof of this. [9]even. [10]inflicted. [11]by a scarcity of corn. [12]on the suggestion of an enemy.

XXIV

The Romans decide to leave their camp (*B.* V, 31).

Consurgitur[1] ex consilio; orant milites ne dissentione[2] et pertinacia[3] rem in summum periculum deducant[4]; facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant; contra in dissentione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus[5]; superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur[6] se primā luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento[7] hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Primā luce ex castris proficiscuntur.

---

[1]they rise: impersonal use of passive. [2]by disagreement. [3]obstinacy. [4]cause a most perilous situation. [5]**dare manūs**, yield. [6]word is given out. [7]equipment.

XXV

The massacre (*B.* V, 37).

Sabinus quos[1] in praesentia[2] tribunos militum circum se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi jubet; et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit, suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim dum de condicionibus[3] inter se agunt longiorque ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum[4] tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt unde erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre[5] ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes, desperata salute, se ipsi interficiunt.

---

[1]quos....tribunos militum=eos tribunos militum quos. [2]at that time. [3]terms, *i.e.* of surrender. [4]yell. [5]with difficulty.

XXVI

The rival centurions (*B.* V, 44).

Erant in eā legione fortissimi viri centuriones qui primis ordinibus[1] appropinquarent Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias[2] habebant uter anteferretur[3] omnibusque annis[4] de locis[5] summis simultatibus[6] contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, Quid dubitas, inquit, Vorene? Aut quem locum[7] tuae probandae virtutis exspectas? Hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit. Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, in eam irrumpit[8]. Ne Vorenus quidem se vallo continet sed omnium veritus

existimationem[9] subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto, Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem trajicit; quo percusso[10] et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi conjiciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem[11].

---

[1]rank. [2]disputes. [3]should have the preference. [4]all their life. [5]position. [6]rivalry. [7]opportunity. [8]**irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** rush. [9]opinion. [10]**percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum,** strike. [11]opportunity.

XXVII

The rival centurions (*continued*).

Transfigitur[1] scutum Pulioni et verutum[2] in balteo[3] defigitur[4]. Avertit[5] hic casus[6] vaginam[7] et gladium educere conanti[8] dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt[9]. Succurrit[10] inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim[11] a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit[12]; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio comminus[13] rem gerit[14] Vorenus et uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dejectus inferiorem, concidit[15]. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulio atque ambo incolumes, compluribus interfectis, summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit[16] ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque dijudicari[17] posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

---

[1]**transfīgō, -fīgere, -fixī, -fixum,** pierce. [2]dart. [3]**balteus,** sword belt. [4]**dēfīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum,** fasten. [5]**avertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** turn aside. [6]accident. [7]scabbard. [8]literally, "*to him attempting to draw his sword,*" "*as he was attempting to draw his sword.*" [9]**circumsistō, -ere, -stitī,** no sup., surround. [10]**succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum,** runs to his aid (dat.). [11]immediately. [12]**convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum,** turn. [13]hand to hand. [14]carries on the fight. [15]stumbling into a hollow place, he falls. [16]changed the positions of both. [17]to be decided.

XXVIII

News conveyed to Caesar's camp by a Gallic slave (*B.* V, 45).

Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio,[1] et maxime quod, magnā parte militum confectā vulneribus[2], res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat,[3] tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu[4] necabatur. Erat unus intus[5] Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a primā obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat[6]. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat[7]. Has ille in jaculo illigatas[8] effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ullā suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

[1] the fiercer and more desperate the siege became from day to day. [2] worn out with wounds. [3] the fighting (**rēs**) now devolved on few defenders. [4] **cruciātus, -ūs,** M. torture. [5] inside the camp. [6] **praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum,** show. [7] **dēferō,** carry. [8] **illigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** tie to.

XXIX

Prompt measures of relief (*B.* V, 46).

Caesar acceptis litteris horā circiter undecimā diei statim nuntium ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cujus hiberna aberant ab eo millia passuum viginti quinque; jubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Caium Fabium legatum mittit ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, quā sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno[1] si reipublicae commodo facere posset cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit[2].

[1] supply **ut**; join with **veniat**; **scrībit** has an analogous construction to **imperat.** [2] **colligō, -ere, -lēgī, lectum,** muster.

XXX

An "armed council" of the Gauls is summoned (*B.* V, 56).

Indutiomarus, ubi intellexit Nervios bellum Romanis parare neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore[1] armatum concilium indicit[2]. Hoc more[3] Gallorum est initium belli, quo[4] lege communi omnes puberes[5] armati convenire consueverunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem judicat bonaque ejus publicat[6]. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat[7] arcessitum[8] se compluribus Galliae civitatibus; se iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum[9]; ac priusquam id faciat[10] castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit[11] praecipit[12].

---

[1] = **dēfutūrās esse**, fut. infin. of **dēsum, -esse, dēfuī**, fail (with dative). [2] proclaims. [3] **mōs, mōris**, M., custom. [4] adv. to which. [5] **pūbēs, pūberis**, M., adult. [6] confiscate. [7] declares. [8] **arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum**, invite. [9] **populor, -ārī, populātus sum**, devastate. [10] Subord. clause in O.O.; H. L., 265, 2 (*b*). [11] Indirect Question; H. L., 200, 4. [12] **praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, inform.

XXXI

Death of Indutiomārus (*B.* V, 58).

Interim Indutiomārus ad castra Romana accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit[1]; equites Gallorum tela conjiciunt et magnā cum contumeliā[2] nostros ad pugnam evocant[3]. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, sub vesperum[4] dispersi ac dissipati[5] discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis[6] omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit ut, territis hostibus atque in fugam conjectis, unum omnes peterent[7] Indutiomarum.

---

[1] **consūmō, -ere, consumpsī, consumptum**, spend. [2] insulting language. [3] challenge. [4] towards evening; note use of **sub** in expression of time; **sub noctem**, towards night, just before nightfall; **sub prīmam lūcem**, just before daybreak. [5] in scattered and straggling bands. [6] abl. of Route by Which: H. L., 294, 3. [7] attack, make for.

XXXII

Death of Indutiomārus (*continued*, *B.* V, 58).

Interdicit Caesar ne quis[1] quem[2] prius vulneret quam Indutiomarum interfectum viderit, quod spatium nactum[3] illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis qui occiderint praemia; submittit[4] cohortes equitibus subsidio. Probat consilium hominis fortună; et, cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque ejus refertur in castra; redeuntes equites quos possunt consectantur[5] atque occidunt. Hāc re cognitā, omnes quae convenerant copiae discedunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

---

[1]that no one; H. L., 233, 5. [2]anyone. [3]**nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum,** obtain. [4]sends. [5]**consector, -ārī, -ātus sum,** overtake.

BOOK VI (53 B.C.).

Early in the spring of 53 B.C. Caesar suddenly appears in the territory of the Nervii and the Menapii, whom he subdues. Meanwhile Labienus, his trusty lieutenant, defeated the Treviri, and placed Cingetorix, who had always been loyal to the Romans, in supreme power. After uniting his own forces with those of Labienus, Caesar led his army across the Rhine by a new bridge built near the modern city of *Berne.* The Suevi had mustered to oppose his advance, but subsequently withdrew to the end of their territories without coming to an engagement. Caesar takes occasion to describe the habits and customs of the Galli, their religion, and priests. He then describes the Germans, the Hercynian Wood, and the wild animals found in it. He returns to Gaul, cuts down part of the bridge, and scatters the forces of Ambiorix, chief of the Eburones. In the late summer, the Sigambri, a German tribe, cross the Rhine and attack Aduatuca (*Tongres*), where Cicero was stationed. Cicero nearly met with a severe defeat. After ravaging the country of the Eburones, Caesar holds an assembly of the Gauls at Durocortorum (*Rheims*), at which the rebellious chiefs were condemned. Acco, the leader of the rebellion among the Carnutes and Sennones, is put tc death; the other condemned chieftains fled. Caesar then felt safe to go to Italy.

XXXIII

The Treviri stir up war (*B.* VI, 2).

Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos[1] a Treviris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt[2]. Cum ab proximis impetrare[3] non possent, ulteriores temptant.[4] Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant[5]; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere[6] adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, adjunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum finitimis civitatibus consilia communicare,[7] a Treviris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius[8] sibi de bello cogitandum[9] putavit.

---

[1]near relatives. [2]**dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum,** cease from. [3]to obtain their wish. [4]try those farther off. [5]they bind themselves mutually by an oath. [6]by alliance and treaty. [7]were forming common plans. [8]earlier than usual. [9]Gerundival Infinitive ; H. L., 189.

XXXIV

Caesar quells the Nervii and summons a council at Paris (*B.* VI, 3).

Itaque, nondum hieme confectā[1], proximis quattuor coactis legionibus, de improviso[2] in fines Nerviorum contendit, et priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque eā praedā militibus concessā vastatisque agris, in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, ut instituerat[3], indicto[4], cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes, Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis[5] hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur[6], concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum[7] transfert. Confines[8] erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoriā conjunxerant; sed ab hoc consilio

afuisse[9] existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu[10] pronuntiatā, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

---

[1] before winter was quite over. [2] unexpectedly. [3] arranged. [4] havin been proclaimed. [5] revolt. [6] that he might make it appear that he was postponing the whole matter. [7] to Lutetia of the Parisii = to Paris The council before met at Samarobriva (*Amiens*). [8] neighbors. [9] to b averse. [10] **suggestus, -ūs**, tribunal, or platform.

XXXV

Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time

(*B.* VI, 9).

Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros vēnit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum una erat quod Germani auxilia contra se[1] Treviris miserant; altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet[2]. His constitutis rebus, paulo supra[3] eum locum quo ante exercitum traduxerat facere pontem instituit. Magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oriretur[4], reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui[5] causā ad eum legatos mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam[6]: petunt atque orant[7] ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant[8]; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur.

---

[1] **se = ipsum**, *i.e.*, Caesar. [2] that Ambiorix might not find refuge with them. [3] the former bridge was built near *Bonn*, 55 B.C. (*B.* IV, 17); the present one was built farther up the stream, near *Andernach.* [4] **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, arise; "*to prevent any sudden rising taking place among them.*" [5] of clearing themselves; H. L., 187, 8. [6] **laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum**, break; with **fidem**, to break their word. [7] they beg and pray, *i.e.*, they earnestly beg. [8] pay the penalty.

XXXVI

Factions among the Gauls (*B.* VI, 11).

Quoniam ad hunc locum[1] perventum est,[2] non alienum[3] esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et quo differant hae nationes inter sese proponere[4]. In Galliā non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis[5] partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones[6] sunt; earumque factionum principes sunt, quorum ad arbitrium summa omnium rerum redeat[7]. Ita ejus rei causā antiquitus[8] institutum esse videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret[9]; suos enim quisque[10] opprimi et circumveniri non patitur[11], neque, aliter[12] si faciat, ullam inter suos habeat auctoritatem.

---

[1]*place* (in my narrative). [2] = **pervēnī.** [3]amiss, out of place; literally, foreign (to my subject). [4]to lay before (my readers) = to explain. [5]cantons. [6]political parties. [7]the final decision of all matters is referred. [8]in former times. [9]that no one from the common people should be at a loss for aid against any one more powerful than himself. [10]*i.e.* each party leader. [11]refuses to allow. [12]otherwise.

XXXVII

Rival factions in Gaul (*B.* VI, 12).

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis[1] principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani. Hi[2], cum per se minus valerent,[3] quod summa auctoritas antiquitus[4] erat in Haeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae[5], Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant eosque ad se magnis jacturis[6] pollicitationibusque[7] perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Haeduorum interfecta, tantum potentiā antecesserant[8] ut magnam partem clientium[9] ab Haeduis ad se traducerent obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent et

publice jurare cogerent nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros[10], et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent[11], Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent.

---

[1]**factiō, -ōnis,** F. political party. [2]the latter. [3]were not sufficiently strong of themselves, **valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum,** be strong. [4]in ancient times. [5]**clientēla, -ae,** F., the relation of *patrōnus* and *cliens* : dependant. [6]**jactūra, -ae,** F., sacrifice. [7]**pollicitātiō, -ōnis,** F., promise. [8]they (Sequani) so far excelled in power (the Haedui). [9]**cliens, -tis,** M., dependant. [10]**consilium inīre,** to enter upon a plan, to undertake. [11]**possideō, -ēre, possēdī, possessum,** possess.

XXXVIII

Caesar supports the Aedui and Remi (*B.* VI, 12).

Necessitate adductus[1] Haeduus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causā Romam ad senatum profectus imperfectā re[2] redierat. Adventu Caesaris factā commutatione[3] rerum, obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum[4] amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti[5] videbant, eorum gratiā dignitateque amplificatā, Sequani principatum dimiserant.[6] In eorum locum Remi successerant[7]; quos quod adaequare[8] apud Caesarem gratiā intellegebatur, ii qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Haeduis conjungi poterant se Remis in clientelam dĭcabant[9]. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur; ita novam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

---

[1]forced by necessity. [2]without accomplishing his purpose. [3]**commūtātiō, -ōnis,** F, change. [4]*i e.*, the Haedui. [5]**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum,** enjoy. [6]had been compelled to give up. [7]**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,** succeed. [8]supply **Haeduos** after **adaequare,** that they had rivalled the Haedui in Caesar's favor. [9]placed themselves under the protection of the Remi ; **dĭcō,** I, assign.

XXXIX

Classes of people among the Gauls. The Druids (*B.* VI, 13).

In omni Galliā eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt numero[1] atque honore genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco[2], quae nihil audet per se, nulli adhibetur[3] consilio. Plerique cum aut aere alieno[4] aut magnitudine tributorum[5] aut injuriā potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant[6] nobilibus; quibus in hos eadem omnia sunt jura quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum[7], alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt[8], sacrificia publica ac privata procurant[9], religiones interpretantur[10]; ad eos magnus adolescentiae numerus disciplinae causā concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis[11] publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt[12].

---

[1]estimation. [2]the common people are regarded almost as slaves. [3]**adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum,** admit. [4]**aes aliēnum,** debt. [5]excessive taxes. [6]devote themselves. [7]**druidēs, -um,** M. pl. Druids. [8]have charge. [9]attend to. [10]expound everything connected with religion. [11]disputes. [12]determine.

XL

The Druids (*continued*).

Si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit[1], sacrificiis interdicunt[2]. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum[3], hi numero[4] impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur[5], his omnes decedunt[6]; aditum sermonemque defugiunt[7], ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant[8], neque his petentibus jus redditur neque honos ullus communicatur[9].

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest[10] unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit[11] dignitate, succedit[12], aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio[13] druidum; nonnunquam[14] etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt[15] in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique qui controversias[16] habent conveniunt eorumque decretis judiciisque parent. Disciplina[17] in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata[18] esse existimatur; et nunc qui diligentius eam rem[19] cognoscere volunt plerumque illo discendi causā proficiscuntur.

---

[1]abide by their decision (**dēcrētō** is abl.). [2]supply **eōs**: literally, they exclude these from the sacrifices. [3]those who are so excluded. [4] = **in numerō**. [5]are accounted. [6]supply **dē viā**, all make way for these. [7]they avoid meeting them and conversing with them. [8]lest they receive any harm from coming in contact with these: **incommodī** Part. Gen. after **quid**. [9]neither to their petition is justice rendered, nor is any public office shared with them. [10]is over (with dat. H. L., 229, 4). [11]**excello, -ere,** surpass. [12]**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,** succeed. [13]**suffragium, ī-,** N., vote. [14]sometimes. [15]**consīdō, -ere, sēdī, -sessum,** hold meeting. [16]disputes. [17]the system. [18]from **transferō,** bring over. [19] = **disciplīnam.**

XLI

The Druids (*continued, B.* VI, 14).

Druides a bello abesse consuerunt[1] neque tributa[2] unā[3] cum reliquis pendunt[4]; militiae vacationem[5] omniumque rerum habent immunitatem[6]. Tantis incitati praemiis et suā sponte[7] multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum[8] ediscere[9] dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos[10] in disciplinā permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare[11], cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris

utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri[12] velint neque eos qui discunt litteris confisos[13] minus memoriae studere[14],—quod fere plerisque accidit[15] ut praesidio[16] litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant[17]. In primis hoc volunt persuadere[18], non interire animas[19], sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus[20] atque eorum motu[21], de mundi[22] ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum naturā[23], de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et juventuti tradunt.

---

[1] = **consuēvērunt,** [2] **tribūtum, -ī,** N., tax. [3] together. [4] **pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum,** pay. [5] exemption. [6] freedom from public services. [7] of their own accord, [8] **versus, -ūs,** M., verse. [9] **ēdiscō, -ere,** learn by heart. [10] twenty each. [11] commit. [12] spread abroad. [13] **confīdō, -ere, confīsus sum,** trust. [14] pay too little heed to memory. [15] happens. [16] with the assistance of letters. [17] relax. [18] inculcate. [19] **anima, ae,** F. soul. [20] **sīdus, -eris,** N., star. [21] **mōtus, -ūs,** M., motion. [22] **mundus, -ī,** universe. [23] **rērum nātūra,** the nature of things, science.

XLII

Religion of the Gauls (*B.* VI, 16).

Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus[1]; atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis[2], quique in proeliis periculisque versantur[3], aut pro victimis homines immolant[4] aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque[5] ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur[6], non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur; publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani[7] magnitudine simulacra[8] habent, quorum contexta[9] viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent[10]; quibus succensis[11] circumventi[12] flammā exanimantur[13] homines. Supplicia[14] eorum qui in furto[15] aut in latrocinio[16]

aut aliquā noxiā[17] sint comprehensi gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ejus generis copia deficit[18], etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt[19].

---

[1] wholly given up to religious observances. [2] those who are distressed with incurable diseases. [3] are engaged. [4] sacrifice. [5] **administer, -trī,** M., assistant, attendant priest. [6] **reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,** give in compensation. [7] immense. [8] **simulācrum, -ī,** N., images of men, sc. **hominum.** [9] **contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textum,** weave. [10] **compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum,** fill. [11] **succendō, -ere, -cendī, -censum,** burn. [12] surrounded. [13] perish. [14] punishment. [15] **furtum, -ī,** N., theft. [16] **latrocinium, -ī,** N., robbery. [17] guilty act. [18] fails. [19] they resort to.

XLIII

The Gods of the Gauls (*B.* VI, 17).

Deum maxime Mercurium colunt; hujus sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem[1] artium[2] ferunt[3]; hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem; hunc ad quaestus[4] pecuniae mercaturasque[5] habere vim maximam arbitrantur; post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Jovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere quam reliquae gentes habent opinionem[6]; Apollinem morbos depellere[7], Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere[8], Jovem imperium caelestium[9] tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare[10] constituerunt, ea quae bello ceperint plerumque[11] devovent[12]; cum superaverunt animalia capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos[13] tumulos locis consecratis conspicari[14] licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglectā quispiam religione aut captă apud se occultare aut positā tollere auderet gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu[15] constitutum est.

---

[1] discoverer. [2] handicraft. [3] believe, regard. [4] **quaestus, -ūs,** M., profit, gain. [5] **mercātūra, -ae,** F., traffic. [6] belief. [7] ward off. [8] instructs in the rudiments of works and arts, *i.e.*, mechanical arts. [9] **caelestēs, -ium,** pl. heavenly gods, supply **deōrum.** [10] fight a pitched battle. [11] generally. [12] devote. [13] piled up. [14] see. [15] torture.

XLIV

Marriages and funerals among the Gauls (*B.* VI, 19).

Viri in uxores sicuti[1] in liberos vitae necisque[2] habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco[3] natus decessit[4], ejus propinqui conveniunt et de morte si res in suspicionem venit[5] de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem[6] habent et si compertum est[7], igni et omnibus tormentis excruciatas[8] interficiunt. Funera[9] sunt pro cultu[10] Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa[11]; omniaque quae vivis cordi fuisse[12] arbitrantur in ignem inferunt etiam animalia ac paulo supra hanc memoriam[13] servi et clientes quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, justis[14] funeribus confectis, unā cremabantur.

---

[1]as also. [2]**nex, necis,** F., death. [3]somewhat distinguished family. [4]**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,** die. [5]if his death has been suspected. [6]investigation. [7]**comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertum,** find out. [8]after being tortured. [9]funerals. [10]considering the civilization. [11]grand and expensive. [12]**cordī esse,** be dear. [13]a little before our time. [14]regular.

XLV

Laws against Gossiping (*B.* VI, 20).

Quae civitates commodius[1] suam rem publicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum[2] si quis quid de re publicā a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit uti ad magistrum deferat neve[3] cum quo alio communicet quod[4] saepe homines temerarios[5] atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa sunt[6] occultant quaeque esse ex usu judicaverunt multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur[7].

---

[1]well; literally, "*better than ordinary.*" [2]**sanciō, -īre, sanxī, sanctum,** lay down by law. [3]= **et ne.** [4]because: join with **cognitum est.** [5]rash. [6]seem good. [7]**concēdō, -ere, concessī, concessum,** allow.

XLVI

The Germans (*B.* VI, 21).

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent qui rebus divinis praesint[1], neque sacrificiis student[2]. Deorum numero[3] eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne famā quidem acceperunt[4]. Vita omnis in venationibus[5] atque in studiis rei militaris consistit[6]; ab parvulis[7] labori ac duritiae student[8]. Qui diutissime impuberes[9] permanserunt maximam inter suos ferunt laudem; hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. In fluminibus perfluuntur[10] et pellibus ac parvis renonum tegmentis[11] utuntur, magnā corporis parte nudā.

---

[1]H. L., 237, 1. [2]perform. [3] = **in numerō**. [4]not even by report have they heard of. [5]hunting. [6]**consistō, -ere, -stitī**, is spent. [7]from their earliest age: **parvulus,** diminutive of **parvus.** [8]they accustom themselves to toil and hardship. [9]**impūbēs, -eris**, unmarried. [10]**perfluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum,** bathe themselves. [11]skins of reindeer.

XLVII

Land Tenure among the Germans (*B.* VI, 22).

Agriculturae non student[1] majorque pars eorum victūs[2] in lacte, caseo[3], carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum[4] aut fines habet proprios[5] sed magistratus ac principes[6] in annos singulos gentibus[7] cognationibusque[8] hominum qui tum unā coierunt[9] quantum et quo loco visum est agri[10] attribuunt[11] atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas afferunt[12] causas; ne assidua consuetudine capti[13] studium belli gerendi agriculturā[14] commutent[15]; ne latos fines parare studeant[16] potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne

qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate[17] plebem contineant cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari[18] videat.

---

[1]They pay no heed. [2]**victus, -ūs,** M., food. [3]**caseus,** -ī, M., cheese. [4]fixed amount. [5]of his own. [6]join with **attribuunt.** [7]clans. [8]families. [9]of the people who have met on the occasion. [10]Partitive Genitive depending on **quantum.** [11]assign. [12]give. [13]charmed by habitual custom. [14]abl. of Price : H.L., 293, 4. [15]exchange: *i.e.*, abandon the pursuit of war for agriculture. [16]aim at acquiring. [17]contentment. [18]is on an equality with.

XLVIII

Warlike habits of the Germans (*B.* VI, 23).

Civitatibus maxima laus est[1] quam latissime[2] circum se vastatis finibus sollitudines habere. Hoc proprium[3] virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere[4] neque quemquam prope audere consistere[5]; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur repentinae incursionis timore sublato[6]. Cum bellum civitas aut illatum[7] defendit aut infert, magistratus qui ei bello praesint[7] et vitae necisque[8] habeant potestatem deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus sed principes regionum atque pagorum[9] inter suos jus dicunt[10] controversiasque minuunt[11]. Latrocinia nullam habent[12] infamiam[13] quae extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidiae[14] minuendae causā fieri praedicant[15]. Hospitem[16] violare fas non putant et qui quācumque de causā[17] ad eos venerunt ab injuria prohibent, sanctos[18] habent, hisque omnium domus patent[19] victusque communicatur[20].

---

[1]the greatest reputation that a state can have is. [2]as far and wide as possible. [3]a characteristic. [4]that their neighbors being driven out of their lands should retire before them. [5]settle. [6]from **tollō** : remove. [7]**bellum illatum,** an aggressive war. [7]Final Rel. and Subj. : H. L., 232, 2. [8]**nex, necis,** F., death. [9]**pagus,** -ī, M., canton. [10]administer justice. [11]**minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum,** settle. [12]regard. [13]disgrace. [14]for the purpose of lessening indolence. [15]**praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** avow. [16]**hospes, -itis,** M., guest. [17]for any reason whatever. [18]sacred. [19]**pateō, -ēre, -uī,** be open. [20]is shared.

XLIX

The Germans and the Gauls contrasted in bravery (*B.* VI, 24).

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro[1] bella inferrent, propter hominum[2] multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea[3] quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt loca circum Hercyniam silvam quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis famā notam esse video, Volcae Tectosages[4] occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt[5]; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quod in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia Germani permanent[6], eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur; Gallis autem provinciarum Romanarum propinquitas[7] et transmarinarum rerum notitia[8] multa ad usus largitur[9], paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

---

[1] voluntarily. [2] population. [3] join with **loca**. [4] a Gallic tribe. [5] **consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum,** settle. [6] as the Germans live in the same poverty, want and endurance of hardships. [7] nearness. [8] knowledge of things beyond the sea. [9] brings in many things they regard as essentials.

L

The Hercynian Forest (*B.* VI, 25).

Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet[1]; non enim aliter finiri[2] potest, neque mensuras[3] itinerum noverunt. Oritur[4] ab Helvetiorum finibus rectāque fluminis Danuvii regione[5] pertinet ad fines Dacorum[6]; multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat[7], cum[8] dierum iter sexaginta processerit, aut quo ex loco oriatur

acceperit; multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint[7]; ex quibus quae maxime differant[7] ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur[7] haec sunt.

---

[1]extends over a journey of nine days, to a man lightly equipped. [2]**fīniō, -īre, īvī, -itum,** define. [3]**mensūra, -ae, F.** measurement. [4]**orior, -īrī, ortus sum,** starts, begins. [5]in a direct line with (*i.e.*, parallel to). [6]**Dacī, ōrum,** M. pl. the Dacians, a tribe on the Danube. [7]subj. in a clause of Characteristic: H. L., 237, 1.

LI

One-horned cattle; the Elk (*B.* VI, 26, 27).

Est bos cervi figurā[1] cujus a media fronte[2] inter aures[3] unum cornu exsistit[4] excelsius[5] magisque directum[6] his quae nobis sunt nota, cornibus; ab ejus summo sicut palmae ramique[7] late diffunduntur[8]. Eadem est feminae[9] marisque[10] natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum. Sunt item quae appellantur alces[11]. Harum est consimilis capris[12] figura et varietas pellium[13] sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt, mutilaeque sunt cornibus[14] et crura[15] sine nodis articulisque[16] habent, neque quietis causā procumbunt[17] neque si quo afflictae[18] casu[19] conciderunt erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus; ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accīdunt arbores, tantum ut species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

---

[1]of the shape of a deer: since the genitive has an adjectival force: **figurā** is abl. of description; probably the *reindeer* is meant. [2]**frons, frontis,** F., forehead. [3]**auris, -is,** F., ear. [4]**exsisto, -ere,** protrude. [5]**excelsus, -a, -um,** high. [6]straight. [7]as it were branching hands (*hendiadys*). [8]**diffundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum,** spread. [9]**fēmina, -ae,** F., female. [10]**mās, māris,** adj., male. [11]**alcēs, -ium,** *elks.* [12]**caper, -prī,** M., goat. [13]piebald appearance. [14]literally: they are blunted in their horns, *i.e.*, their horns are blunted. [15]**crūs, crūris,** N., leg. [16]without knotted joints (*hendiadys*). [17]**prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum,** lie down. [18]**afflīgō, -ere, flixī, flictūm,** throw down. [19]**cāsus, -ūs,** M., accident.

LII

The primitive Ox (*B.* VI, 28).

Tertium est genus eorum[1] qui uri[2] appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra[3] elephantos, specie[4] et colore et figurā tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas. Neque homini neque ferae quam conspexerunt parcunt. Hos studiose[5] foveis[6] captos interficiunt[7]; hoc se labore durant[8] adolescentes atque hoc genere venationis[9] exercent et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus[10], magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuescere[11] ad homines et mansuefieri[12] ne parvuli quidem[13] possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt[13]. Haec studiose conquisita[14] ab labris[15] argento circumcludunt[16] atque in amplissimis epulis[17] pro poculis[18] utuntur.

---

[1]literally, is of those; consists of those. [2]**ūrus, -ī,** M., wild ox or bison. [3]a little less than. [4]of the appearance. [5]eagerly. [6]**fovea, -ae,** F., pitfall, snare. [7]they eagerly capture in pitfalls and kill these. [8]make themselves hardy. [9]**vēnātiō, -ōnis,** F., hunting. [10]when the horns are brought into a public place: with **publicum** supply **locum.** [11]**adsuescō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum,** become accustomed. [11]**mansuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum,** tame. [13]not even when caught young. [13]**differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum,** differ. [14]**conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum,** seek out. [15]**labrum, -ī,** N. lip: translate, at the rim. [16]**circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** surround. [17]**epulum, -i,** N. (sing.): **epulae, -ārum,** F. (pl.), banquet. [18]**pōculum, -ī,** N. cup: translate, as drinking cups.

LIII

A force left on the Rhine (*B.* VI, 29).

Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit[1] Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student constituit non progredi longius; sed ne omnino metum reditus

sui barbaris[2] tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret[3], reducto exercitu, partem[4] ultimam pontis quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat[5] in longitudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit[6] atque in extremo ponte turrim constituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendi causā ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Caium Volcatium Tullum adolescentem praefecit.

---

[1] **comperiō, 4, comperī, compertum,** find out. [2] dat. H. L., 285, 5, (*b*); translate : but that he might not altogether relieve the barbarians of all fear of his return. [3] **tardō,** 1, keep back. [4] object of **rescindit.** [5] **contingō, -ere, contigī, contactum,** join. [6] **rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissum,** cut down.

LIV

A Roman Hero (*B.* VI, 38).

Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextus Baculus cujus mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus ac diem jam quintum cibo[1] caruerat[2]. Hic diffisus[3] suae atque omnium saluti inermis[4] ex tabernaculo[5] prodit[6]; videt imminere[7] hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine; capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis quae in statione erat; paulisper unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium[8] gravissimis acceptis vulneribus; aegre servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

---

[1] **cibus, -ī,** M., food. [2] **careō, ere, caruī, caritum,** be without (gov. abl.). [3] **diffīdō, -ere, diffīsus sum,** distrust (semi-deponent : H. L., 135, 5) **fīdo** and its compounds usually govern dat. of person and abl. of thing : fearing for his own safety and that of his comrades. [4] **inermis, -e,** adj., unarmed. [5] **tābernāculum, -ī,** N., tent. [6] **prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum** advance. [7] **immineō, -ēre,** be near. [8] Sextius faints, or becomes unconscious.

LV

Caesar returns in safety (*B.* VI, 41).

Germani desperatā expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse[1] in munitionibus videbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvis deposuerant trans Rhenum sese receperunt; ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum[2] hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum Caius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret[3] adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino[4] animos timor praeoccupaverat[5] ut paene alienatā mente,[6] deletis omnibus copiis, equitatum se ex fugā recepisse dicerent, neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit[7].

---

[1]**consistō, -ere, -stitī, stitum,** take a position. [2]**discessus, -ūs,** M., withdrawal. [3]could not make them believe. [4]completely. [5]taken possession of. [6]almost beside themselves. [7]**tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātum,** remove.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS

The references in the Vocabulary are to the pages and sections of THE NEW FIRST LATIN BOOK by Henderson and Little (marked by letters H. L.), and to the chapters of Caesar and lines of Vergil. In the references, "c." stands for Caesar; "Verg." for Vergil.

abl.	ablative.	intr.	intransitive.
acc.	accusative.	irreg.	irregular.
adj.	adjective.	M.	masculine.
adv.	adverb.	N.	neuter
cf.	compare.	num.	numeral.
comp.	comparative.	ord.	ordinal.
conj.	conjunction.	p.	page.
dat.	dative.	part.	participle.
defec.	defective.	pass.	passive.
dem.	demonstrative.	perf.	perfect.
dep.	deponent.	pl.	plural.
dim.	diminutive.	prep.	preposition.
distrib.	distributive.	pro.	pronoun.
F.	feminine.	rel.	relative.
gen.	genitive.	sc.	supply.
impers.	impersonal.	sing.	singular.
indecl.	indeclinable.	sup.	superlative.
indef.	indefinite.	tr.	transitive.
interrog.	interrogative.	v.	verb.

The quantity of vowels long or short by position and of diphthongs (which are all long) and of short vowels is not given.

VOCABULARY

CAESAR: Bellum Gallicum, *Bk.* IV, 20—*Bk.* V, 23.
VERGIL: Æneid, *Bk.* II.
SIGHT TRANSLATION.

A

ā, ab, prep. with abl. (a only before consonants; ab before vowels and consonants); ab millibus passuum octo, eight miles off (c. iv, 22); ab aperto latere, on the exposed flank (the right side) (c. iv, 26): a Pirustis, on the side of the Pirustae (c. v, 1).

abdō, -ere, -didī, ditum, v. tr., hide.

abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, v. intr., go away.

abhinc, adv., ago; abhinc decem annos or abhinc decem annis, ten years ago, H. L., 116, 4.

abjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw away.

abiēs, -ietis, F., a fir-tree, spruce.

abluō, -ere, -luī, -lutum, wash off, purify (ab, luo, "wash").

abnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.

abscēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., go away, leave off.

absens, -tis (pres. part. of absum), adj., absent.

absistō, -ere, -stitī, v. intr., desist; ab signis legionibusque non absistere, not to stop short of the standards of the legions (c. v, 17).

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, v. tr., hold away; refrain (abs=ab; teneo, "hold").

absum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., be absent, distant from; abesse decem millia passuum, to be ten miles off; neque multum abesse quin, to be not far from (c. v, 2).

ac (used before consonants); another form of atque (used before vowels), which see.

Acamās, -ntis, M., *Acamas*, a Greek hero (Verg. 262).

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessum, v. intr., go towards, reach; accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus, all the ships reached Britain (c. v, 8); impers., accēdit, -cēdere, -cessit, it is added; accessit etiam quod, there was also added the fact that (c. iv, 16); accedebat huc ut, to this was added the fact that (c. v, 16).

accidō, -ere, -cidī, happen: usually impers.; accidit, accidere, accidit, it happens; opportune accidisse arbitratus, thinking that this had happened fortunately (c. iv, 22); accidit ut, it happened that (c. iv, 29).

accingō, -ere, -cinxī, -cinctum, gird on; reflexive sē omitted (Verg. 235).

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, ceptum, v. tr., receive; to hear (Verg. 65, 308); welcome (Verg. 265).

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fit to (Verg. 393).

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., keen, sharp, severe (comp., ācrior; sup., ācerrimus).

acernus, -a, -um, adj., *made of maple, maple.*

Achāicus, -a, -um, adj., *Achaian, Grecian.*

Achillēs, -is (or -ī, eī), M., *Achilles*, the chief Greek hero in the Trojan war; son of Peleus.

Achīvī, -ōrum, M. pl.: the Greeks: see note Verg. 45.

aciēs, -ēī, F., edge; acies ferri, the edge of the sword (Verg. 333); line of battle; aciem instruere, to draw up a line of battle; acie certare, to fight in line of battle (Verg. 30); legiones in acie constituere, to draw up the legions in line, (c. iv, 35).

ācriter, adv., fiercely, keenly (comp., ācrius; sup., ācerrimē); acriter pugnatum est, a keen battle was fought.

actuārius, -a, -um, adj., impelled by oars, furnished with oars.

acūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharp, keen.

ad, prep. (with acc.), to, against, towards, near to, at, alongside (c. iv, 25) often used with gerund or gerundive, for the purpose of (c. iv, 23, 29, 31); **ad pristinam fortunam,** to complete his former good fortune (c. iv, 26); **ad diem,** on the right day, punctually (c. v, 1); **ad Cantium,** at Kent (c. v, 13); **ad solis occasum,** at sunset (c. v, 8); **ad hunc modum,** in this way.

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr., equal.

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., add, join to.

addūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead to, bring to (of persons) (c. iv, 22, 36); induce (c. iv, 37).

adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, v. tr. and intr., approach, visit, reach.

adeō, adv., to this point, so, such, to that degree.

(adfor), -ārī, -ātus sum, speak to.

adfore, fut. infin. of **adsum;** see **adsum.**

adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, hibitum, v. tr., summon, call in, admit; **adhibitis principibus majoribusque natu,** summoning the chiefs and elders (c. iv, 13).

adhortor, -hortārī, -hortātus sum, v. dep., encourage.

adhuc, adv., to this place, thus far, as yet.

adjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw to, throw up; **in litus telum adjici poterat,** a dart could be thrown to the water's edge (c. iv, 23); **aggerem ad munitiones adjicere,** to throw up a mound against the fortifications (c. v, 9).

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum, v. tr., take away, deprive of.

aditus, -ūs, M., approach, landing-place (c. iv, 20); **mercatoribus est aditus,** merchants have access (c. iv, 2).

adjungō, -ere, -junxī, -junctum, v. tr., join to, add.

adjuvō, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, v. tr., aid, help, assist.

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., do, manage; **cum paulo tardius administratum esset,** when this was done somewhat slowly (c. iv, 23); **rempublicam administrare,** to carry on the government.

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., allow, permit; **facinus admittere,** to commit a crime; **dedecus admittere,** to be guilty of a disgrace (c. iv, 25).

admodum, adv., very much, greatly; with numbers, fully, at least.

adolescens, -centis, M., a youth.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, v. tr. dep., rise up against, attack, assail.

adportō, -portāre, -portāvī, portātum, v. tr., convey to.

adsentiō, -sentīre, -sensī, -sensum, v. intr., assent, approve.

adservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., guard closely, closely cling to.

adspīrō, -spīrāre, -spīrāvī, -spīrātum (with dat.), breathe upon, am favorable to.

adstō, -stāre, -stitī, no sup., stand by, stand erect.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., be present, near.

adventus, --ūs, M., arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, adj., turned to, opposed to, unfavorable: **nocte adversa,** in the teeth of night, or in a foul night (c. iv, 28); **adversi venti,** warring winds (Verg. 416).

adversus, prep. (with acc.), opposed to, over against.

advertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., turn to; **animum advertere,** to notice.

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fly to, hasten to.

aedēs, -is, F., a temple; in plural, a house or temples.

aedificium, -ī, N., dwelling, house.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., build.

Aeduī, -ōrum, M. pl., the *Aedui*, a tribe of Gaul (*France*).

Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick (comp. **aegrior**; sup., **aegerrimus**).

aegrē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.

Aenēās, -ae, M.; *Aeneas*, son of Anchises and Venus, and hero of the Aeneid.

aēneus, -a, -um, adj., made of bronze or copper.

aequinoctium, -ī, N., the equinox, either 21st March or 21st September; in Caesar, the latter.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make equal.

aequor, -oris, N., sea.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., just.

aerātus, -a, -um, adj., of brass, brazen.

aes, aeris, N., bronze, copper (c. iv, 31) money; aes alienum, debt (literally, money belonging to another)

aestās, -ātis, F., summer; media aestate, in the middle of summer; extrema aestate, at the end of summer; prima aestate, at the beginning of summer; aestatem consumere, to spend the summer (c. v. 4).

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., value, think, reckon; litem aestimare, to assess the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

aestus, -ūs, M., tide.

aether, -eris, M., the bright upper air, sky (Verg. 123, 338).

aetās, -ātis, F., period of life, age: per aetatem, on account of age (c. v. 3).

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, v. tr., bring to, assign, report, announce.

affirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., assert, declare.

afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., damage, wreck.

affīgō, -ere, -flixī, -flictum, v. tr, damage; navem affligere, to shatter a vessel (c. iv, 31); afflictus, downcast, (Verg. 92).

afflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., breathe upon, blast.

affluō, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, v. tr., flow to; throng, flock to.

Africus, -ī, M. (properly an adj., with ventus understood); the southwest wind, still called *Africo* by the Italians.

Agamemnon, -onis, M., *Agamemnon*, king of Mycenae in Greece, and commander of the Greek forces at Troy.

ager, agrī, M., a field, land; pl., lands, territories.

agger, -eris, M., a mound.

agglomerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat.), join themselves to (Verg. 341).

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., go against, assail, attack.

aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, join to; se aggregare (military term), fall in (c. iv, 26).

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., keep moving, pursue, ponder (freq. from agō).

agmen, -inis, N., an army on the march; a column; agmine certo: with unwavering course (Verg. 212).

agnoscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, v. tr., recognize.

agō, agere, ēgī, actum, v. tr., move, go, do, drive; clamoribus actus, influenced by the shouts (Verg. 128).

āiō, v. tr., defective, 3rd sing., ait (Verg. 155, 289).

Ajax, -ācis; N. m.; *Ajax*, a Grecian hero, son of Oileus, king of the Locri in Greece. Sometimes called *the lesser Ajax* to distinguish him from the greater Ajax, son of Telamon, who, being defeated by Ulysses in the contest for the Arms of Achilles, went mad and slew himself.

alacritās, -ātis, F., dash, haste; alacritate uti, to show dash (c. iv. 24).

albus, -a, -um, adj., white; album plumbum, tin (c. v, 12).

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to another; another's; strange, foreign, hostile; aes alienum, debt (another's money); alieno loco, on unfavorable ground; alienum tempus, an unfavorable time (c. iv, 34).

aliō, adv., elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, adv., for some time; for a while.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., considerable, some; aliquantum itineris, some distance (c. v, 10).

aliquī, -quae, -quod, indef. pro., some one, any one.

aliquis, -qua, -quid, indep. pro., some one, any one; aliquid temporis, some time.

aliter, adv., otherwise.

alius, -a, -ud (for declension see H. L., p. 48, 2), pro., another, other, different; alius...alius, one...another; alii...alii, some...others; alius alia ex navi, one from one ship, another from another (c. iv, 26).

allātus: see afferō.

almus, -a, -um, adj. nurturing; kindly (alo, "nourish").

alō, alere, aluī, alitum or altum, v. tr., rear, nourish.

altāria, -ium, n, pl., altar (altus, "high").

alter, -era, -erum, adj., one of two; alter...alter, the one...the other; alteri...alteri, the one party...the other party (H. L., p. 48, 2).

altitūdō, -inis, F., height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep; in alto, on the deep; also in pl. tranquilla per alta (Verg. 203).

alvus, -ī, F., belly.

ambiguus, -a, -um, adj., of doubtful meaning, dark.

ambo, -ae, -o, adj., both.

āmens, -tis, adj., out of one's mind, mad.

āmentia, -ae, F., madness, folly.

amīcē, adv., friendly.

amīcitia, -ae, F., friendship ; ab amicitia deficere, cast off an alliance.

amīcus, -a, -um, adj., friendly.

amīcus, -ī, M., a friend.

amittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., lose.

amnis, -is, M., river.

amor, -ōris, love, desire.

amplē, adv., abundantly ; comp. amplius, more.

amplector, -plectī, -plexus sum, v. dep., embrace, encircle (Verg. 214).

amplius, neut. comp. of adj., amplus, more, further. Often used with numerals without any influence on the construction : amplius octingentae (naves), more than eight hundred ships.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, noble, distinguished ; amplissimo genere natus, born of a most illustrious family.

an, interrogative participle, whether, or.

Ancalitēs, -um, pl. M., the *Ancalites*, a British tribe in Berkshire and Oxfordshire.

Anchīsēs, -ae, M., *Anchises*, father of Aeneas.

ancora, -ae, F., an anchor; navem tenere in ancoris, to keep a ship at anchor ; ancoram tollere, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23); in ancoris exspectare, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23) : ancoram jacere, to cast anchor (c. iv, 28); ad ancoras naves deligare, to ride at anchor (c. v, 9).

ancilla, -ae, F., a hand-maid, servant.

Androgeōs, -ī, M., *Androgeos*, a Greek hero (Verg. 371).

Andromachē, -ēs, F., *Andromache*, wife of Hector (Verg. 457).

anguis, -is, M. and F., snake, serpent.

angulus, -ī, M., a corner.

angustē, adv., narrowly, closely ; angustius milites collocare, to stow the soldiers in somewhat narrower space than usual.

angustiae, -ārum, pl. F., defile, strait (of sea).

angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, contracted; angusta viarum = angusta loca viarum, the narrow places of the streets (Verg. 332).

anima, -ae, F., life, soul; animam deponere, to relinquish his life.

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., notice.

animal, -ālis, N., animal.

animus, -ī, M., mind, soul, spirit, courage ; magni animi, of great courage (c. v, 6); animis impeditis, when the attention of all was engaged (c. v, 7); animi voluptatisque causā, for sentiment and amusement (c. v, 12); fidens animi, confident in soul (Verg. 67); conversi (sunt) animi, our feelings were altered (Verg. 113).

annon, interrog. particle, or not (in the second member of a direct question.

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., of the year before.

annus, -ī, a year; primis ab annis, from my early years.

anser, -eris, M., a goose.

ante, (1) adv., previously, before ; paucis ante diebus, a few days before ; (H. L., p. 116, 5); (2) prep. with acc. only ; before, in front of, in advance of. For ante quam see antequam.

anteā, adv., previously, before.

antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., prefer.

antequam, conj., before.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient.

Ap. = Appius, a Roman praenomen (see cognomen).

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum, v. tr., open (Verg. 60, 246).

apertus, -a, -um, adj., open, exposed; aperto litore, on an open shore (c. iv, 23); ad latus apertum (c. iv, 25) ; ab latere aperto, on the exposed flank (on the right side) (c. iv, 26).

Apollo, -inis, M., *Apollo*

appāreō, -ēre, -pāruī, -pāritum, v. intr., attend, appear (Verg. 422, 484).

apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., prepare, make preparations for, provide for.

appellō, -āre, -āvī -ātum, v. tr., call.

appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., bring to land (of ships); in passive, call at, touch at (c. v, 13).

Appius, -ī, *Appius*, a Roman praenomen (see nomen).

apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring, carry to (a place).

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat.), v. intr., approach, come near (c. iv, 25, 28).

aptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fit, fit on.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable.

apud, prep. (with accusative); near, at, beside; **apud urbem**, near the city; **apud eum**, in his command (c. v, 11).

aqua, -ae, F., water.

aquātiō, -ōnis, F., fetching water, watering; **aquationis causā**, to obtain water (c. iv, 11).

aquila, -ae, F., an eagle, standard of the legion as opposed to **signa**, standards of the cohorts (c. iv, 25).

aquilifer, -ferī, M., the eagle-bearer, the standard-bearer.

āra, -ae, F., an altar.

Arar, -aris, M., *the Ar[illegible]* (now the *Saone*), a tributary of the Rhodanus (*Rhone*).

arātrum, -ī, N., a plough.

arbiter, -trī, M., judge; **dare arbitros**, to appoint arbitrators (c. v, 1).

arbitrium, -ī, N., a judgment, decision.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., think, suppose, consider.

arbor, -oris, F., a tree.

arceō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., confine, restrain.

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., send for, summon (c. iv, 27).

ardens, -ntis, adj., on fire, eager; blazing (**ardeo**).

ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum, be on fire (Verg. 311); be eager (Verg. 172, 105).

Arduenna, -ae, F., the *Ardennes*, a forest of north-eastern Gaul, which extended through the territories of the Treveri to those of the Remi (c. v, 3).

arduus, -a, -um, adj., lofty, towering.

argentum, -ī, N., silver, money.

Argī, -ōrum, pl. M., *Argos*, a city of Argolis, in the eastern part of the Peloponnesus.

Argīvī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Argives*, the Greeks.

Argīvus, -a, -um, adj., *Argive, Grecian.*

Argolicus, -a, -um, adj., *Argolic* (belonging to Argos).

Argos (only used in nom. and acc. sing.), N., see **Argi**.

āridus, -a, -um, adj., dry. As a substantive, **aridum**, dry land; **ex arido**, on the shore (c. iv, 24); **in arido** (c. iv, 26).

ariēs, -etis, M., a battering ram.

arma, -ōrum, pl. N., arms; **in armis esse**, to bear arms (c. v. 3); **ab armis discedere**, to lay down arms.

armāmentum, -ī, N., tackle (of a vessel).

armātūra, -ae, F., armor; **levis armaturae milites**, light-armed soldiers.

armātus, -a, -um, adj., armed.

armentum, -ī, N., herd (**aro**, to plough).

armiger, -gera, -gerum, adj., armor-bearer.

armipotens, -ntis, adj., powerful in arms.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., arm; **copiae armatae**, forces in arms (c. iv, 23); **armato milite**, with armed soldiery (Verg. 20); **ad armandas naves**, for the equipment of the vessels (c. v, 1).

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., plough.

arrectus, -a, -um, adj., raised: **luminibus arrectis**, with eyes distended (Verg. 173); **pectora arrecta**, uplifted breasts (Verg. 205); **arrectis auribus**, with eager ears (Verg. 303).

arrigō, -ere, -rexī, -rectum, v. tr., lift, raise.

ars, -tis, F., cunning (Verg. 106, 195).

artifex, -icis, M., contriver, plotter.

artus, -ūs, M., limb.

artus, -a, -um, adj., confining, tight.

arvum, -ī, N., a field (Verg. 208).

arx, -cis, F., citadel; **summa ab arce**, from the top of the citadel (Verg. 41).

Ascānius, -ī, M., *Ascanius* or *Iulus*, son of Aeneas.

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., ascend, mount; **navem ascendere**, to embark; **vestram ascendere in urbem**, to go into your city (Verg. 192).

ascensus, -ūs, M., ascent.

Asia, -ae, F., *Asia.*

aspectus, -ūs, M., appearance.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, (Verg. 379); **aspris = asperis**.

aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., behold.

ast = at, conj., but (Verg. 224).

astans (see **asto**), used as an adj., standing by.

astō, astāre, astitī, astitum, v. intr., stand by.

astrum, -ī, N., star (ἄστρον).

Astyanax, -actis, M., *Astyanax*, son of Hector.

asylum, -ī, N., place of refuge, sanctuary (ἄσυλον).

at, conj., but, yet.

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., black, gloomy.

atque (contracted **ac**; **atque**, before vowels, **ac**, before consonants), conj., and also, and even, and (stronger than **et**); **par atque**, the same as; **aliter atque**, different than; **contra atque**, otherwise than.

Atrebas, -atis, adj., *Atrebatian*.

Atrebatēs, -um, M., *the Atrebates*, a people of Belgic Gaul in the modern Artois or Arras (*Flemish Atrecht*).

atrium, -ī, N., court.

Atrīdae, -ārum, M. pl., *the sons of Atreus, i.e.*, Agamemnon and Menelaus.

Atrius, -ī, M., *Quintus Atrius*, an officer in Caesar's army, who was left on the south coast of Britain to look after the fleet while Caesar marched inland on his second expedition, 54 B.C.

attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactum, v. tr., touch, reach; **terram attingere**, reach land (c. v, 23).

attollō, -tollere, v. tr., raise.

attrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, handle, (**ad, tracto**).

auctor, -ōris, M. (Verg. 150); **me auctore**, at my suggestion.

auctōritās, -ātis, F., authority, influence, power, prestige.

auctumnus (or **autumnus**), -ī, M., autumn.

audācia, -ae, F., boldness, daring.

audāciter, adv., boldly.

audacter, same as **audaciter**.

audax, -ācis, adj., bold, daring.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep. v. tr. and intr., dare, be bold; **audēre in proelio**, to be bold for battle (Verg. 416).

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., hear.

augurium, ī, N., omen by the utterance of birds; omen (**avis**; root GAR, "to call").

aula, -ae, F., a hall.

aura, -ae, F., air.

aurātus, -a, -um, adj., gilded.

aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden, of gold.

aurīga, -ae, M., a charioteer, driver.

auris, -is, F., an ear.

aurum, -ī, N., gold.

Aurunculeius, -ī, M., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of the lieutenants of Caesar in Gaul. He fell in an ambuscade planned by Ambiorix, 54 B.C.

Auster, -trī, M., south wind.

ausum, -ī, N., daring deed (**audeo**).

aut, conj., or; **aut...aut**, either... or.

autem, conj., but, moreover, yet, also, now. (Never put first in a clause).

Automedon, -ontis, M., *Automedon*, charioteer of Achilles (Verg. 477).

autumnus, see **auctumnus**.

auxilior, -ārī, ātus sum, v. intr. dep. (with dat.), give help.

auxilium, -ī, N., aid, support; in plural, **auxilia, -orum**, auxiliary troops.

āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, v. tr. carry away.

āvellō, -ere, -vellī, or **-vulsī, -vulsum**, v. tr., tear away.

āversus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of **averto** used as an) adj., turned away.

āvertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, turn away.

avidus, -a, -um, adj., eager, covetous.

āvius, -a, -um, adj. (a, "away from," via), pathless; N. **avium**, as subst., by-path.

avus, -ī, M., a grandfather.

axis, -is, M., axle, axis; the axis of heaven, heaven.

B

barbarī, -ōrum, M. pl., barbarians, a name first applied by the Greeks, then by the Romans, to the people of other nations.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., savage, barbarous.

Belgae, -ārum, pl. M., *the Belgae*, a general name applied to a warlike people of north-eastern Gaul, from the Mosa (*Meuse*) to the Sequana (*Seine*), partly Celtic, partly Teutonic. The chief tribes were the Remi, Morini, Nervii, Suessiones.

Belgium, -ī, N., *Belgium*, the part of Gallia Belgica inhabited by the Bellovaci, Atrebates and the Ambiani.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., warlike.

Bēlīdēs, -dae, M., (*patronymic*), *son of Belus;* see **Palamēdēs**.

bellum, -ī, N., war; **bellum populo Romano facere**, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22).

bene, adv., well, prosperously; comp., **melius**; sup., **optimē**.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Bibroci*, a tribe of Britain which occupied *Berks, Sussex, Surrey* and adjoining district.

biduum, -ī, N., a space of two days.

bīgae, -ārum (=bī-jugae; bis, jugum, a yoke), F. (pl.), a car or chariot drawn by two horses.

bipatens, -entis, adj., opening in two ways, swinging.

bipennis, -is, F., double axe.

bis, num. adv., twice.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good; comp., melior; sup.. optimus.

bōs, bovis, M. or F., an ox, cow; pl., boves, cattle.

brāchium, -ī, N., arm.

brevis, -e, adj., short, brief; brevi (tempore), in a short time, soon (c. iv, 33).

breviter, adv., shortly, briefly.

Britannī, -ōrum, pl. M., *Britons*.

Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain*.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., British.

brūma, -ae, F. (=brevima=brevissima (dies) the shortest day), the winter solstice; Dec. 21st.

C

C., an abbreviation for Caius, a Roman praenomem (see cognomen) as in Caius Julius Caesar, Caius Volusenus, Caius Trebonius.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, v. intr., fall (Verg. 434): set; cadentia sidera, setting stars (Verg. 9).

caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind (Verg. 244); caeco Marte resistunt, they resist in aimless war (Verg. 335).

caedēs, -is, F., slaughter, murder.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, v. tr., cut, slay.

caelicola, -ae, M. and F., one who dwells in heaven; heavenly being; (caelum, colo).

caelum, -ī, N., sky, heavens.

caerimōnia, -ae, F., rite, reverence, veneration, awe.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., deep blue, sky-blue.

Caesar, -aris, M., *Caius Julius Caesar*, born 100 B.C., died 44 B.C. (see INTRODUCTION).

Calchās, -ntis, M., *Calchas*, a Greek soothsayer.

cāligō, -inis, F., thick darkness.

campus, -ī, M., plain, field.

canō, canere, cecinī, cantum, v. tr. and intr., sing, prophesy (because oracles were expressed in verse).

Cantium, -ī, N., *Kent*, a county in south-eastern England.

capillus, -ī, M., hair; esse promisso capillo, to wear long hair (c. v, 14).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, v. tr., take; portum capere, to make the harbor (c. iv, 36); so insulam capere (c. iv, 26, v. 8); capere consilium, to form a plan (c. v, 8).

captīvus, -ī, M., a captive, prisoner.

captus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of capio), taken, captured, charmed, influenced.

capulus, -ī, M., the handle, hilt (capio: hence, "the thing grasped").

caput, -itis, N., head.

Capys, -yos, M., *Capys*, a Trojan (Verg. 35).

cardō, -inis, M., hinge.

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, or cassum, be without (with abl.) (Verg. 44).

carīna, -ae, F., hull of a vessel, keel.

carmen, -inis, N., song.

carō, -nis, F., flesh; carne vivere, to live on flesh (c. v, 14).

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, beloved, agreeable to.

Carvilius, -ī, M., *Carvilius*, a petty king of Kent (c. v, 22).

Cassandra, -ae, F., *Cassandra*, daughter of Priam, inspired by Apollo with the gift of prophecy, but doomed by him never to be believed.

Cassī, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Cassi*, a British tribe that inhabited Herefordshire.

Cassius, -ī, M., *Caius Cassius Longus*, one of the assassins of Caesar. He died 42 B.C., at Philippi.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, M., *Cassivellaunus*, or *Caswallon*, the able commander-in-chief of the British army opposed to Caesar. His chief town was Verulamium, (now *St. Albans*).

cassus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of careo, deprived of (with abl.); (see careo).

castellum, -ī, N , a fortress.

Casticus, -ī, M., *Casticus*, a chief of the Sequani, whom Orgetorix induced to seize the supreme power in his state.

castrum, -ī, N., a hut, fort; in pl., castra, -ōrum, a camp; castra

ponere, to pitch a camp; castra munire; to fortify a camp, to pitch a camp; castra movere, to advance; castra navalia, an encampment on the shore for protecting the fleet and the troops while landing; sometimes connected with the ships drawn up on land (c. v, 22).

cāsū, (abl. of cāsus, used as an) adv., by chance.

cāsus, -ūs, M., chance, misfortune, emergency.

caterva, -ae, F., band.

catulus, -ī, M., whelp, cub.

causa, -ae, F., cause; sine causā, without reason (c. iv, 27; c. v, 6).

causā, adv. (really abl. of causa, with the noun depending on it in the gen.), for the sake of, on account of; mea causa, for my sake; often with gerundives, frigoris depellendi causa, for the purpose of warding off the cold (c. iv, 22).

cavō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make hollow, pierce.

cavus, -a, -um, adj., hollow.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, v. intr., go, yield; fall back, retire; insequi cedentes, to overtake the retreating foe (c. v, 16).

celeritās, -ātis, F., swiftness, speed.

celeriter, adv., quickly; comp., celerius; sup., celerrimē.

celsus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty.

Cenimagnī, -ōrum, M., pl., *the Cenimagni.* The word Cenimagni is said to be a corruption for Icenimagni. They inhabited Norfolk and Suffolk, north of the Trinobantes.

centum, num. adj., indecl., hundred.

Cerēs, -eris, F., *Ceres*, goddess of agriculture.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, v. tr., see perceive.

certāmen, -inis, N., conflict, battle, struggle.

certē, adv., at least, certainly.

certātim, adv. with emulation, earnestly (certo).

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., strive, contend.

certus, -a, -um, adj., certain, fixed, true; aliquem certiorem facere, inform; certior fieri, to be informed; certus locus, a definite place; certa dies, a fixed day (c. v, 1).

cervix, -īcis, F., neck.

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., cease.

(cēterus), -a, -um (nom. sing. not found; usually in plural), the rest, others.

ceu, adv., as, just as, as if.

ciō, -ēre, -cīvī, -cītum, v. tr., stir up.

Cingetorix, -igis, M., *Cingetorix*; (1) a Gaul attached to Caesar, and rival of Indutiomarus for the chieftainship of the Treveri (c. v, 3). (2) a British chief of Kent (c. v. 22).

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, v. tr., surround.

cinis, -eris, M., ashes.

circā, adv. and prep. (with acc.); about, around, in the neighborhood of (see circum).

circiter, adv. (with numeral adjectives); about, nearly.

circueō, see circumeō.

circuitus, -ūs, M., circumference.

circum, prep. (with acc.), around.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, v. tr., place around, surround; urbem muro (abl.) circumdare, or urbi (dat.) murum circumdare, to surround the city with a wall.

circumeō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum or circuitum, v. tr., go around, visit; hiberna circumire, to inspect the winter quarters (c. v, 2).

circumerrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander round.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., pour around; in passive, surround, crowd around.

circumsistō, sistere, -stetī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., surround (p. 277, 7).

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., see around (Verg. 68).

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., stand around, surround.

circumvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., surround (Verg. 360).

citerior, -ōris, adj. (p. 59, 2), on this side, hither; Gallia citerior, Gaul on this (*i.e.*, the Roman) side of the Alps (*Northern Italy*), opposed to Gallia ulterior, Gaul beyond the Alps (*France*).

citō, adv., rapidly, swiftly; comp., citius; sup. citissimē.

cīvis, -is, M. or F., citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis, F., state, commonwealth; civitati consulere, to take measures for the benefit of the state (c. v, 3).

clādēs, -is, F., slaughter, disaster.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shout.

clangor, -ōris, M., braying (of trumpets).

clārescō, -ere, clāruī, no sup., grow clear.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., bright, clear, distinguished.

classis, -is, F., fleet.

Claudius, -ī, M., *Claudius.* Appius Claudius, consul with Lucius Domitius, B.C. 54. He was brother of the infamous Clodius whom Milo murdered, and was a well known lawyer and politician of Rome.

claustrum, -ī, N., bar.

clipeus, -ī, M., a shield.

Cn. = Cneius, see Pompeius, Servilius.

Cneius, -ī, M., see Cn.

coactus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of cogo used as an) adj., forced; coactis lacrimis, by his forced tears (Verg. 196).

coepī, -isse, v. defec., begin, began.

coeptus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of coepī, begun.

coerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, v. tr., check, restrain.

cognōmen, -inis, N., a family name, a name. Each Roman had regularly three names, the praenomen, indicating the individual like our Christian name; the nomen indicating the gens, or clan, or tribe to which he belonged; the cognomen or family name. Caius (praenomen), Julius (nomen), Caesar (cognomen); an agnomen was often added for honor or character, as Africanus to Scipio.

cognoscō, cognoscere, cognōvī, cognitum, v. tr., know, learn, ascertain (c. v, 11).

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactum, v. tr., collect, compel, oblige; equitatum cogere, to collect cavalry (c. v, 3; iv, 22, 34).

cohors, -tis, F., a cohort, the tenth part of a legion (see legio).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., exhort, encourage, animate, urge; cohortatī inter se, urging each other (c. iv, 25).

collaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., praise, extol.

colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., collect, assemble.

collis, -is, M., a hill.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., station; curru collocare, station themselves with their chariots; in statione collocati, stationed on guard (c. v, 15).

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, v. dep., talk together, confer; inter se collocuti, holding a conference among themselves (c. iv, 30).

collum, -ī, N., neck.

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, v. tr., till, cultivate.

color, -ōris, M., color.

coluber, -brī, M., serpent.

columba, -ae, F., dove.

coma, -ae, F., hair.

comans, -tis, adj., crested, hairy.

comes, -itis, M., companion.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., attend, be a companion to.

commeātus, -ūs, M., a coming and a going; supplies; duobus commeatibus, by two relays (c. v, 23).

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., commit to protection, entrust.

commīlitō, -ōnis, M., fellow-soldier, comrade.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., engage; committere proelium cum hostibus, to engage in battle with the enemy; nihil his committere, to trust nothing to these (c. iv, 5).

Commius, -ī, M., *Commius*, a Gaul, chief of the Atrebates.

commodē, adv., conveniently, profitably.

commodum, -ī, N., convenience, profit; quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, which each had made for his own convenience (c. v, 8).

commodus, -a, -um, adj., convenient, favorable, fit, easy.

commoror, -morārī, -morātus sum, v. dep. intr., delay, stay, remain.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., disturb, agitate, alarm.

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., fortify strongly.

commūnis, -e, adj., common, general, affable, courteous; communi consilio, after joint deliberation (c. v, 11; communēs, in common (c. v, 14).

commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., change.

compāges, -is, F., joint, fastening.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make ready, prepare; copias comparare, to collect forces; re frumentaria comparata, after collecting a supply of corn (c. iv, 7).

compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive in a body.

compellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., address.

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, v. tr., find out, discover.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, v. dep., embrace.

compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill completely; **naves militibus complere,** to man ships with soldiers (c. iv, 26).

complūrēs, -plūra, adj. pl., very many, several.

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring together, collect.

compositō, adv., by agreement.

comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehensum, v. tr., seize, arrest.

compressus, -a -um, perf. part. pass. of **comprimo.**

comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, v. tr., suppress.

comprendō, -ĕre, -dī, -sum, grasp; grasp (with the mind), comprehend.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, v. tr., leave; **superis concessit ab oris,** he left the realms above (Verg. 91).

concidō, -ere, -dī, no sup., fall down (**cado**).

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., win over, reconcile.

concilium, -ī, N., a meeting, assembly; **habere concilium,** to hold a meeting (c. iv, 19).

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., shout, or cry out together.

concrescō, -crēvī, -crētum, v. intr., grow together.

concrētus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **concresco,** used as an adj., matted.

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, v. intr., run together, rush.

concursus, -ūs, M., attack; **ex eo concursu,** from that collision (c. v, 10).

concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, shake vigorously (**cum quatio**).

condensus, a, um, adj., very thick.

condiciō, -ōnis, F., terms.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., found, establish, build.

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., forgive, pardon.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, pl., M., *the Condrusi*, a people of north-eastern Gaul, on the right bank of the Mosa (*Meuse*) in the district of the modern *Namur* and *Liège*.

condūcō, -ere,- duxī,- ductum, v. tr., bring together, hire.

conferciō, -īre -fersī -fertum, v. tr., pack together; to cause to take close order; **legione conferta,** owing to the legion being in close order (c. iv, 32).

conferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātum, v. tr., bring together, gather, collect; **se conferre,** to betake oneself.

confertus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **confercio,** used as an adj. in close array.

confestim, adv., immediately after the battle.

conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., do thoroughly; **bello confecto,** when the war was over (c. iv, 16); **rem conficere,** to complete a matter (c. iv, 11); **itinere confecto,** after the march was made (c. iv, 14).

confīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, semi-dep., v. intr., trust thoroughly.

confīgō, fīgere, -fixī, -fixum, v. tr., pierce.

confirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., establish: **pace confirmata,** when peace was made (c. iv, 28).

confiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, confess, acknowledge (**fateor**).

conflīgō, -ere, -flixī, -flictum, v. tr., strike; **proelio confligere,** to engage in battle (c. v, 15).

confundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour together, confuse.

congemō, -ere, -uī, no sup., groan, deeply (**con,** intensive).

congerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum, heap together.

congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, v. tr., meet, charge; **inter se congredi,** to charge each other.

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw together (at a point); **in fugam conjicere,** to put to flight; **se in fugam conjicere,** to betake oneself to flight (c. iv, 12); **culpam in aliquem conjicere,** to cast the blame on some one (c. v, 27); **in vincula conjicere,** to throw into prison (c. iv, 27).

conjugium, -ī, N., wedlock; husband (**jungo,** root JUG).

conjungō, -ere, -junxī, junctum, v. tr., unite, join.

conjunx, -ugis, M. and F., one joined; husband, wife, spouse (**cum, jungo**).

conjūrātiō, -ōnis, F., league; **facere conjurationem,** to form a league (c. iv, 30).

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, endeavor, attempt.

consanguinitās, -ātis, F., blood-relationship, kin.

conscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scensum, v. tr., embark in, mount; **in navem conscendere,** to embark on a vessel (c. iv, 23; v, 7); **in equum conscendere,** to mount a horse.

conscius, -a, -um, adj., conscious, knowing my purpose (Verg. 99), **agmina conscia,** confederate bands (Verg. 267).

consequor, -sequī, -secūtus (or **sequūtus**) **sum,** v. tr. dep., follow, follow up.

conserō, -ere, seruī, -sertum, v. tr., join together, unite, bring together; **proelium** or **pugnam** or **manum conserere,** to engage in battle (Verg. 397).

consīdo, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, v. intr., settle, halt; **copiae considunt,** the forces encamp (c. v, 9).

consilium, -ī, N., plan, design; wisdom, prudence; **capere consilium,** to form a plan (c. v, 8) **inire consilium,** to adopt a plan (c. iv, 32); **communi consilio,** after joint deliberation (c. v, 6); **publico consilio,** by a public plan (c. v, 1); **consilio instituto,** from carrying out his appointed plan (c. v, 4).

consimilis, -e, adj., very like, like in every particular.

consistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, v. intr., stand, halt; consist of; **consistit in carne,** it consists of flesh; **in fluctibus est consistendum,** they had to keep their footing among the waves (c. iv, 24), stand still (Verg. 67).

consōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., console, comfort, cheer (c. v, 4).

conspectus, -ūs, M., sight appearance; **conspectū in medio,** amid the gazing throng (Verg. 67).

conspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., observe, see.

conspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., see, get a sight of, espy.

constat, -stāre, -stitit, impers. v., it is agreed, well known.

constituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, v. tr., draw up; **aciem constituere,** to draw up a line of battle (c. iv, 35); **hiberna constituere,** to appoint the winter quarters (c. iv, 38); **classem, navem constituere,** to moor a fleet, a ship: **die constituta,** on a set day; **his rebus constitutis,** when this was arranged (c. v, 5).

constō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, v. intr., be formed; impers. **constat,** it is admitted, it is certain.

consuescō, -suescere, -suēvī, -suētum, v. intr., become accustomed (c. v, 7, 21).

consuētūdō, -inis, F., custom, habit; **ex consuetudine,** according to custom (c. iv, 32).

consul, -ulis, M., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates chosen annually at Rome.

consulō, -ere, -uī, ultum, v. tr., deliberate, plan; **alicui consulere,** to consult for one's benefit; **aliquem consulere,** to ask one's advice; **in aliquem consulere,** to take measures against one; **consulere sibi,** to look after himself; **civitati consulere,** to take measures for the interest of the state (c. v, 3).

consultō, adv., on purpose, designedly; often **de consulto**; **consulto cedere,** to purposely retreat (c. v, 16).

consultum, -ī, N., decree, resolution, decision.

consūmō, -ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum, v. tr., spend, waste; **tempus consumere,** to waste time; **aestatem consumere,** to spend the summer (c. v, 4); **magna parte diei consumpta,** after a great part of the day had been spent (c. v, 9).

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum, v. tr., despise, hold in contempt.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, v. intr., hasten to, push forward; **in fines Sugambrorum contendit,** he marches into the territories of the Sugambri (c. iv, 18; iv, 37; v, 9); **remis contendere,** to strive at the oars (c. v, 8); **dispari proelio contendere,** to fight an unequal battle (c. v, 16).

contentiō, -ōnis, F., struggling; gaining a battle.

contentus, -a, -um, adj. (with abl.), content with.

contestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., invoke.

contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, v. tr., weave, bind together.

contextus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **contexo,** used as an adj., interwoven.

conticescō, ere, -ticuī, no sup., v. intr., be silent.

continens, -ntis (properly pres. part. of **contineo,** used as an) adj., with **terra** understood; literally, the uninterrupted land, the continent, *i.e.*, Gaul. **bella continentia,** uninterrupted wars (c. v, 11).

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, v. tr., hold together, bound, restrain, hem in; se continere, to keep themselves together (c. iv, 34); civitatem in officio continere, to keep the state loyal (c. v, 3); in officio continere, to keep him loyal (c. v, 7).

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactum, v. tr., touch, extend to, reach.

continuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous.

contorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, v. tr., hurl vigorously (Verg. 52).

contrā, prep. (with acc. only), against, opposite to; contra Gallias, facing the divisions of Gaul (c. iv, 20); contra Galliam, facing Gaul, *i.e.*, France (c. v, 13).

contrā, adv., contrary to; contrā atque esset dictum, contrary to what had been said (c. iv, 13).

contrahō, -ere, -traxī, tractum, v. tr., draw together, collect.

contrārius, -a, -um, adj., opposite, contrary.

convellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, v. tr., rend, tear away.

conveniō, īre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr. and intr., come together, assemble; with acc., interview, meet.

conventus, -ūs, M., an assembly, assize; conventum peragere, to hold an assize (c. v, 1).

convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., turn, turn about; in fugam convertere, to turn in flight; animi conversi, our feelings were changed (Verg. 73).

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., summon, assemble.

convolvō, -ere, volvī, -volūtum, v. tr., roll together.

coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, v. intr. dep., of a storm; arise, spring up.

cōpia, -ae, F., abundance, plenty, pl., copiae, forces, supplies; summis copiis, with all his forces (c. v, 17); copias instruere, to draw up troops (c. v, 18).

cor, cordis, N., heart.

cōram, prep. (with abl.), face to face with, in presence of; coram populo, in presence of the people; coram perspicit, he sees in person (c. v, 11).

Coroebus, -ī, M., *Coroebus*, son of Mygdon, a suitor of Cassandra (Verg. 341).

corpus -oris, N., body.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, v. tr., seize violently, carry off.

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break in pieces, destroy, ruin, bribe.

Cōrus (or Caurus), ī, M., the N.-W. wind.

coruscus, -a, -um, adj., gleaming.

cotīdiānus -a, -um, adj., daily.

cotīdiē, adj., daily.

costa, -ae, F., rib.

Cotta, -ae, M., see Arunculeius.

Crassus, -ī, M., *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, surnamed Dives (the Rich), was a member of the First Triumvirate along with Caesar and Pompey (60 B.C.). He fell at Carrhae, 53 B.C. in a war against the Parthians.

crātēr,-ēris, M., mixing-bowl (*κρατήρ*, *κεράννυμι*).

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., numerous, frequent.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr. and intr., trust, believe (see note Verg. 371).

crescō, crescere, crēvī, crētum, v. intr., increase, grow, grow up.

crētus, -a -um, pref. part. pass. of crēsco, sprung from (Verg. 74).

Crēūsa, -ae, E., *Creüsa*, wife of Æneas.

crīmen, -inis, N., charge (Verg. 65).

crīnis, -is, F., hair; passis crinibus, with hair all loose (Verg. 404).

cruciātus, -ūs, M., torture.

crūdēlis, -e, adj., cruel, hard-hearted.

cruentus, -a, -um, adj., bloody.

culmen, -inis, N., roof.

culpa, -ae, F., blame; culpam conjicere, to throw the blame (c. iv, 27).

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame, hold guilty (culpa).

cum, prep. (with abl.), with. along with; enclitic with me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quibus, as mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum.

cum (also written quum), conj., when, after, since, although; cum... tum, both...and, cum (or quum) primum, as soon as.

cumulus, -ī, M., heap.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., delay, hesitate, doubt.

cunctus, -a, -um, adj., all together, in a body (Verg. 409).

cupidē, adv., eagerly.

cupīdō, -inis, F., desire.

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., desirous of (with genitive); **cupidus rerum novarum**, anxious for a change of government (c. v, 6).

cupiō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītum, v. tr., long for, wish, desire.

cupressus, -ī, F., cypress (κυπάρισσος).

cūr, adv., why? for what purpose?

cūra, -ae, F., care, anxiety.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., care for; in Caesar always with acc. of object and gerundive part.; **exercitum transportandum curare**, to cause the army to be transported (c. iv, 29); **naves aedificandas curare**, to have ships built (c. v, 1).

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, v. intr., run; **curritur**, they run.

currus, -ūs, M., chariot.

cursus, -ūs, M., a running (c. iv, 35); voyage; **tenere cursum**, to hold on their course (c. iv, 28; Verg. v); passage (c. v, 13).

curvus, -a, -um, adj., bent, winding.

cuspis, -idis, F., spear.

custōs, -ōdis, M., guard, watch.

Cybelē, -ēs, F., *Cybele*, a Phrygian goddess.

D

Danaī, -ōrum, M., pl., the Greeks.

Dardania, -ae, F., Troy.

Dardanidae, -ārum, M., the descendants of Dardanus, *i.e.*, the Trojans.

datus, perf. part. of **do**.

dē, prep. (with abl.), of, from, concerning; **his de rebus certior factus**, being informed of these events; **de tertia vigilia**, after the third watch was set (c v, 9); **multis de causis**, for many reasons; **qua de causa**, and for this reason; **de oppidis demigrare**, to remove from the towns; **de improviso**, unexpectedly (c. v, 22).

dea, -ae, F., goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought, (**de, habeo**).

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., retire, leave, depart from; **e vita decessit**, he died.

decem, indecl. card. num., ten.

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, v. tr., decree.

decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., tenth.

dēclīvis, -e, adj., sloping.

decōrus, -a, -um, adj., graceful.

dēcrētum, -ī, N., decree, decision; **stare decreto**, to abide by a decision.

dēcurrō, -ere, -currī, or **-cucurrī, cursum**, run down.

decus, -oris, N., ornament, honor.

dēdecus, -oris, N., disgrace; **dedecus admittere**, to commit a disgraceful act (c. iv, 25).

dēditiō, -ōnis, F., surrender; **in deditionem accipere** (or **recipere**), to receive on surrender; **in deditionem venire**, to surrender.

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., give up, surrender.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead away, bring down, withdraw; **navem deducere**, to launch a vessel; **suos deducere**, to withdraw their men (c. iv, 30).

dēfatīgātus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, exhausted.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, F., revolt, rebellion.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, fensum, v. tr., defend, repel, guard.

dēfensor, -ōris, M., defender.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., carry down or away; report, announce; **paulo infra deferri**, to be carried a little farther down (c. iv, 36); **Caesaris mandata deferre**, to bear the orders of Caesar (c. iv, 27); offer (c. v, 6); report (c. v, 6).

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., weary, exhausted.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., fail, be insufficient, run short; **si tempus anni deficeret**, if the time of the year was insufficient (c. iv, 20); **ab amicitia populi Romani deficere**, to cast off the alliance of the Roman people (c. v, 3); **deficit ignis**, the fire fails (Verg. 505).

dēfīgō, fīgere, -fixī, -fixum, v. tr., fix, fasten, drive down (c. v, 18).

dēfixus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **defigo** (c. v, 18).

dēflāgrō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, v. intr., be burned down.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, v. intr. and tr., flee from, avoid.

dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw down, cast down; **de spe dejectus**, disappointed in hope: **magno sui cum periculo dejici**, to be driven down with great danger to themselves (c. iv. 28).

dēgener, -eris, adj., unworthy of the race, degenerate (de, "from"; genus, "race").

deinceps, adv., one after the other, in succession, in turn

deinde, adv., thereafter, afterwards, then, next.

Dēiphobus, -ī, M., *Deiphobus*, son of Priam.

dēlātus, see dēfero.

dēlābor, lābī, lapsus sum, v. dep., slip.

dēlectus, -a, -um, adj., chosen.

delecta corpora virum = delectos viros (Verg. 17).

dēligō, -āre, āvī, ātum, v. tr., fasten; navem ad ancoram deligare, to anchor.

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum, v. tr., choose, select, levy.

dēlitescō, -litescere, -lituī, no sup., v. intr., lie hid, lie in ambush.

dēlubrum, -ī, N., shrine.

dēmens, -ntis, M., foolish (Verg. 94).

dēmetō, -ere, -messuī, -messum, v. tr., cut down, reap.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., move from, depart from, emigrate.

dēminuō, -ere, -minuī, -minūtum, v. tr., lessen, impair.

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, missum, v. tr., send down; se animo demittere, to lose heart; demissum lapsi per funem, gliding down by a hanging rope (Verg. 261).

dēmō, -ere, dempsī, demptum, take away (de-emo).

dēmonstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show, state, mention; explain.

dēmoror, -āri, -ātus sum, keep waiting, delay.

dēnī, ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., companies of ten (c. v, 14).

dēnique, adv., at last, finally; in a word, in short.

densus, -a, -um, adj., thick, closely packed, crowded.

dēnuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., announce, declare, threaten, order.

dēpascor, -pascī, -pastus sum, v. dep., feed upon (Verg. 215).

dēpereō, -perīre, -periī (perīvī), no sup., v. intr., be lost, perish.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., lay aside, cast away; animam deponere, to relinquish his life; spem deponere, to give up hope (c. v, 19).

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v, tr. dep., beg for mercy; recusandi aut deprecandi causa, for the purpose of denying the fact or of begging him for mercy (c. v. 6).

descendō, -ere, -dī, -sum, go down, descend (scando, "climb").

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, v. tr., desert, leave.

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., deserted.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wish for, long for, want; neque ulla omnino navis desideratur, not a single ship is lost at all (c. v, 23).

dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum, v. intr.. leap down, dismount.

dēsinō, -sinere, -sīvī, -(-siī), -situm, v. intr., leave off, cease, stop.

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, v. intr., leave off, give over, cease from; proelio desistere, to give up the battle; sententia desistere, to give up the notion.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., appoint.

dēsuescō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, render unaccustomed; desuetus, unaccustomed.

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., be wanting, fail, be lacking.

dēsuper, adv., from above.

dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum, v. tr., frighten, frighten off.

dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold or keep back; detain (de, teneo).

dētrīmentum, -ī, N., loss, damage.

deus, -ī, M., a god.

devolvō, volvere, -volvī, -volūtum, v. tr., roll down.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, on the right hand.

dextera or dextra (with manus understood), adj., the right hand.

dīcō, dīcere, dixī, dictum, v. tr., say, speak, tell, appoint; causam dicere, to plead a cause; de quo ante ab nobis dictum est, of whom we have made mention before (c. v, 6); mirabile dictu, wonderful to relate (Verg. 174).

dictum, -ī, N., word, order, command.

diēs, -ēī, M. or F. (in sing.), M. (in pl.), day.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, v. tr., spread, scatter; put off,

delay; inter se differre, to differ from each other; multum differunt, they differ greatly (c. v, 14).

difficultās, -ātis, F., difficulty, trouble.

diffugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, v. intr., flee in different directions.

dīgerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum, v. tr., expound.

dignitās, -ātis, F., splendor; tribuere dignitatem, to treat with respect (c. v. 7).

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy of deserving.

dīgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, depart (dis, gradior).

dījūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., decide, determine.

dīlectus, -ūs, M., levy.

dīlectus, -a, -um, adj., chosen.

dīligō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum. v. tr., value, esteem, love.

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fight; cum dimicaretur, since the battle was fought (c. v, 16).

dīmidium, -ī, N., middle, half; dimidio minor, half the size (c. v, 13).

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send in different directions.

Diomēdēs, -is, M., *Diomede*, a famous Greek hero, son of Tydeus.

dīripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum, tear asunder; plunder (rapio).

dīrus, -a, -um, adj., fearful, terrible, dread.

dis, (abbreviated) di-), inseparable prefix, apart, asunder, in pieces.

dīs, dītis, adj., rich; comp., dītior; sup., dītissimus.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., depart, withdraw; ab armis discedere, lay down arms; ab signis discedere, to desert their standards (c. v, 16).

discessus, -ūs, M., departure.

discō, discere, didicī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., learn.

discors, -cordis, adj., different.

disjiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, dash apart, destroy (jacio, throw).

dispār, -paris, adj., unequal, unlike; dispari proelio, in an unequal contest (c. v, 16).

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum, v. tr., scatter, disperse.

dispersus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of dispergo, used as an) adj., scattered.

dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., set in order, draw up (of forces).

dispositus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass., arranged.

distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, v. tr., assign, distribute.

districtus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of distringo, used as an) adj., occupied with, busy.

diū, adv., long, for a long time; comp., diūtius; sup., diūtissimē.

diurnus, -a, -um, adj., by day.

dīva, -ae, F., goddess.

dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum, v. tr., separate.

dīversus, a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of diverto used as an) adj., in different directions; some one way, some another way.

dīves, -itis, adj., rich; comp., dīvitior; sup., dīvitissimus.

Divicō, -ōnis, M., *Divico*, chief of the Helvetii, who led an army against Cassius, B.C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar, B.C. 58.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, v. tr., divide, separate.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, adj., divine.

dīvus, -ī, M., =deus, god.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, v. tr., give; in fugam dare, to put to flight (c. iv, 26); dare operam, to take pains (c. v, 7); dare arbitros, to appoint judges (c. v, 1); vela dare, set sail (Verg. 135); vitam dare, to grant him his life (Verg. 145); ruinam dare, to fall in ruins (Verg. 310); dare poenas, to be punished (Verg. 365).

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, v. tr., teach, inform, point out.

doctor, -ōris, M., a teacher.

doctrīna, -īnae, F., teaching, learning, knowledge.

doctus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of doceo used as an) adj., learned, experienced.

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum, v. intr. and tr., grieve, be grieved.

Dolopēs, -um, M., pl., *Dolopes*, a tribe of southern Thessaly.

dolor, -ōris, M., grief, pain; hoc dolore exardescere, to be aroused through grief of this (c. v, 4).

dolus, -ī, M., craft, fraud; per dolum, by deceit (c. iv, 13).

domesticus, -a, -um, adj., domestic; bellum domesticum, civil war (c. v, 9).

dominātus, -ūs, M., tyranny.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hold sway.

Domitius, -ī, M., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul with Appius Claudius, B.C. 54. He was a staunch aristocrat, and brother-in-law of Marcus Cato. He fell at Pharsalia, B.C. 48, by the hand of Antony.

domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., tame, subdue.

domus, -ūs, F., a house, home; **domi**, at home (H. L., 119, 4); **domum**, home; **domo**, from home.

dōnec, conj., till, until.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., give, present.

dōnum, -ī, N., gift, present.

Dōricus, -a, -um, adj., *Doric*= *Grecian.*

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. intr., sleep, rest.

dracō, ōnis, M., serpent.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain.

ducentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, duxī, ductum, v. tr., lead, draw; **ductus**, chosen (Verg. 201); **gemitus ducere**, utter groans (Verg. 288).

ductor, -ōris, M., leader.

dūdum, adv., a while ago, lately.

dulcis, -e, adj., sweet.

dum, conj., until (Verg. 88, 134).

Dumnorix, -igis, M., *Dumnorix*, chief of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed while trying to escape from Caesar (C. v, 7).

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj. pl., two.

duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve.

duodēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., twelve at a time, companies of twelve (C. v, 14).

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., double; **numerum obsidum duplicavit**; he demanded double the number of hostages (C. iv, 36).

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harden, make hard.

Dūrus, see **Laberius**.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult.

dux, ducis, M., leader, general, guide.

Dymās, -antis, M., *Dymas*, a Trojan.

E

ē (ē before consonants; **ex**, generally before vowels, sometimes before consonants); prep. (with abl.); from, out of, in accordance with, in consequence of, on; **una ex parte**, on one side, **ex equo**, on horseback, **ex itinere**, on the march; **ex litteris**, in accordance with the despatch (C. iv, 38); **ex usu**, of advantage (C. v, 6); **ex hac fuga protinus**, immediately after this defeat (C. v, 17); **duabus ex partibus**, on two sides (C. v, 21).

Eburōnēs, -um, pl. M., *the Eburones*, a Belgic tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine, dependents of the Treveri.

edax, -ācis, adj., consuming, devouring (edo).

ecce, interj., lo! behold!

ēdisserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, v. trans., tell.

ēdūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead out, lead forth; raise aloft (Verg. 286, 461).

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, v. tr., bring forth (Verg. 297).

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., effect, make; **opus efficere**, to complete a work; with **ut** and subjunctive, cause that; **reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit**, he caused that it might be suitably sailed with the rest, *i.e.*, he had the rest put in sailing trim (C. iv, 31).

effor, -ārī, -ātus sum, speak out, utter.

effigiēs, -ēī, F., image.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, v. tr. and intr., escape.

effugium, -ī, N., escape.

effulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī, no sup., shine forth.

effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., pour out; **se effundere**, to spread out, scatter.

egens, -tis, adj., needy.

egēnus, -a, -um, adj., needy, in want, destitute.

egeō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., am needy; with abl., am in need of.

ego, meī, pers. pron. I; pl. **nōs**, we.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, v. intr. dep., go out; disembark; **navi egredi**, to disembark (C. iv, 21; 23).

ēgregiē, adv., admirably, splendidly.

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., eminent, marked, remarkable.

ēgressus, -ūs, M., landing (c. v, 8).

ējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., cast out, throw out; **in litore ejicere,** to cast up on shore (c. v, 10); **ex silvis ejicere,** to rush out of the woods (c. v, 15); **se in agros ejicere,** to spread themselves over the territory (c. v, 19).

ējusmodī (=ejus modi), of such a kind, of such a sort.

ēlābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum, v. dep., escape from.

ēmicō, -āre, -uī, -ātum, v. intr., leap (Verg. 174).

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send out, hurl.

ēmoveō, -ēre, ēmōvī, ēmōtum, v. intr., move out.

enim (placed after the first emphatic word in its clause), conj., for, in fact.

ensis, -is, M., sword.

eō, adv., thither, to that place, to such a degree; correlative of **quo** before comparatives; **eo magis,** so much the more (c. v, 1).

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, v. intr., go, march.

eōdem, adv., to the same place, in the same direction, to the same purpose.

Ēōus, -a, -um, adj., *Eastern.*

Epēos, -ī, M., *Epeos*, a Greek who built the wooden horse.

Ēpytus, -ī, M., *Epytus*, a Trojan.

ēques, -itis, M., a horseman, cavalry soldier; pl. **equites,** cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., belonging to horsemen, cavalry.

equidem, adv., truly, indeed.

equitātus, -ūs, M. cavalry.

equus, -ī, M., horse.

ēreptus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass., snatched.

Erīnys, -os, F., *Erinys*, one of the Furies.

ergō, conj., therefore, accordingly.

ēripiō, ripere, ripuī, -reptum, v. trans., snatch.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., wander, err, be wrong.

error, -ōris, M., mistake.

ērubescō, -ere, -uī, no sup., v. incept. (**ex, rubesco,** "become red at"), feel shame about.

ēruō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tear or dig out; overthrow.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., attack, sortie.

esseda, -ae, F., a war chariot of the Britons.

essedārius, -ī, M., a charioteer.

essedum, -ī, N., same as **esseda.**

et, conj., and; **et...et,** both...and: =**etiam** (Verg. 49).

etiam, adv., even.

etsī, conj., even if, although.

Eurus, -ī, M., *Eurus*, the east wind.

Eurypylus, -ī, M., *Eurypylus*, a Trojan.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, v. intr., go forth, ascend.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., come to pass, happen.

ēvenit, it happens.

ēventus, -ūs, M., result; **ex eventū,** from the mishap (c. iv, 31).

ēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., overthrow, drive out, destroy.

ēvincō, -ere -vīcī, -victum, conquer utterly.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v, tr., call out, summon.

ex: see ē.

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., test; **ad certum pondus examinatus,** of a fixed standard weight, literally, weighed to a fixed weight (c. v, 12).

exardescō, -ere, -arsī, -arsum, v. intr., be kindled, burst forth; **hoc dolore exarsit,** he was roused through grief at this (c. v, 4).

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., leave, depart.

excellō, -ere, -celluī, -celsum, v. intr., excel, surpass.

excelsus, -a, -um, adj., high.

excidium, -ī, N., destruction.

excīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut away (Verg. 481).

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., take the place of (c. v, 17).

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., arouse.

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., cry out, shout.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., shut out, prevent; **a navigatione excludere,** to prevent from sailing (c. v, 23).

excutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, v. tr., shake off (Verg. 223); arouse (Verg. 302).

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., justify (of a charge).

exemplum, -ī, N., an example, sample, pattern.

exeō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, v. intr., go out.

exerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, v. tr., exercise, train.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., training, practise, exercise.

exercitus, -ūs, M., a trained band; an army; **exponere exercitum**, to land an army (c. v, 9).

exhālō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., breathe out.

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., drive out, pass the time; **exacta hieme**, when winter had passed, at the end of winter.

exiguitās, -ātis, F., shortness.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., small, scanty.

exilium, -ī, N., exile.

existimātiō, -ōnis, F., reputation.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., suppose, think, consider.

exitium, -ī, N., destruction.

exitiālis, -e, adj., ruinous.

exitus, -ūs, M., issue, end.

exoptātus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **exopto**, used as an adj., longed for (Verg. 138).

exoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wish, desire.

exorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, v. dep., arise.

expediō, -īre, -īvī(iī), -ītum, v. tr., extricate.

expedītus, -a, -um, adj., lightly equipped, free, unencumbered, without baggage; **ad usum expeditior**, more efficient for service (c. iv, 25); **expeditus receptus**, a quick retreat (c. iv, 33); **legiones expeditae**, legions without baggage (c. v, 2).

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive out, expel.

expendō, -ere, -pendī, -pensum, v. tr., pay.

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, v. dep., try, test.

expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill up.

explicō, -āre, -āvī, (plicuī), -plicātum (-plicitum), v. tr., set forth, tell (Verg. 362).

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., investigate, reconnoitre.

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., place out, deploy; disembark; **expositae hostium copiae**, the forces of the enemy deployed (c. iv, 23); **cum essent expositi milites**, when the forces had landed (c. iv, 37); **exposito exercitu**, when the army had landed (c. v, 9).

exprōmō, -ere, -prompsī, -promptum, v. tr., utter (Verg. 280).

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., take by storm, capture.

exsanguis, -sangue, adj., pale.

exscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, v. tr., destroy (Verg. 177).

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wait for, await; **in ancoris exspectare**, to wait at anchor (c. iv, 23): wait for (Verg. 358); long expected (Verg. 283).

exstinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctum, v. tr., extinguish, kill.

exstō, stāre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., be out; **capite solo ex aqua exstare**, to have their heads alone out of the water (c. v, 18).

exsuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v.tr., tower above, conquer.

exsultans, -tis, adj., rejoicing.

exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., leap forth.

exterus, -a, -um, adj. (rarely used in positive), outside, foreign, strange; comp., **exterior**; sup., **extrēmus**.

extemplō, adv., immediately.

extrā, prep. (with acc.), outside of, beyond.

extrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., draw out, withdraw; **id facile extrahere**, to waste this easily (c. v, 22).

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of **exterus**) of place or time, last; **hieme extrema**, at the end of winter; **extremi**, rear-guard (c. v, 10); **flamma extrema**, expiring flame (Verg. 431); **audere extrema**, to dare the greatest dangers (Verg. 349); **extrema in morte**, in death's extremity.

exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, v. tr., strip off, deprive; **exutas vinclis palmas**, her hands freed from chains (Verg. 153).

exuviae, -ārum, F. pl., spoils.

ēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, v. tr., overcome (Verg. 497).

F

faber, -brī, M., a workman, wright.

fabricātor, -ōris, M., contriver (Verg. 264).

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make contrive.

faciēs, -ēī, F., appearance.

facile, adv., easily, readily; comp., **facilius**; sup., **facillimē**.

facilis, -e, adj., easy.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, v. tr., do, make; **magni facere**, to value highly; **pluris facere**, to value more highly; **castra facere**, to pitch a camp; **iter facere**, to make a march; **vim facere**, to do violence; **imperata facere**, to obey commands; **facere periculum**, to make an attempt (c. iv, 21); **iter facere**, to make a march (c. iv, 32); **bellum populo Romano facere**, to make war against the Roman people (c. iv, 22); **proelio facto**, after the battle was fought (c. iv, 27); **rebellionem facere**, to renew the war (c. iv, 30); **vim facere**, offer violence (c. v, 7); **pro sano facere**, to act as a sane man (c. v, 7). (For passive see **fio**.

factum, -ī, N., action, deed.

facultās, -ātis, F., opportunity.

fāgus, -ī, F., beech tree.

fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, v. tr., deceive.

falsus, -a, -um, adj., false.

fāma, -ae, F., renown (Verg. 82).

famulus, -ī, M., attendant.

fandō, abl. of gerund of **for**, speak.

fās (indecl. noun), N., right; lawful (Verg. 157, 402).

fastīgium, -ī, N., roof.

fātālis, -e, adj., deadly.

fateor, fatērī, fassus sum, v. dep., confess.

fātum, ī, N., destiny, fate.

fātur, 3rd sing. pres. indic. of (**for**) **fari, fatus sum**, speak.

faucēs, -ium, F. pl., jaws.

fax, facis, F., torch.

fēlīciter, adv., luckily, prosperously.

fēmineus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to a woman.

fenestra, -ae, F., window.

fere, adv., almost, nearly.

feriō, -īre, no perf., no sup., v. tr., strike.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, v. tr., bring, bear, carry, endure; **fertur**, it is said; **auxilium ferre**, to bring aid; **injurias ferre**, to inflict wrongs; **legem ferre**, to propose a law; **consuetudo fert**, the custom admits of (c. iv, 32); **impetum ferre**, to make an attack (c. iv, 35); **graviter ferre**, to be annoyed (c. v, 6); **ut fert illorum opinio**, according to their ideas (c. v, 13).

ferreus, -a, -um, adj., of iron, iron.

ferrum, -ī, N., iron; **acies ferri**, the edge of the sword (Verg. 333).

ferus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, bold.

fessus, -a, -um, adj., weary.

festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., hasten.

festus, -a, -um, adj., festal.

fētus, -a, um, adj., pregnant, filled with.

fictus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of **fingo** used as an) adj., idle, feigned, false.

fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful, trusty.

fīdens, -ntis, adj., confident (Verg. 61).

fidēs, -ēī, F., faith, loyalty; **in fidem recipere**, to receive under one's protection (c. iv. 22); **fidem sequi**, to be loyal to (c. v, 20); **eos in fidem recipere**, to admit them to his protection (c. iv, 22); **fidem interponere**, to pledge his word (c. v, 6); promise (Verg. 142).

fīdo, fīdere, fīsus sum, v. semi-dep., trust, confide.

fīdūcia, -ae, F., trust, confidence.

fīdus, -a, -um, adj., trustworthy.

fīgō, -ere, fixī, fixum, v. tr., fasten: impress (Verg. 490).

figūra, -ae, F., form, shape.

fīlia, -ae, F., daughter.

fīlius, -ī, M., son.

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, v. tr., form, shape, make.

fīnis, -is, M. and F., end, limit; pl., **fīnes**, M., boundaries, territories.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., bordering upon, adjoining; in pl., **finitimi**, **-orum**, neighbors.

fīō, fierī, factus sum (pass. of **faciō**), become, take place; **fit**, it happens; **certior fieri**, to be informed; **non sine causa fieri**, to be not without a reason (c. v, 6).

firmiter, adv., firmly; **firmiter insistere**, to stand firmly, to get a good footing (c. iv, 26).

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong.

fixus, -a, -um, adj., fixed, resolute.

flagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., demand, ask earnestly.

flāgrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., blaze.

flamma, -ae, F., flame.

flectō, -ere, flexuī, flexum, v. tr., bend, turn.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, v. intr. weep.

flētus, -ūs, M., tears, weeping.

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, v. intr., blow.

fluctus, -ūs, M., flood, wave.

flūmen, -inis, N., river.

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, v. intr., flow, ebb.

fluvius, -ī, M., river.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, v. tr., dig.

foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., mar, defile.

fons, fontis, M., fountain.

for, fārī, fātus sum, v. tr. dep., speak, say.

fore=futurum esse (fut. inf. of **sum**).

forem=essem.

foris, -is, F., door, gate.

forma, -ae, F., form, shape.

formīdō, -inis, F., dread; **formidine capti,** overcome with fear (Verg. 384).

formō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., shape.

fors, -tis, F., chance, luck (Verg. 94); used adverbially=**forte** (Verg. 138).

fortasse, adv., perhaps, by chance.

forte, adv., perhaps, by chance (Verg. 81; 342).

fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave.

fortiter, adv., courageously, bravely.

fortūna, -ae, F., success, good fortune (Verg. 385).

Fortūna, -ae, F., *Fortuné*, goddess of Fortune (Verg. 79).

fossa, -ae, F., ditch, trench.

fractus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **frango,** broken.

fragor, -ōris, M., breaking, crash.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum, v. tr., break.

frāter, -tris, M., a brother.

fraus, fraudis, F., deceit, deception.

fremitus, -ūs, M., noise, din (of battle, Verg. 336).

fretum, -ī, N., strait, sea.

frīgidus, -a, -um, adj., cold.

frīgus, -oris, N., cold.

frons, frondis, F., bough.

frūgēs, -um, pl. F., meal; **salsae fruges,** salted cake, used in sacrifice (Verg. 33).

frūmentārius, -a, um, adj., pertaining to corn; **res frumentaria,** a supply of corn; **inopia frumentaria,** want of corn.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., fetch corn, forage.

frūmentum, -ī, N., corn.

frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain.

fuga, -ae, F., flight; **in fugam dare,** to put to flight (c. iv, 26); **ex fuga recipere,** to recover from panic (c. iv, 27).

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, v. tr. and intr., flee, flee from, run away.

fugitīvus, -a, -um, adj., fleeing; as a noun, **fugitīvus, -ī,** M., a runaway slave.

fulgeō, ēre or **ere, fulsī,** no sup., v. intr., gleam, shine.

fulmen, -inis, N., thunderbolt.

fulvus, -a, -um, adj., tawny.

fūmō, -āre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., smoke.

fūmus, -ī, M., smoke.

funda, -ae, F., a sling.

fundāmentum, -ī, N., foundation.

funditor, -ōris, M., a slinger.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, v. tr., pour forth (Verg. 329); **exercitum fundere,** to rout an army.

fundus, -ī, M., bottom.

fūnis, -is, M., rope, cable.

fūnus, -eris, N., death.

furens, -tis, adj., raving; **furentibus Austris,** when the south winds rage (Verg. 304); **sponsa furens,** his prophetic betrothed (Verg. 345).

furiātus, -a, -um, adj., frenzied (Verg. 407).

furō, -ere, -uī, no sup., rave.

furor, -ōris, M., rage, madness, fury.

furtim, adv., by stealth.

futūrus, -a, -um, fut. part. of **sum**; **res futurae** or **futura** (neut. pl.), the future.

G

Galba, -ae, M., *Galba*; Servius Galba, great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba. He served under Caesar in Gaul, and was praetor 54 B.C. After Caesar's death he served against Antony in the war of Mutina, 43 B.C.

galea, -ae, F., helmet.

Gallī, -ōrum, pl. M., *the Gauls*; the people who inhabited **Gallia Transalpina** (or **Ulterior**), Further Gaul *(France)*, and **Gallia Cisalpina** (or **Citerior**), Hither Gaul *(Northern Italy)*.

Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul; in pl. **Galliae**, divisions of Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*.

gallīna, -ae, F., hen.

Gallus, -ī, M., *a Gaul*, an inhabitant of Gallia.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, v. intr., semi-dep., rejoice.

gaudium, -ī, N., joy, gladness, delight.

gāza, -ae, F., treasure.

gelidus, -a, -um, adj., cold, icy.

geminus, -ī, adj. twin-born; pl. **gemini=duo** (Verg. 203, 225, 415, 500).

gemitus, -ūs, M., a groan, sigh.

gener, -erī, M., a son-in-law.

genitor, -ōris, M., father.

gens, gentis, F., nation, race, tribe, clan.

genus, -eris, N., birth, kind; **amplissimo genere natus**, descended from a most illustrious family; **toto hoc in genere pugnae**, in all this kind of battle (c. v, 16).

Germānī, -ōrum, M. pl., *the Germans*.

Germānia, -ae, F., *Germany*.

Germānicus, -a, -um, adj., *German*.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German*.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, v. tr., carry, bear, carry on; **bellum gerere**, to wage war.

gladius, -ī, M., sword.

glomerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., gather together.

glōria, -ae, F., glory, fame.

Gorgō, or **ōn**, -ōnis, F., a Gorgon.

gradus, -ūs, M., step.

Grāiī, -ōrum, M. pl., *Greeks* (Verg. 149).

Grāius, -a, -um, adj., *Grecian* (Verg. 412).

grāmen, -inis, N., grass.

grātēs, only in nom. and acc. pl., F., thanks (**gratus**).

grātia, -ae, F., favor, influence (c. v, 4); pl. **gratiae**, thanks; **agere gratias**, to give thanks; **gratiam facere**, to pardon; **gratiam habere**, to feel thankful; **gratiam referre**, to return thanks; **gratiā** (abl. with genitive), for the sake of.

grātus, -a, um, adj., pleasing.

gravis, -e, adj., heavy.

gravitās, -ātis, F., weight, importance.

graviter, adv., heavily; **graviter ferre**, feel pained at (c. v, 4).

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make heavy, burden.

gressus, -ūs, M., step.

gūbernātor, -ōris, M., pilot, steersman.

gurges, -itis, M., whirlpool.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., taste.

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., have, hold, possess; regard, consider; **magni habere**, to value highly (c. iv, 21).

haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesum, v. intr., hold fast, stick to (with abl. or dat.).

hasta, -ae, F., spear.

haud, adv., not at all (negativing single words, especially adjectives and adverbs); with verbs chiefly in the phrase **haud scio an**, I don't know whether.

hauriō, -īre, **hausī, haustum**, v. tr., drink up.

hebetō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make dull (**hebes, hebetis**, "blunt").

Hector, -oris, M.: *Hector*, son of Priam and bravest of the Trojans, slain by Achilles after the latter had pursued him thrice round Troy. His body was dragged to the Grecian fleet at the wheels of Achilles' chariot, and was afterwards ransomed by the aged Priam, who, securing a twelve days' truce, performed the funeral obsequies. The story is to be found in Hom. Iliad, xxii and xxiv. See vv. 270 and 540-543.

hei, interj. with dat., alas!

Hecuba, -ae, F., *Hecuba*, wife of Priam and mother of Hector.

Helena, -ae, F., *Helen*, wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Eloped with Paris to Troy in fulfilment of Venus' promise to give Paris the most beautiful woman in the world for wife, in return for his awarding to her (Venus) the apple of Discord. Upon this fateful event hinged the Trojan war. At the close of the war she returned home with Menelaus, and in the Odyssey, Bk. IV, we find her discharging the duties of hostess-wife as peacefully as if nothing had happened. See, however, note on v. 567. In v. 569

she is called *Tyndaris*, i.e., *daughter of Tyndarus.*

hērēditās, -ātis, F., heirship, inheritance.

herī, adv., yesterday.

heu, interj., alas!

Hesperius, -a, -um, adj., Western.

hīberna, -ōrum, pl. N. (properly neut. pl. of the adj., **hibernus** agreeing with **castra** understood), winter quarters; **hiberna constituere**, to appoint the position of the winter quarters (c. iv, 38; **hiberna circumire**, to inspect the winter quarters (c. v, 2).

Hībernia, -ae, F., *Ireland.*

hīc, haec, hōc; dem. pron. this, he, she, it; **hic . . . ille**, the latter . . . the former.

hīc, adv., here; then, hereupon (Verg. 199, 386).

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., winter, pass the winter.

hiems, -is, F., winter, storm.

hinc, adv., hence, from this time (Verg. 99; 148).

Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain.*

hodiē, adv., to-day (=**hoc diē**).

homō, -inis, M. or F., a human being; man; pl. **hominēs**, inhabitants.

hōra, -ae, F., hour. The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal parts, each of which was called **hora**; so also with the night. The length of each **hora** would depend on the season of the year.

horrendus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., dread, shudder at.

horrescō, -ere, **horruī**, no sup., begin to shudder.

horribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, frightful

horridus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful.

horror, -ōris, M., dread.

hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, v. tr., dep., urge, cheer, encourage, incite.

hospes, -pitis, M., visitor, guest, friend, host.

hostia, -ae, F., a victim offered in sacrifice (see note, Verg. 156).

hostis, -is, M., an enemy.

hūc, adv., hither, here, to this place.

hūjusmodī, of this kind, of this sort.

hūmānus, -ā, -um, adj., civilized.

humerus, -ī, M., shoulder.

humī (locative), on the ground.

humilis, -e, adj., low, poor, humble.

humilitās, -ātis, F., lowness, lowness in the water (c. v, 1).

humus, -ī, F., ground.

Hypanis, -is, M., *Hypanis*, a Trojan.

I

ibi, adv., in that place, there.

ictus, -ūs, M., stroke.

Īda, -ae, F., *Mt. Ida*, near Troy.

Īdaeus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to Mt. Ida, *Idaean.*

idcircō, adv., on this account, for this reason, therefore.

īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pro., the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, convenient.

igitur, conj., therefore, accordingly, then.

ignārus, -a, um, adj., ignorant.

ignis, -is, M., fire.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., to be ignorant of.

ignoscō, -ere, **ignōvī, ignōtum**, v. intr. (with dat.), pardon.

Īliacus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to Ilium, *i.e.*, Troy.

īlicet, adv., straightway.

Īlium, -i; N. n.: *Ilium*, another name for *Troja*, *i.e.*, *Troy*, though Troja and Ilium seem to have been names applied to different districts of the same city. In recent years wonderful discoveries have been made through the excavations of Dr. Schliemann in the Troad. Remains of a prehistoric city of great wealth and grandeur have been unearthed beneath the ruins of the historical city, Ilium, on the site of the present town of Hissarlik. The destruction of the Homeric Ilium is usually assigned to 1184 B.C. The historic Ilium was founded about 700 B.C.

ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., not known, unknown.

illābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum, v. dep., glide into.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pro., that, that well known; he, she, it; **ille . . . hic**, the former . . . the latter.

illō, adv., to that place, thither; **eodem illo**, to that same place.

illūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsum, v. tr., mock, jeer at (Verg. 64).

Illyricum, -ī, N., *Illyricum*, a district comprising the modern *Dalmatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina.*

imāgō, -inis, F., form.

imbellis, -e, adj., unwarlike, useless.

imber, -bris, M., a shower.

immānis, -e, adj., vast, huge, enormous, immense.

Immanuentius, -ī, M., *Immanuentius*, father of Mandubracius (c. v, 20).

immisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, mixtum, v. intr., mingle with.

immensus, -a, -um, adj., immense.

immemor, -oris, adj., unmindful.

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send or drive into (the enemy's line); **se immittere**, rush into.

immixtus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **immisceō**, mingled with.

immo, adv., on the contrary, no indeed, yes indeed; used in answers to correct or modify either by contradicting or by strengthening.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.

impedīmentum, -ī, N., hindrance; pl. baggage (of an army); **sarcinae**, the kit of the individual soldiers.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., hamper, hinder; **religionibus impediri**, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6); **navigationem impedire**, to prevent sailing (c. v, 7); **animis impeditis**, when their attention was distracted (c. v, 7).

impedītus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **impedio** used as an) adj., hampered, impassable; **loca impedita**, inaccessible places (c. v, 19).

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., hurl forward.

imperātor, -ōris, M., commander-in-chief, general.

imperātum, -ī, N., command, order.

imperītus, -a, -um, adj., unskilled in, inexperienced in (with genitive, c. iv, 22).

imperium, -ī, N., command, authority, government; authority (c. iv, 21); power (c. v, 6); empire (Verg. 191).

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat.), command, order; **magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat**, he levies a large number of hostages from them (c. iv, 22; iv, 27).

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., obtain by request, obtain.

impetus, -ūs, M., attack, assault; **impetum sustinere**, to withstand an attack (c. iv, 37); **facere impetum**, to make an attack (c. v, 15).

impius, -a, -um, adj., wicked.

impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill up, fill.

implicō, āre, -plicāvī (or -plicuī), -plicātum (or plicitum), v. tr., entwine around (Verg. 215).

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring or carry to; import.

improbus, -a, -um, adj., bad, fierce (Verg. 356).

imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen; **de improviso**, unexpectedly, suddenly.

imprōvidus, -a, -um, adj., unsuspecting.

imprūdens, -tis, adj., not foreseeing, unwise; **imprudentibus nostris**, while our men were off their guard (c. v, 15).

imprūdentia, -ae, F., indiscretion, thoughtlessness.

īmus, -a, um, sup. of **inferus** (H. L., 93, 1).

in, prep. with (1) acc. (after words signifying motion), to, into, upon, against; (2) abl. (after words signifying rest), in, at, during, among; **in hiemem**, for the winter (c. iv, 29); **in primis**, especially (c. v, 6); **in itinere**, while on the march (c. iv, 11); **in ancoris**, at anchor.

inānis, -e, adj., empty, vain, useless.

incendium, -ī, N., fire.

incendō, -ere, -cendī, -censum, v. tr., set on fire, burn, inflame.

inceptum, -i, N., beginning; design (incipio).

incensus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **incendo**, used as an adj., burning, (Verg. 327).

incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain; **incertis ordinibus**, when their ranks were broken (c. iv, 32); erring (Verg. 224).

incidō, -ere, -cidī, no sup., fall upon.

incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., begin, commence.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., urge, arouse, encourage; **equis incitatis**, with their horses at full gallop (c. iv, 26, 33); **remis incitare**, to row hard (c. iv, 25).

inclēmentia, -ae, F., lack of pity, cruelty (**clemens**).

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., shut in.

inclutus, -a, um, adj., renowned.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.

incola, -ae, M., an inhabitant.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultum, v. tr., live in, inhabit.

incolumis, -e, adj. safe, in safety.

incomitātus, -a, -um, adj., unaccompanied.

incommodum, -ī, N., loss, disaster.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj., incredible.

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum (dat.), lean upon, press down (Verg. 205).

incursiō, -ōnis, F., inroad, invasion.

incurrō, -ere, currī (or cucurrī), cursum, run into or against.

incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., accuse, blame.

inde, adv., from that place, thence; after that, then.

indicium, -ī, N., sign, information.

indignor, ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., to be wrathful (Verg. 93).

indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy.

indomitus, -a, -um, adj., stubborn.

indulgeō, -ēre, -sī, -tum, with dat., yield to.

indutiae, -ārum, F. pl., a truce, armistice.

induō, -ere, -duī, -dūtum, v. tr., put on.

Indutiomārus, -ī, M., *Indutiomarus*, a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans (c. v, 2).

inēluctābilis, -e, adj., inevitable.

ineō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, v. tr. and intr., enter, enter upon; **inire consilium**, to form a plan (c. iv, 32; v, 23); **secunda inita vigilia**, at the beginning of the second watch (c. v, 23).

inermis, -e, adj., unarmed, defenceless.

iners, -ertis, adj., lifeless.

infāmia, -ae, F., ill report, infamy.

infandus, -a, -um, adj., unspeakable.

infēlix, -fēlīcis, adj., unhappy, unfortunate.

infensus, -a, -um, adj., hostile.

inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum, v. tr., carry in, bring in; **bellum hostibus inferre**, to make war on the enemy; **signa inferre**, to advance; **bello illato**, when the war was over (c. v, 12); **periculum inferebat**, bring danger (c. v, 16).

inferus, -a, -um, adj., below, lower; comp., **inferior**; sup., **infimus** or **imus**.

infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., stain.

infimus: see **inferus**.

infīnītus, -a, um, adj., boundless, immense.

infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, feeble.

infrā, (1) adv., below; (2) prep. (with acc.), below, beneath.

infula, -ae, F., fillet, a white and red band of woolen stuff worn upon the forehead as a sign of consecration.

ingeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., redouble.

ingens, -tis, adj., huge, great, vast.

ingrātus, -a, -um, adj., unthankful, thankless, ungrateful.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, v. tr., dep., enter upon.

ingruō, -ere, ingruī, no sup.; rush on.

inhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, v. tr., check, restrain.

injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw or cast into.

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly, hostile; as a noun, a private enemy.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj., uneven; disadvantageous, unjust.

initium, -ī, N., beginning, commencement; **in initio**, in the beginning.

injūria, -ae, F., wrong, outrage, injustice.

innoxius, -a, -um, adj., harmless.

innuptus, -a, -um, adj., unwed.

inopia, -ae, F., want, scarcity, poverty.

inquit, (verb defective), says he.

insānus, -a, -um, adj., mad.

insānia, -ae, F., madness.

insciens, -tis, adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant; **Caesare insciente**, without the knowledge of Caesar (c. v, 7).

inscius, -a, -um, adj., not knowing, ignorant of a thing.

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus (or sequūtus) sum, v. tr. dep., overtake, attack; **insequi cedentes**, to overtake the retreating enemy (c. v, 16).

insērtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., put into.

insideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. tr., am seated in, occupy.

insidiae, -ārum, F. pl., ambush; hence, wiles (Verg. 195, 310).

insigne, -signis, N., badge, decoration.

insignis, -e, adj., noted, remarkable.

insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make a way into; **se insinuare,** to make their way among (c. iv, 33).

insistō, -sistere, -stitī, no sup., v. intr., stand, take one's position; **firmiter insistere,** to get a firm foothold (c. iv, 26, 33).

insolenter, adv., haughtily, arrogantly.

insonō, -āre, -sonuī, -sonitum, v. intr., re-echo.

insons, -sontis, adj., guiltless.

inspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., look into.

instabilis, -e, adj., unsteady.

instar, N., indecl., image; **instar montis,** as high as a mountain (Verg. 15).

instaurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew.

insternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum, v. tr., lay upon, cover over.

instituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, v. tr., draw up troops; decide upon; **bellum parare instituit,** he decided to prepare for war (c. v, 3); **ab instituto consilio,** from his appointed plan (c. v, 4); **naves instituere,** build ships (Verg. 11).

institūtum, -ī, N., custom, usage, law.

institūtus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **instituo.**

instō, -stāre, -stitī, no sup., v. intr., press on (Verg. 491).

instruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum, v. tr., build, draw up; **navem instruere,** to build a ship (c. v, 2); **omnibus rebus instrui,** to be fully equipped (c. v, 5); **copias instruere,** to draw up forces (c. v, 18).

insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj., unaccustomed.

insuētus, -a, -um, adj., unused, unaccustomed; **navigandi insuetus,** unused to sailing (c. v, 6).

insula, -ae, F., island.

insultans, -tis, adj., insulting, scoffing.

insuper, adv., moreover, besides, above.

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., unimpaired, fresh.

intellegō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., understand, know; **intellectum est,** it was observed (c. v. 16).

intemerātus, -a, -um, adj., unsullied.

intendō, -ere, -dī, intensum or **intentum,** v. tr., stretch (Verg, 237).

intentus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. used as an adj., eager.

inter, prep. (with acc.), between, among.

intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. tr., intervene, come to pass.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., hem in (Verg. 111).

interdīcō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., forbid.

intereā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.

interest, interesse, interfuit, intr., impersonal; it is of importance; **mea interest,** it is of importance to me; **viri interest,** it is of importance to the man; **magni interesse,** it is of great importance (c. v, 4).

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., kill, destroy, slay.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interior, comparative adj., from obsolete **interus),** inner; **interiores,** those of the inland parts (c. v, 14); **pars interior,** the inland part (c. v, 12).

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., discontinue; **brevi tempore intermisso,** after the lapse of a short interval (c. iv, 34); **intermissa profectione,** postponing his departure (c. v, 7); **non intermisso remigandi labore,** without relaxing the exertion of rowing (c. v, 8); **vento intermisso,** after the wind had died down (c. v, 8); **ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis,** not even the night time interrupting the exertions of the soldiers (c. v, 11), **intermisso spatio,** after a time (c. v, 15).

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., allege; **fidem interponere,** to pledge his word (c. v, 6).

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., expound.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask, inquire.

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break down, break up.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., be present, take part in (with dative).

intervallum, -ī, N., an interval of space or time.

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. int., come between, come upon.

intexō, -ere, -uī, -tum, v. tr., inweave, interlace.

intonō, -āre, -uī, -itum, v. intr., thunder.

intorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, v. tr., hurl against (see note, Verg. 56).

intrā prep. (with acc.), between, within.

intrōitus, -ūs, M., an entrance.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, v. tr. dep., behold, consider, regard.

intus, adv., within.

inultus, -a, -um, adj., unavenged.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., unusual; **inusitatior**, somewhat novel (c. iv, 25).

inūtilis, -e, adj., useless, unserviceable; **inutilis ad navigandum**, unseaworthy (c. iv, 29).

invādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, v. tr., go against, attack.

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr., come upon, find out, discover.

inventor, -ōris, m., discoverer.

invicem, adv., by turns, alternately.

invidia, -ae, F., envy, ill-will.

invīsus, -a, -um, adj., hateful.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling; **se invito**, against his will.

involvō, -ere, -vī, -ūtum, enroll, enwrap.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pro.; self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; **ipso terrore equorum**, by mere terror caused by the horses (c. iv, 33).

īra, -ae, F., anger.

irritus, -a, -um, adj., useless, unavailing.

irruō, 3, **-ruī, -rutum**, v. intr., rush against.

is, ea, id, dem. pro. this, that, he, she, it, they; before **ut**, **is=talis**, such; with comparatives **eo** (abl.) the: **eo magis**, all the more.

iste, ista, istud, dem. pro., that, that of yours.

ita, adv., in this way, so, thus: in the following manner, therefore; **non ita magnus**, not very large (c. iv, 37).

Ītalia, -ae, F., *Italy.*

itaque, conj., and so, therefore, accordingly.

item, adv., just, so, also, in like manner.

iter, itineris, N., journey, march; **iter magnum**, a forced march; **ex itinere oppugnare**, to storm by direct assault; **ex itinere**, on the march; **iter facere**, to make a march (c. iv, 32); **iter conficere**, to complete a march.

iterum, adv., again, a second time.

Ithacus, -a, -um, adj., *Ithacan* in Verg. 104.

Itius, -ī, M., *Itius*, a port on the northern coast of Gaul, opposite Britain. From it Caesar sailed to Britain. It is said to be *Boulogne*, or *Wissant.*

Iūlus, -ī, M., *Iulus*, son of Aeneas, also called *Ascanius*

J

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr., lie, lie dead.

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, v. tr., throw, cast; **ancoram jacere**, cast anchor (c. iv, 28).

jactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. (freq. from **jaciō**), keep throwing, utter wildly.

jaculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., fling, hurl.

jam, adv., now (Verg. 132); already.

jamdūdum, adv., at once.

jānua, -ae, F., door.

jamprīdem, adv., now for a long time.

juba, -ae, F., crest.

jubeō,- ēre, -jussī, -jussum, v. tr., order.

jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., decide.

jugum, -ī, N., yoke.

Jūlius, -i, M., see Caesar.

jūmentum, -ī, N., baggage animal.

junctūra, -ae, F., joint.

jungō, -ere, junxī, junctum, v. tr., join.

Jūno, -ōnis, F., *Juno*, wife of Jupiter and queen of heaven.

Jūpiter, Jovis, Jovī, Jovem, Jove, M., *Jupiter.*

jūs, jūris, N., right.

jūsjūrandum, jūris jūrandi, N., an oath.

jussum, -ī, N., command.

jussus, -ūs, M., command.

justus, a, -um, adj., just.

juvenīlis, -e (also **juvenālis**), adj., youthful.

juvenis, -is, M., a young man.

juventa, -ae, F., youth (period of).

juventūs, -ūtis, F., youth (collective noun).

juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, v. tr., delight; **nos juvat,** it delights us (Verg. 27).

juxtā, adv. and prep., next, close to.

K

Kalendae, -ārum, F., pl., the Kalends, the first day of each month.

Karthāgō, -inis, F., Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.

Karthāginiensis, -is, adj., a Carthaginian.

L

L. = Lucius, a Roman praenomen.

Laberius, -ī, M., Laberius; Quintus Laberius Durus, a tribune in Caesar's army in Gaul.

lābes, -is, F., slipping, downfall.

Labiēnus, -ī, M., Titus Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. On the outbreak of the civil war he went over to Pompey and fell at Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.

labō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., totter.

labor, -ōris, M., toil, suffering, exertion.

lābor, lābī, lapsus sum, v. intr. dep., slip, go astray; **propter imprudentiam labi,** to fall away from allegiance on account of thoughtlessness (c. v, 3).

labōrō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., toil, labor, be in trouble.

labrum, -ī, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk; **lacte et carne vivere,** to live on milk and flesh (c. v, 14).

Lacaena, -ae, F., Spartan woman.

lacessō, -essere, -essīvī, -essītum, v. tr., provoke, assail, assault.

lacrima, -ae, F., a tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., weep.

lacus, -ūs, M., lake.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, v. tr., harm, hurt, offend, injure; **pro numine laeso,** for the offended deity (Verg. 183).

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful, glad, pleasant.

laeva, sc. **manus,** left hand.

laevus, -a, -um, adj., left, left hand: hence (1) unpropitious.

lambō, -ere, lambī, no sup., v. tr., lick.

lāmentābilis, -e, adj., to be lamented.

Lāocoōn, -ontis, M., *Laocoon,* priest of Apollo, though we find him (Verg. 301) sacrificing to Neptune. (For the story of his death see Verg. 41, 199 seq.; note Verg. 199.)

lapsō, -āre, no perf., no sup. (**lābor**), slip.

lapsus, perf. part. of dep. v., **lābor.**

lapsus, -ūs, M., gliding.

Larissaeus, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to Larissa,* a town of Thessaly: an epithet of Achilles, who came from Larissa.

largus, -a, -um, adj., bounteous.

lassus, -a, -um, adj., faint, weary.

latē, adv., widely, broadly; **longe lateque,** far and wide (c. iv, 35); **quam latissime,** as widely as possible (c. iv, 3).

latebra, -ae (rare in sing.), F., lurking place.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no supine, v. tr., lie hid, be concealed.

latus, -eris, N., side, flank; **ab latere aperto,** on the exposed flank, *i.e.,* the right (c. iv, 25, 26).

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., praise.

laurus, -ūs, F., laurel, bay-tree.

laus, -dis, F., praise.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., loose.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., an embassy.

lēgātus, -ī, M., (1) an ambassador; (2) lieutenant-general in the army, an officer of senatorial rank in command of different divisions in the field, under the **imperator.** They were appointed by the Senate and were usually three in number, but Caesar had ten in Gaul.

legiō, -ōnis, F., a legion; a division of the Roman army consisting, when complete, of 6,000 infantry and 300 cavalry. The infantry was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, and each maniple into two centuries. The cavalry consisted of ten squadrons (**turmae**).—**legione conferta,** owing to the legion being in close order (c. iv, 32); **legioni aliquem praeficere,** to appoint one over a legion (c. v, 1); **legiones expeditae,** legions without baggage, or in light marching order (c. v, 2).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to a legion; **milites legionarii,** common soldiers.

lēgitimus, -a, -um, adj., lawful **poena legitima,** the legal penalty.

legō, legere, lēgī, lectum, v. tr., choose, select; read; skim over (Verg. 206).

lēnis, -e, mild, gentle.

leō, -ōnis, M., lion.

lepus, -oris, M., a hare.

lētum, -ī, N., death.

levis, -e, adj., light; **milites levis armaturae,** light-armed soldiers.

lēvis, e, adj., smooth.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., relieve, lighten.

lex, lēgis, F., law, terms, conditions.

līberāliter, adv., courteously, generously.

līberē, adv., freely, without restraint.

līberī, -ōrum, pl. M., children (the singular is not found except in late writers); **uuus ex liberis,** one child.

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., free, acquit; **poena liberare,** to relieve from punishment.

lignum, -ī, N., wood.

ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., bind.

limbus, -ī, M., border, belt, band, girdle.

līmen, -inis, N., threshold.

līmōsus, -a, -um, adj., muddy, miry.

lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language.

linquō, -ere, līquī, no sup., v. tr., leave.

līs, lītis, F., a dispute, law suit; **litem aestimare,** to estimate the amount of damages (c. v, 1).

litō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., propitiate.

littera (or **litera**), **-ae,** F., a letter of the alphabet; pl. **litterae, -arum,** literature, or a despatch, letter; **ex litteris,** in accordance with the despatch (c. iv, 38).

lītus, -oris, N., water's edge, coast.

locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., place, station; **castra locare,** to pitch a camp.

locus, -ī, M., a place; pl., **loca** or **loci**; **obsidum loco,** as hostages (c. v, 5); **in loca superiora,** up the country (c. v, 8; **loca temperatiora,** more temperate climate (c. v, 12).

locūtus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **loquor**: which see.

longaevus, -a, -um, adj., of great age, aged (**longus, aevum**).

longē, adv., far; with comparatives and superlatives, far, by far; **longe melior,** far better; **longe optimus,** by far the best; **longius,** too far (c. v, 7); **longe lateque,** far and wide (c. iv, 35).

longinquus, -a, -um, adj., remote, distant.

longitūdō, -inis, F., length, extent.

longus, -a, -um, adj., long.

loquor, loquī, locūtus (or **loquūtus**) **sum,** v. tr. dep., speak.

lōrum, -ī, N., thong.

lūbricus, -a, -um, adj., slippery.

Lūcifer, -ī, M., Lucifer, the morning star (**lux, ferō**).

Lūcius, -ī, M., Lucius.

lūcrum, -ī, N., profit, gain, advantage.

luctus, -ūs, M. grief.

lūgeō, ēre, luxī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., lament, mourn for.

Lugotorix, -igis, M., *Lugotorix,* a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp.

lūmen, -inis, N., light; eyes (Verg. 173, 405)

lūna, -ae, F., moon; moonlight (Verg. 340).

lūpus, -ī, M., a wolf.

lustrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., traverse; survey, scan.

lūsus, -ūs, M., sport play.

lux, lūcis, F., light; **primā luce,** at daybreak; **ortā luce,** at daybreak (c. v, 8).

Lydius, -a, -um, adj., belonging to Lydia.

M

M. = Marcus, a Roman praenomen.

Machāōn, -onis, M., *Machaon,* a Greek surgeon, son of Aesculapius.

māchina, -ae, F., engine of war (Verg. 151).

mactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., sacrifice.

maestus, -a, -um, adj., sad.

magis (comp. of adv., **magnopere**), more, rather (sup. **maximē**).

māgnitūdō, -inis, F., size.

magnopere, adv. (often written **magno opere**), greatly; comp., **magis**; sup., **maximē,** especially.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., large, great (comp. **major**; sup. **maximus**); **magni,** at a high price; **pluris,** at a greater price; **maximi,** at a very high price; **majores natu,** elders; **majores,** ancestors; **res major,** matter

of more than usual importance; **maximam partem**, for the most part; **magni habere**, to value highly; **magni interesse**, to be of great importance (c. v, 4).

major: see **magnus**.

mājōrēs, -um, M., ancestors.

male, adv., badly (comp., **pējus**; sup., **pessimē**).

malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, evil, wicked (comp., **pējor**; sup., **pessimus**).

mandātum, -ī, N., order, command, charge.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dative), entrust, bid; **se fugae mandare**, to consign themselves to flight (c. v, 18).

Mandubrācius, ī-, M., Mandubracius, a chief of the Trinobantes, a British tribe.

manē, adv., in the morning, early.

maneō, -ēre, -mansī, -mansum, v. tr. and intr., remain, await, stay; **in officio manere**, to remain in allegiance, to remain loyal (c. v, 4); await (Verg. 194); be steadfast (Verg. 159).

manica, -ae, F., handcuff, fetter.

manifestus, -a, -um, adj., clear, plain, evident.

manus, -ūs, F., hand; band of men; **manum conserere**, to engage in battle; **delecta manus**, a picked band.

Marcus, -ī, M., *Marcus*; a Roman praenomen.

mare, -is, N., the sea; **et mari et terra**, both by sea and land.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the sea; maritime; **ora maritima**, the sea coast (c. iv, 20); **aestus maritimi**, tides (c. iv, 29), **regiones maritimae**, the districts lying on the sea; **res maritimae**, naval movements.

Mars, -tis, M., *Mars*, the Roman god of war.

māter, -tris, F., mother.

māteria, -ae, F., timber.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early.

maximē, adv., superlative of **magnopere**, which see.

maximus, -a, -um, adj., superlative of **magnus**, which see.

mēcum; with me.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj., inland, central.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle; **medius mons**, the middle of the mountain; **media de nocte**, after midnight; **ad mediam noctem**, about midnight.

Meldī, -ōrum, or Meldae, -ārum, pl. M., the *Meldi* or *Meldae*, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the coast east of the Parisii, near the modern town of *Meaux*, which still preserves the name.

melior, melius, adj., comp. of **bonus**, better.

membrum, -ī, N., limb.

meminī, -isse, v. defec., remember.

memor, -oris, adj., mindful.

memorābilis, -e, adj., memorable, deserving to be related.

memoria, -ae, F., memory, recollection; **memoria tenere**, to recollect; **nostra memoria**, in our day; **memoria proditum**, handed down by tradition (c. v, 12); **post hominum memoriam**, within the memory of man.

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., relate.

Menāpiī, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Menapii*, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Mosa (*Meuse*), and the Scaldis (*Schelat*); their chief town was Menapiorum Castellum (now *Kessel*).

mendācium, -ī, N., falsehood.

mendax, -ācis, adj., lying, false.

Menelāus, -ī, M., *Menelaus*, son of Atreus, brother of Agamemnon, husband of Helen and king of Sparta.

mens, mentis, F., mind.

mensa, -ae, F., table.

mensūra, ae, F., measure; **certae ex aqua mensurae**, accurate measurements by the water clock (c. v, 13).

mentior, -īrī, mentītus sum, v. dep., tr., lie, speak falsely.

mercātor, -tōris, M., trader.

mercēs, -cēdis, F., price.

mercor, -ārī, ātus sum, v. tr., dep., buy.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., gain, deserve.

merīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., midday; **meridiano fere tempore** at about noon (c. v, 8).

merīdiēs, -ēī, M., mid-day; **ad meridiem spectat**, it faces the South (*i.e.*, the sun at noon) (c. v, 13).

meritum, -ī, N., service, kindness, benefit; **pro meritis**, for his kindness; **merito ejus a se fieri**, to be done by him according to the deserts of the latter (c. v, 4).

mētior, -īrī, mensus sum, v. tr., dep., measure, measure out.

meto, metere, messuī, messum, v. tr., reap.

metuō, -ere -ī, metūtum, v. tr., fear.

metus, -ūs, M., fear.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pro.; my, mine.

micō, -āre, -uī, no sup; flash.

mīles, -itis, M., a soldier.

mīlitāris, -e, adj., of or belonging to a soldier, military; **res militaris,** military science.

mīlitia, -ae, F., military service.

mille, adj. or noun, indecl., a thousand (H L., 106, 6); pl. **millia** or **mīlia.**

millia passuum, miles; **mille passus,** a Roman mile, or 1,616 yards (see **passus**; also H. L., 106, 7).

Minerva, -ae, F., *Minerva*, a Roman goddess who presided over wisdom and war.

minister, -trī, M., servant.

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., threaten; **aliquem morte** or **alicui mortem minari,** to threaten anyone with death.

minor, -us, adj. (comp. of **parvus**; sup., **minimus,** less; as a noun, **minores** (with or without **natu**), descendants; **dimidio minor,** half the size (c. v, 13).

minuō, -ere, -uī, -minūtum, v. tr., lesson, diminish.

minus, comp. adv. of **parum** (which see), less; sup., **minimē.**

mīrābilis, -e, adj., wonderful.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., admire, wonder at.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, strange, marvellous.

misceō, -ēre, -uī, mistum or **mixtum,** v. tr., mingle, filled with confusion (Verg. 298).

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unfortunate.

miserābilis, -e, adj., wretched.

misereor, -ērī, -itus sum, v. intr., dep. (with genitive), feel pity for.

miserescō, -escere, no perf., no sup., v. intr. (with genitive), feel pity for.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, v. tr., send.

mōbilitās, -ātis, F., activity, speed.

mōbilis, -e, adj., easily moved.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. and intr., manage, check.

modo, adv., only, merely, at all; **modo...modo,** now...now, at one moment...at another; **non modo...sed etiam,** not only...but also; **paulum modo,** only a little.

modō; see **modus.**

modus, -ī, M., a measure, amount, manner, method; **modo fluminis,** like a river; **nullo modo,** by no means; **modo oratoris,** in the capacity of an ambassador (c. iv, 27).

moenia, -ium, pl., N., walls of a city, fortifications.

mōles, -is, F., mass (Verg. 150, 185).

molestē, adv., with trouble, with annoyance; **res multas moleste ferre,** to be annoyed at many things.

mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum, v. dep., perform with toil, undertake.

mollis, -e, adj., smooth, soft.

Mona, -ae, F., Mona, the *Isle of Man. Anglesey*, was also called Mona, but its position does not answer Caesar's description (c. v, 13).

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., advise, warn, remind.

mons, montis, M., mountain; **summus mons,** the top of the mountain.

monstrō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., point out, show.

monstrum, -ī, N., prodigy, monster.

montānus, -a, -um, adj., mountain.

mora, -ae, F., delay.

morātus, -a, -um, perf. part. dep., **moror**; see **moror.**

Morinī, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Morini*, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the northeastern coast in the neighborhood of *Calais*. Their chief town was Gesoriacum, afterwards Bononia (now *Boulogne*).

morior, morī, mortuus sum, v. dep., die.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. and tr. dep., delay.

mors, -tis, F., death.

morsus, -ūs, M., bite.

mortālis, -e, adj., mortal, human.

mōtus, -ūs, M., motion, evolution; **Galliae motus,** an uprising in Gaul (c. v, 5).

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, v. tr., move, set in motion; **arma movere,** to take up arms; **bellum movere,** to undertake a war; **castra movere,** to break up camp: **odia movere,** to stir up hatred (Verg. 96).

mox, adv., presently, soon; then, afterwards.

mucrō, -ōnis, M., edge, point.

mūgītus, -ūs, M., bellowing.

multitudō, -inis, F., crowd, multitude.

multō, adv. (used before comparatives), adv., much, by much, greatly; multo melior, much better (comp., plūs; sup., plūrimum).

multum, adv. (not used before comparative, otherwise same as multo).

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many; comp., plus; sup., plurimus.

mūnīmentum, -ī, N., defence, fortification.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, ītum, v. tr., protect, fortify; iter munire, to build a road.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F., defence.

mūrus, -ī, M., wall.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., change, exchange.

Mycēnae, -ārum, F. pl., *Mycenae*, a city of Argolis, of which Agamemnon was king.

Mygdonidēs, -ae, M., patronymic, *son of Mygdon*, epithet of Coroebus.

Myrmidonēs, -um, M., pl., *Myrmidons*, a people of Thessaly, followers of Achilles.

N

nactus, -a, -um, perf. part. dep. nanciscor, having obtained.

nam, conj., for; stands first in a sentence and explains some previous statement.

namque, conj., for indeed, for truly, a little more emphatic than nam.

nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus (or nanctus) sum, v. tr., dep., obtain, get.

narrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., tell.

nascor, -cī, nātus sum, v. intr., dep., be born (c. v, 12); be born from.

nātiō, -tiōnis, F., tribe, people, nation.

nātūra, -ae, F., form; naturā, by nature, naturally; naturā triquetra, triangular in form (c. v, 13).

nātus, -a, -um (perf. part. dep., used as an) adj., descended from, born from; child (Verg. 138, 214); nate dea, born from a goddess (Verg. 289).

nātus, -ūs, M., used only in the abl., by birth; majores natu, ancestors; minores natu, descendants.

nauta, -tae, M., a sailor.

nāvālis, -e, adj., naval; pugna navalis, a sea-fight.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F., sailing (c. iv, 36).

nāvigium, -ī, N., a vessel, ship.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., sail.

nāvis, -is, F., a ship; navis longa, a ship of war; navis oneraria, a ship of burden; navem tenere in ancoris, to keep a ship at anchor; navem conscendere, to embark (c. iv, 23) (elsewhere in Caesar we find conscendere in navem); navem constituere, to moor a ship (c. iv, 24); naves solvere, set sail (c. v, 8); navem subducere, to draw a vessel on shore, to beach a vessel (c. v, 11).

nē, conj., (in final clauses) that not, lest; (after verbs of fearing) that; (after verbs of beseeching, ordering, commanding) not to.

nē, adv., not; ne...quidem, not... even (the emphatic word between ne and quidem, as ne unus quidem, not a single one); also used in negative imperative sentences, ne hoc feceris, don't do this.

-ne, interrog. enclitic particle. In single direct questions; -ne is not to be translated except by laying stress on the word to which it is joined (H. L., 43, 3), in double questions, -ne...an, whether ...or (H. L., 44, 5).

nebula, -ae, F., mist.

nec: see neque.

necessāriō, adv., necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse, indecl. adj. (used with est (+acc. and inf.), necessary, unavoidable, inevitable, needful.

necessitās, -ātis, F., need, necessity.

necne, adv., used in alternative indirect questions; or not; annon, is used in direct questions.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., put to death, kill, destroy.

nefandus, -a, -um, adj., horrid (Verg. 155).

nefārius, -a, -um, adj., wicked, atrocious.

nefās, indecl. N., a crime (against divine law), impious deed; nefas est dictu, it is wrong to say.

neglegō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum, v. tr., slight, neglect, be indifferent to, despise.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., say no or not; deny, refuse; often = dicit non: negat se esse aegrum, he says that he is not sick.

negōtium, -ī, N., business matter.

nēmō, -inis (only used in the sing.; the dat. and abl. are supplied by nullus; Caesar uses only nemo, neminem), indef. pro., no one; non nemo, somebody; nemo non, everybody.

Neoptolemus, -ī, M., Neoptolemus, also called Pyrrhus, son of Achilles.

Neptūnius, -a, -um, adj., founded by Neptune.

Neptūnus, -ī, M., Neptune, god of the sea.

nepōs, -ōtis, M., grandson; nephew; pl., nepōtes, descendants.

nequāquam, adv., not at all, by no means.

neque, or nec (in Caesar nec is not found before vowels), conj., nor, and not; neque...neque or nec...nec, neither...nor; nec quisquam, and no one; neque quidquam, and nothing (c. iv, 20).

nēquidquam (nēquīquam), adv., in vain, to no purpose.

Nēreus (dissyllable), Nērēī, and Nēreos, M., *Nereus*, a sea deity.

nesciō -scīre, -scīvi (or sciī), -scītum, v. tr., not to know.

neu; see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. neutrīus, dat. neutrī, H. L., 48, 2), adj., neither (of two).

nēve, or neu, conj., nor; and...not; neve...neve, or neu...neu, neither ...nor.

nex, necis, F., death; generally a violent death.

nī=nisi, conj., unless.

nihil, indecl. N., nothing.

nihilō (abl. of difference from nihilum) by nothing: nihilo tamen sēcius, nevertheless (c. v, 7).

nihilo minus, or nihilominus, adv., none the less, nevertheless.

nihilo sēcius, adv. (literally, otherwise by nothing; sēcius, comp. of secus, differently, otherwise); same meaning as nihilominus.

nihilum, -ī, N., nothing; nihili aestimare, to value at nothing.

nimbus, -ī, M., rain-cloud.

nimiō, adv., too much, exceedingly.

nisi, conj., if not, unless.

nitidus, -a, -um, adj., shining, bright.

nītor, nītī, nīsus (or nixus) sum, v. intr., dep.

nōbilis, -e, adj., noble, noted, famous.

nōbilitās, -ātis, F., nobility.

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum, v. intr. (with dative, hurt, harm, injure.

noctū, (an old abl. of obsolete noctus, -ūs; used as an) adv., by night, at night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to night, nocturnal.

nōdus, -ī, M., knot.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, no sup.; v. irreg., be unwilling, not to wish.

nōmen, -inis, N., name; reputation (Verg. 89); see cognomen for praenomen, nomen).

nōminātim, adv., by name; nominatim evocare, to summon expressly (c. v, 4).

nōn, adv., not; usually preceding the word with which it should be construed. Before a negative word an indefinite affirmative is produced as, non nemo, somebody; non nunquam, sometimes; non nihil, something; after a negative, a general affirmative is formed, as nemo non, everybody; nunquam non, every time; nihil non, everything.

nōnāgintā, num., adj., ninety.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nonnullus, -a, -um, adj., some; generally in pl., nonnullī, -ae, -a, several.

nonnunquam, adv., sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, num. ord. adj., ninth.

nōs, pl. of ego.

noscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtum, v. tr., become acquainted with, learn; pf. novi, I know.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pro., our, ours, our own; pl., nostri, our troops, our men (milites understood).

nostrum or nostrī, gen. pl. of ego.

Notus, -ī, M., *the South Wind* = Auster (see Auster).

notus, -a, -um, (perf. part. pass. of nosco used as an) adj., known, well known.

novem, num. adj., nine.

nōvī, -isse, v. defect., know.

novitās, -ātis, F., novelty, strangeness.

novus, -a, um, adj., new, fresh, recent, strange (no comp.; sup. novissimus); agmen novissimum, the rear; agmen primum, the van; res novae, a change in affairs, a revolution.

nox, noctis, F., night, darkness; prima nocte, at nightfall; media

nocte, at midnight; multa de nocte, late at night; adversa nocte, in the face of night (c. iv, 28).

nūbēs, -is, F., a cloud.

nubō, -ere, nupsī, nuptum, v. intr. (with dative), properly to veil oneself for a husband, hence said of a woman, to marry; a man was said uxorem ducere or uxorem in matrimonium ducere.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (for declension H. L., p. 48, 2), none, no one.

num, interrog. particle (H. L., 43, 2).

nūmen, -inis, N., will, power, divinity.

numerus, -ī, M., number.

nummus, -ī, M., money; pro nummo uti, to use as money (c. v, 12).

nunc, adv., now.

numquam, adv., never.

nuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., announce, tell, narrate; nuntiatur, word is brought: nuntiatum est, word was brought.

nuntius, -ī, M., messenger, tidings.

nūper, adv., lately, recently.

nūrus, -ūs, F., daughter-in-law.

nusquam, adv., nowhere, in no place.

nūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. int., nod, sway to and fro.

nūt-us, -ūs, M., nod, command; ad nutum, at a nod or signal (c. iv, 23).

O

Ō, interj., o! oh!

ob, prep. (with acc.), on account of, for; ob eam rem, for this reason; quam ob rem, wherefore, accordingly.

obdūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., draw over, cloud.

objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., thrust or put in the way of, place in front of; to present (Verg., 200).

objectus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of objicio used as an) adj., opposite (c. v, 13).

oblīviscor, -līviscī, -lītus sum, v. dep. (with genitive); forget.

obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, v. tr., overwhelm.

obscūrus, -a, -um, adj., dark.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., watch, observe.

obses, -sidis, M. or F. a hostage; obsidum loco, as hostages (c. v, 5).

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. tr., besiege, blockade.

obsidiō, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade.

obstinātē, adv., firmly, stubbornly.

obstupescō, -ere, -stupuī, no sup., become amazed (Verg., 378).

obtegō, -ere, -texī, -tectum, v. tr., hide, conceal.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat.), comply with, obey, conform to.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., implore, adjure.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, v. tr., hold, posses (c. v, 20).

obtruncō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., cut to pieces.

occāsus, -ūs, M., setting; occasus solis, sunset, west (c. iv, 28; v, 8); fall, destruction (Verg., 432).

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, v. intr., fall, be killed; occidens sol, sunset, west (c. v, 13).

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., kill.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., cover, hide, conceal.

occultus, -a, -um, adj., hidden, concealed.

occumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, v. intr., yield to; occumbere morti, to meet death (Verg. 62).

occupātus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of occupo used as an) adj., busied with; nostris omnibus occupatis, while all our men were busy (c. iv, 34); occupatos in munitione castrorum, busied with the fortifying of the camp (c. v, 15).

occupātiō, -ōnis, F., being busied with, business affairs; occupationes reipublicae, state affairs (c. iv, 16); has tantularum rerum occupationes, business consisting of such trifles (c. iv, 22).

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., take, seize.

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, v. tr. (with dat.), meet.

Ōceanus, -ī, M., the ocean.

octāvus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., eighth.

octingentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., eight hundred.

octō, card. num. adj., eight.

octodecim, card. num. adj., eighteen.

octogintā, card. num. adj., eighty.

oculus, -ī, M., eye.

ōdī, -**isse**, v. tr. defect., hate.

ōdium, -ī, N., hatred.

offerō, -**ferre**, **obtulī**, **oblātum**, v. tr., bring before, present, offer; **se obtulit hostibus**, he faced the enemy; **oblati per lunam**, meeting us in the moonlight (Verg. 340); **se . . . offert**, presents himself (Verg. 370).

officium, -ī, N., duty, allegiance; **officium praestare**, to do one's duty; **in officio esse**, to be loyal (c. v, 3); **in officio manere**, to remain loyal (c. v, 4); **in officio continere**, to keep him loyal, or in service (c. v, 7).

Olympus, -ī, M., Olympus, a mountain in Thessaly, the fabled abode of the gods.

ōmen, -**inis**, N., omen, sign.

omnīnō, adv., in all, altogether, in all; after negatives, at all; **nihil omnino**, nothing at all; with numerals, in all; **decem omnino**, ten in all.

omnipotens, -**tis**, adj., almighty, omnipotent.

omnis, -**e**, adj., all, the whole; **omnes ad unum**, all to a man; **maritima omnis**, wholly maritime, or on the sea (c. v, 14).

onerārius, -**a**, -**um**, adj., of burden, **navis oneraria**, a transport (c. iv, 22, 25).

onerō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, v. tr., load.

onus, -**eris**, N., load, burden.

opācus, -**a**, -**um**, shady.

opera, -**ae**, F., toil, aid; **dare operam**, to take pains (c. v, 7); **multae operae**, of great trouble (c, v, 11).

opīmus, -**a**, -**um**, adj., rich.

opīniō, **ōnis**, F., belief, notion; **opinio timoris**, the impression of fear, **praeter opinionem**, contrary to expectation; **celerius omni opinione**, sooner than anyone expected; **ut fert opinio illorum**, according to their ideas (c. v, 13).

oportet, -**ēre**, -**uit**, v. int., impers.; it is necessary, it behoves (c. iv, 29).

oppōnō, -**ere**, -**posuī**, -**positum**, v. tr., place against, oppose, withstand; **oppositi** (perf. part. pass. and as an), adj., opposing.

opportūnē, adv., favorably, suitably.

opportūnus, -**a**, -**um**, adj., fit, suitable, advantageous.

opprimō, -**ere**, **pressī**, **pressum**, v. tr., burden, crush, destroy.

oppugnātiō, -**ōnis**, F., assault, attack.

oppugnō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, v. tr., storm, attack.

(ops), nom. wanting: gen., **opis**, F., might, power, help; pl., **opes**, wealth, resources.

optimē: see **bene**.

optimus: see **bonus**.

optō, -**āre**, -**āvi**, -**ātum**, v. tr., wish for, desire.

opus, -**eris**, N., work, labor, **magno opere** or **magnopere**, greatly; **quanto opere**, how greatly; **tanto opere** or **tantopere**, so much, so greatly.

opus, indecl. neut., found only in the expression **opus est**, **erat**, etc., there is or was, etc., need, it is or was necessary.

ōra, -**ae**, F., coast; **ora maritima**, sea coast (c. iv, 20).

ōrāculum, -ī, N., oracle.

ōrātiō, -**ōnis**, F., a speech; **orationem percipere**, to hear a speech (c. v. 1).

orātor, -**ōris**, M., speaker; **modo oratoris**, as an ambassador (c. iv, 27).

orbis, -**is**, M., a circle; **orbis terrarum**, the circle of lands, *i.e.*, around the Mediterranean, the whole world to the early Romans; **orbe facto**, forming a circle; corresponding to our forming square to resist an attack (c. iv, 37); circuit, coil.

orbus, -**a**, -**um**, adj., bereft, deprived of.

Orcus, -ī, M., *Orcus*, the lower world, the shades; death (Verg. 398).

ordior, -**īrī**, **orsus sum**, begin.

ordō, -**inis**, M., an arrangement; rank, line; **ordines servare**, to keep the ranks (c. iv, 26).

Orgetorix, -**igis**, M., *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian nobleman.

oriens, -**tis**, (pres. part. of **orior** used as an) adj., rising; **sol oriens**, the rising sun, hence, the east (c. v, 13).

orior, -**īrī**, -**tus sum**, v. intr. dep., rise, spring from; **orta luce**, at daybreak (c. v, 8); **quibus orti ex civitatibus**, and sprung from these states (c. v, 12).

ornus, -ī, F., mountain ash.

ōrō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, v. tr., pray for, beseech; **magnopere orant**, they earnestly ask.

ōs, **ōris**, N., mouth, face.

os, ossis, N., bone.

osculum, -ī, N., kiss.

ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tensum (or **tum**), v. tr., tell, show, declare.

Othryadēs, -ae, M., *son of Othrys = Panthus.*

P

Palamēdēs, -is, M., *Palamedes*, king of Euboea, a Greek who lost his life through the wiles of Ulysses (Verg. 82).

Palladium, -ī, N., *the Palladium*, an image of Pallas (Minerva), supposed to have fallen from Heaven. On its preservation depended the safety of Troy. It was carried off by Diomede and Ulysses.

Pallas, -adis, F., *Pallas* or *Minerva*, the goddess of war, wisdom, and art.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, F., foraging, getting fodder.

pābulātor, -ōris, M., a forager.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., forage, seek forage.

pābulum, -ī, N., fodder, forage.

pācātus, -ta, -tum (perf. part. pass. of **paco** used as an) adj., peaceful, quiet.

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., subdue, pacify.

pāgus, -ī, M., district, canton; the word still exists in the French *pays*, as *Pays de Calais.*

pallidus, -a, -um, adj., pale.

palma, -ae, F., palm (of the hand), hand (Verg. 152, 406).

palūs, -ūdis, F., marsh.

pandō, -ere, pandī, pansum or **passum**, v. tr., stretch, spread out, open.

Panthūs, -ī (voc., **Panthū**), M., *Panthus*, priest of Apollo in the Trojan citadel.

pār, paris, adj., equal; **par est**, it is fit, it is proper; **par proelium**, a drawn battle; **pari spatio**, of the same extent (c. v, 13).

parātus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of **paro** used as an) adj., prepared, ready.

parcō, -ere, -pepercī (or **parsī**), **parcitum** (or **parsum**), v. intr. (with dat.), spare.

parens, -tis, M. or F., a parent.

pārens, -tis, (pres. part. of **pareo** used as an) adj., obedient.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. intr. (with dat.), obey.

pariēs, -etis, M., a partition wall of a house.

pariter, adv., equally, evenly.

Paris, -idis; N. m.: *Paris*, also called *Alexander*, son of Priam and Hecuba. When born he was exposed on Mount Ida, because his mother dreamed that she was delivered of a blazing torch, which was interpreted by the seer to signify that the child would be the destruction of Troy. Paris was brought up by shepherds, and so signalized himself in protecting the people that he obtained the name of "man defender" (Ἀλέξανδρος). He married the nymph Oenone. Afterwards he was chosen a judge in the dispute about the golden apple. Having awarded the prize to Venus, against Juno and Minerva, he incurred the hatred of the two latter goddesses. He went to Sparta, carried off Helen, wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta, and hence arose the Trojan war.

parma, -ae, F., small round shield.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., prepare, get ready, equip, procure; **bellum parare**, prepare for war (c. v, 3).

pars, -tis, F., part, district, region; **in ea parte**, in that direction (c. iv, 32); **per omnes partes**, in every direction (c. iv, 33); **omnibus partibus**, in every quarter (c. v, 15; Verg. 21).

partim, adv., partly; **partim... partim**, partly...partly (c. v, 6).

parum, adv., too little, little; (comp. **minus**; sup., **minimē**).

parvulus, -a, um, adj., very little, young; **ab parvulo**, from boyhood.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, trifling; (comp. **minor**; sup., **minimus**.

pascō, -ere, pāvī, pastum, v. tr., feed upon (Verg. 471).

pascor, -cī, -pastus, v. dep., feed upon.

passim, adv., in every direction.

passus, -ūs, M., a step, pace. As a measure of distance, two paces, reckoned from the heel to the same heel, like our two military steps, or = five Roman **pedes** (see **pes**), about 4 ft. 10¼ in. English measure; **mille passus** = 1616 yards, or 144 yards short of the English mile.

passus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **pando** (see **pando**); **passis crinibus**, with hair all loose (Verg. 403).

pastor, -ōris, M., shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, v. tr., open; pass., **patefīō, fierī, factus sum.**

patens, -tis, adj., open.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr., be open, stand open, extend.

pater, -tris, M., father.

patescō, -ere, patuī, v. intr., begin to be open or obvious.

patior, patī, passus sum, v. tr. dep., allow, suffer, bear.

patria, -ae, F., fatherland, native land; **patriā pellere**, to banish.

patrius, -a, -um, adj., paternal.

paucitās, -ātis, F., fewness, small number (c. iv, 30, 34).

paucus, -a, -um, adj., some, few (generally in pl.); **paucis diebus**, within a few days (c. iv, 27; v, 2).

paulātim, adv., gradually.

paulisper, adv., for a short time.

paulō, adv., (abl. of **paulus**), by a little, just a little; with comparative adjectives or adverbs, a little; **paulo longius**, a little further (c. iv, 32); **paulo tardius**, a little too slowly (c. iv, 23).

paululum, adv., a little, gradually.

paulum, adv., a little.

pauper, -eris, adj., poor (comp. **pauperior**, sup. **pauperrimus**).

pavitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., be in dread; **pavitans**, used as an adjective, trembling (Verg. 107).

pavor, -ōris, M., fear.

pax, pācis, F., peace.

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., do wrong, sin.

pectus, -oris, N., breast.

pecus, -oris, N., cattle (collectively).

pedes, -itis, M., a foot-soldier; pl., **pedites**, infantry.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., on foot, on land; **copiae pedestres**, land forces; **copiae navales**, naval forces; **in pedestribus proeliis**, in battles on land (c. iv, 24).

peditātus, -ūs, M., infantry (collectively).

pējor, -us, adj. (comp. of **malus**; sup., **pessimus**), worse.

pelagus, -ī, N., sea.

Pelasgī, -ōrum, M. pl., *Pelasgi* or Greeks.

Pelasgus, -a, -um, adj., Pelasgic, Grecian.

Peliās, -ae, M., *Pelias*, a Trojan.

Pēlīdēs, -ae, M., a descendant of Peleus = *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, son of Achilles (Verg. 263).

pellax, -ācis, adj., deceitful, false.

pellis, -is, F., skin, hide; **pellibus vestiri**, to clothe themselves with skins (c. v, 14).

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, v. tr., expel, drive out; **patria pellere**, to exile (N. A. 1).

Pelopēus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to Pelops, an ancient King of Elis, after whom all Southern Greece was called Peloponnesus, or "island of Pelops." Hence *Grecian* (Verg. 193).

Peloponnēsus, -ī, F., the *Peloponnesus* (now the *Morea*), the part of Greece south of the isthmus of Corinth.

penātēs, -ium, pl. M., *the Penates*, or household gods, presiding over the house and all that it contained (Verg. 293).

pendeō, -ēre, pependī, no sup., v. intr., hang, be suspended.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pensum, v. tr., weigh out (in early times payments were made by weighing out metal, hence), pay.

Pēneleus, -ī, M., *Peneleus*, a leader of the Boeotians in the Trojan war.

penetrāle, -is, N., inner part, shrine (Verg. 297).

penitus, adv., within (Verg., 17, 486).

per, prep. (with acc.), through, by means of, by; **per omnes partes**, in every direction (c. iv, 33).

peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum, v. tr., accomplish, bring to an end; **conventus peragere**, to hold assizes (c. v, 2).

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., take in, learn, perceive; **percipere orationem**, to hear a speech (c. v, 1).

percontātiō, -ōnis, F., enquiry.

percurrō, -ere, -currī (or **-cucurrī**), **-cursum**, v. intr., run along.

perdūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., complete, bring to a destination; **naves perduxit**, he brought the ships to their destination (c. v, 23).

pereō, -īre, -iī or (**-īvī**), **-itum**, v. intr., perish, die.

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ride, ride through.

pererrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wander over.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., carry, bring, report; endure; **consilio perlato**, after their plan was reported (c. iv, 21).

perfidia, -ae, F., faithlessness, treachery.

perfuga, -ae, M., a deserter, runaway.

perfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, v. tr., sprinkle, steep.

perfugium, -ī, N., refuge.

Pergama, -ōrum, N. pl., *Pergama*, the citadel of Troy: hence *Troy*.

perīculum, -ī, N., danger; facere periculum, to run the risk (c. iv, 21).

Periphras, -antis, M., *Periphras*, one of the companions of Pyrrhus at the sack of Troy.

perītus, -a, -um, adj., with gen., acquainted with; rei militaris peritus, skilled in military affairs.

perjūrus, -a, um, adj., foresworn.

perlātus, -a, um, perf. part. pass. of perfero (see perferō).

permaneō, -ēre, -mansī, -mansum, v. intr., stay, remain, continue; in ea sententia permanere, to adhere to that policy (c. iv, 21).

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. intr., entrust; fortunas ejus fidei permittere, to entrust their fortunes to his protection (c. v, 3).

permōtus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass., influenced.

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., rouse, disturb, alarm, induce.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj. pl., very few.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., constant, unbroken; in perpetuum, for ever (c. iv, 34).

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., break through.

persaepe, adv., very often.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, v. tr. dep., follow up, pursue, overtake (c. v, 10).

persolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, v. tr., pay to the full.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., see, observe, reconnoitre; coram perspicit, he sees in person (c. v, 11).

perstō, āre, -stitī, -stātum, v. intr., persist, continue.

petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, v. tr., ask.

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., greatly alarm, frighten, terrify.

perterritus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass., used as an adj., frightened.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, no sup., v. intr., tend, extend; hoc pertinet, this side extends (c. v, 13).

perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., confusion, consternation.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., disturb greatly, agitate.

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. intr., reach, arrive at.

pervius, -a, -um, adj., with a way through.

pēs, pedis, M., foot; pedem referre, to retreat (c. iv, 25); pedibus proeliari, to fight on foot (c. iv, 33); pedibus, on foot (c. v, 18); as a measure of length=11.64 in.; 5 Roman pedes= passus. (See passus.)

phalanx, -gis, F., a band of soldiers in solid column, a host (Verg. 226).

Phoebus, -ī, M., *Phoebus*, a poetical name of Apollo.

Phoenix, -īcis, M., *Phoenix*, a friend of Achilles.

Phrygēs, -um, M., pl., inhabitants of Phrygia, a name given to the North-west part of Asia Minor in which Troy was situated, hence *Phrygians*, *Trojans*.

Phrygius, -a, -um, adj., *Phrygian*, Trojan.

Phthia, -ae, F., *Phthia*, a town in Thessaly and birthplace of Achilles.

pietās, -ātis, F., duty to the gods, to one's country, or to one's parents; hence, piety, patriotism or filial affection.

pīneus, -a, -um, adj., of pine.

piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., expiate (Verg. 184).

Pirustae, -ārum, M. pl., the *Pirustae*, a tribe of Macedonia, on the southern border of Illyricum, in what is now the modern *Herzegovina*.

Pīsō, -ōnis, M., *Piso*, an Aquitanian noble (c. v, 12).

piscis, -is, F., fish.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. intr. (with dat.), please; placet, impers., it pleases.

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., appease.

plangor, -ōris, M., beating of the breasts, mourning.

plānus, -a, -um, adj, flat, level.

plebs, plēbis, (plēbēī or plēbī), F., the common people, the commons.

plēnē, adv., fully, completely.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full (with genitive (H. L., 93, 4).

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, pl. adj., most, several; interiores plerique, most of the inland people (c. v, 14).

plērumque, adv., mostly, generally, usually.

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, adj., most; generally **plerique.**

plumbum, -ī, N., lead: **album plumbum,** tin (c. v, 12).

plūrēs: see **multus.**

plūrimum, adv., superl. of **multum** (H. L., 98, 7); **longe plurimum valet,** is by far the most powerful (c. v, 3).

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. superl. of **multus** (H. L., 91, 3).

plūs, adj., comp. of **multus.**

pōculum, -ī, N., drinking cup.

poena, -ae, F., compensation, punishment, penalty; **poenas dare,** to pay the penalty, to be punished (Verg. 366); **poenas sumere,** to exact a penalty, to punish.

poēta, -ae, M., poet.

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, v. tr. dep., promise.

Polītēs, -ae, N. m., *Polites,* a son of Priam, slain by Pyrrhus before his father's eyes during the sacking of Troy (Verg. 526).

Pompēius, -ī, M., *Pompey,* Cnēius Pompēius Magnus, a Roman general, born 106 B.C., Consul 70 B.C., 55 and 52, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, 48 B.C., and afterwards assassinated in Egypt.

pōmum, -ī, N., an apple.

pondus, -eris, N., weight.

pōne, adv., behind.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, v. tr., place, put, lay down; **ponere arma,** to lay down arms (c. iv., 37); **castra ponere,** to pitch a camp: put aside (Verg. 473).

pontus, -ī, M., sea.

populātiō, -ōnis, F., devastation, ravaging.

populus, -ī, M., people; **populi,** nations.

porta, -ae, F., gate, door.

porticus, -ūs, F., arcade, colonnade.

portus, -ūs, M., port, harbor.

poscō, poscere, poposcī, no sup., v. tr., beg, demand, ask.

possideō, -ēre, **possēdī, possessum,** v. tr., hold, own.

possīdō, -ere, **possēdī, possessum,** v. tr., win, get possession of.

possum, posse, potuī, no sup.; v. irreg., be able, can; **multum posse,** to have great power; **plurimum posse,** to have very great power.

post, adv. after, later; (often with the abl. of measure) **anno post,** a year afterwards; **paucis diebus post,** a few days afterwards.

post, prep. (with acc.), after; **post tergum,** in the rear; **post paucos annos,** after a few years; **post hominum memoriam,** within the memory of man.

posteā, adv., afterwards.

posteāquam, conj., after that, after.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., the following, next; (comp., **posterior**; sup., **postrēmus**); pl., **posteri, -orum,** descendants.

postis, -is, M., post.

postpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., put off: (c. v, 7).

postquam, adv., after that, after, when.

postrīdiē, adv., the next day; **postridie ejus diei mane,** early next day (c. v, 10).

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask, demand, request (p. 276, foot note).

potens, -tis, adj., powerful.

potestās, -ātis, F., power.

potissimum, adv., sup., chiefly, principally, especially.

potius, adv., rather, preferably; sup. **potissimum,** no positive.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened at the end, pointed.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., offer, show, furnish.

praeceps, -cipitis, adj., headlong, teed, precipitious; **praecipites hostes agere,** to drive the enemy headlong (c. v, 17).

praeceptum, -ī, N., teaching, advice, order, command.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. intr. (with dative), order, direct.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., rush headlong, throw headlong; **mentem praecipitare,** to hasten one's resolve (Verg. 316).

praecipuē, adv., especially, particularly.

praeclārus, -a, -um, adj., distinguished.

praeclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, v. tr., close up (c. v, 9).

praecordia, -ōrum, N. pl., heart, breast (Verg. 367).

praeda, -ae, F., booty, plunder.

praedicō, -āre, -dicāvī, dicātum, v. tr., proclaim, boast.

praedīcō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr., foretell.

praeditus, -a, -um, adj. (with abl.), endowed with.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep. tr., plunder, pillage, obtain booty.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., put over, put in command of (H. L., 229, 4).

praefīgō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, v. tr., fix or place in front of.

praefixus, perf. part. pass. of **praefīgō.**

praemetuō, -ere, -uī, no sup., v. intr., fear for, be anxious for.

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send before, send forward.

praemium, -ī, N., reward.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., prepare.

praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, v. tr., set over, place in command of.

praesens, -tis, adj., at hand, present.

praesertim, adv., especially.

praesidium, -ī, N., guard, defence, garrison; **praesidio navibus esse,** to guard the ships (c. v, 9).

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, stand before, show, perform; **officium praestare,** to fulfil a duty (c. iv, 25).

praesum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr. (with dative), be over, have command of; **negotio praeesse,** to have charge of the matter (c. v, 2).

praeter, prep. (with acc.), beyond, except, contrary to.

praetereā, adv., besides.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., let pass, let slip.

praetervehor, -vehī, -vectus sum, v. tr., be carried beyond, sail past, coast along.

precī, precem, prece (no nom. or gen. sing.); pl. **preces, precum,** etc.; F., prayer, request.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, v. tr., press, harass, crush.

prehendō (or **prendō**), **-ere, -dī, -sum,** v. tr., seize, lay hold of.

prensō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., grasp.

(**prex, precis**), F., supposed form; see **preci.**

prīdiē, adv., the day before.

prīmō, adv., at first.

prīmum, adv., firstly, in the first place; **ubi primum,** as soon as; **cum primum,** as soon as possible; **cum (quum) primum,** as soon as.

Priamēius, -a, -um, adj., *of* or *belonging to Priam.*

Priamus, -ī, M., *Priam,* the last king of Troy.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of the comp., **prior,** no positive; **prima luce,** at daybreak; **prima nocte,** at nightfall; **primum agmen,** the vanguard; **in primis,** especially.

princeps, -cipis, M., chief man, chief, prince.

principātus, -ūs, chief authority, leadership.

principium, -ī, N., beginning.

prior, prius, adj., comp. (no positive; sup. **primus**); former, previous.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj., old, former.

prius, adv., before, sooner, earlier; followed by **quam,** and often written with it as one word, **priusquam,** before, before that.

priusquam, conj., before.

prīvātim, adv., privately, individually.

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., private.

prō, prep. (with abl.), in front of, before; for, in proportion to; **pro merito ejus,** as he deserved (c. v, 4); **pro tempore et pro re,** suited to the time and the conditions (c. v, 8); **pro sano,** as a sane man (c. v, 7); **pro nummo,** as money (c. v, 12); **pro sua virtute,** in consideration of his excellence.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., advance, succeed.

procul, adv., afar, at a distance.

prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, cubitum, v. intr., fall, sink down.

prōditiō, -ōnis, F., treachery, betraying.

prōditor, -ōris, M., traitor, betrayer.

prōdō, -ere, -didī, ditum, v. tr., betray, surrender; **memoria proditum,** handed down by tradition (c. v, 12).

prōdūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., prolong.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr., fight.

proelium, -ī, N., battle; **proelium facere,** to fight a battle.

profectiō, -ōnis, F., a departure, setting out.

profectō, adv., for a fact, indeed.

proficiscor, -cī, -fectus sum, v. intr. dep., set out, depart.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, v. tr. dep., advance, go forward.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, hibitum, v. tr., hold, defend, protect (c. v, 21).

prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, jectum, v. tr., throw, throw forward.

prōinde, adv., henceforth, therefore.

prōlābor, -ī, -lapsus sum, v. dep., glide forward, sink down.

prōmissum, -ī, N., promise.

prōmissus, -a, -um, adj., long, flowing; capillo sunt promisso, they have long hair (c. v, 14).

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., promise.

prōmō, -ere, prompsī, promptum, v. tr., put forth; se promunt, issue from (Verg. 260).

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., move forward.

prōnē, adv., headlong, leaning forward.

prōnuntiō, -āre,-āvī, -ātum, v.tr., tell, announce, declare.

prōnus, -a, -um, adj., steep.

prope, adv., near, nearly, almost; comp., propius; sup., proximē.

prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive away, put to flight.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., hurry, hasten.

propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. (with dat.), approach.

propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near, with dative; as a noun, propinquus, -ī, M., relation.

propior, -us, adj., comparative of obsolete propis; sup. proximus; nocte proxima, last night.

propius: see prope and propior.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own, particular, peculiar.

propter, prep. (with acc.), on account of, in consequence of.

propterea, adv., for this reason, therefore; propterea quod, because.

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fight.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, v. tr., dep., follow after, follow, attend.

prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., look forward, take care.

prōsum, -prōd-esse, prō-fuī, v. intr., be of benefit to, benefit (with dative).

prōtegō, -ere, -texī, -tectum, v. tr., protect.

prōtinus, adv., at once, forthwith, immediately; ex hac fuga protinus, immediately after this defeat (c. v, 17).

prōtrahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum, v. tr., drag forth.

prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, v. tr., carry forward; in pass., sail along, coast.

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, v. tr., foresee, take care.

prōvidus, -a, -um, adj., foreseeing.

proximē: see prope.

proximus: see propior.

pūbēs, -is, F., youth.

publicus, -a, -um, adj., public, common; res publica, the commonwealth; publico consilio, by a public plan.

Publius, -ī, M., *Publius*, a Roman praenomen.

puella, -ae, F., girl.

puer, puerī, M., boy, youth.

pugna, -ae, F., fight, combat.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., fight; acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought (c. iv, 26).

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.. beautiful.

pulvis, -eris, M., dust.

puppis, -is, F., stern of a vessel; a ship.

pūrus, -a, -um, adj., pure, bright.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., think, fancy, consider.

Pyrrhus, -ī, M., *Pyrrhus*, also called Neoptolemus, son of Achilles.

Q

Q = Quintus (which see).

qua, nom. sing. fem. or neut. pl. nom. or acc. of quis or qui.

quā (abl. fem. of qui, supply viā or parte) adv., where.

quadrāgintā, nom. card. adj., forty.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesītum, v. tr., seek, look for, ask, enquire.

quaestiō, -ōnis, F., enquiry, investigation.

quaestor, -ōris, M., quaestor; the quaestors were officers who acted as government treasurers, received tribute and paid the soldiers.

quālis, -e, adj., of what sort or kind; talis...qualis, such...as; talis omitted (Verg. 223); qualis erat! what a sight was he! (Verg. 272).

quam, conj., than (after comparatives); with superlatives (with or without **possum**) = as possible: **quam primum**, as soon as possible; **quam plurimi**, as many as possible; **quam maximi**, as large as possible.

quamquam, conj., though, although, however, and yet.

quandō, interrog. adv., when? rel. adv., when, whenever; **si quando**, if at any time.

quantō (abl. of difference from **quantus**), adv., by how much; **quanto...tanto**, as...so; the...the.

quantum (acc. of **quantus**), adv., how much, how far, as far as.

quantus, a, -um, adj., interrog. or rel., how great, how much, how large, as large as.

quārē, interrog. and rel. adv., wherefore, why.

quartus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., fourth.

quasī, conj., as if.

quater, adv., four times.

quatiō, -ere, no perf., **quassum**, v. tr., shake.

quattuor, card. num. adj., four.

-que, conj., and; always appended to the word, which in construction belongs to it; generally to the first word of the clause or to the word it couples.

queror, querī, questus sum, v. tr. dep., complain, lament.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pro., who, which, what.

quicquam: see **quisquam**.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pro., whoever, whatever.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or **quiddam**, indef. pro., a certain one; pl., some, certain.

quīdem, adv., indeed, at least; **ne... quidem**, not...even: the emphatic word is always placed between **ne** and **quidem**.

quiēs, -ētis, F., rest, repose.

quīn (old abl. **quī**, how and **ne**, not), conj., that not, but that, without; after words expressing doubt or suspicion, that; after words of preventing, etc., translated by *from* with verbals in -ing.

quingentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., five (Verg. 126).

quinquāgintā, card. adj., fifty.

quinque, card. num. adj., five.

quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., fifth.

Quintus, -ī, M., *Quintus*, a Roman **praenomen** (see **cognomen**); see **Atrius, Titurius, Laberius**).

quis, quae or **qua, quid** or **quod**, indef. pro., anyone, any; **ne quid**, that nothing (c. v, 7); interrog., who?

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam or **quidquam**, indef. pro., any one; **neque quisquam**, no one (c. iv, 20); **neque quicquam**, and nothing (c. iv, 20); always in connection with negatives or implied negatives.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, indef. pro., each, every, every one; with superlatives in sing., all; **optimus quisque**, all the best.

quisquis, quidquid or **quicquid**, indefinite relative pronoun, whoever, whatever.

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or **quodvīs**, indef. pro., any one you please, any.

quō, adv., (1) rel. and interrog., whither, where (c. v, 21); (2), interrog., why (Verg. 150); rel., when (Verg. 26, 7).

quō (abl. of **qui**), final conj., used with comparatives and followed by subjunctive; in order that (c. v, 3).

quoad, adv. (with indic. in Caesar), as long as, until, till.

quod, conj., because, inasmuch as (with indicative or subjunctive (H. L. 252, 2); the fact that (Verg. 180); **propterea quod**, because; **quod si**, but if, if.

quōminus, conj., that not; often best translated by *from* after verbs of hindering, preventing, etc., with an English verbal noun in *-ing*.

quōnam, interr. adv., whither pray?

quondam, adv., once, formerly, at times (Verg., 367, 116).

quoniam, conj., since, seeing that, because.

quoque, adv. (following the emphatic word of a clause), also, too.

quot, indecl. adj., how many? often correlative of **tot**; **tot...quot**, as many as.

quotannīs, adv., yearly, every year.

quotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily, every day.

quotīdiē, adv., every day, daily.

R

rabiēs, no gen. or dat., **rabiem, rabiē**, F., rage.

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rasum, v. tr., shave.

rapidus, -a, -um, adj., swift, quick.

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum, v. tr., snatch, seize, hurry off.

raptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., drag.

raptor, -ōris, M., plunderer, **lupi raptores**, prowling wolves (Verg. 356).

rārus, -a, -um, adj., few, scattered, in small parties.

ratiō, -ōnis, F., reckoning, calculation, account; **rationem inire**, to form a plan; **ratio atque usus belli**, the theory and practice of war = the systematic practice of war; **equestris proelii ratio**, the style of the cavalry battle (c. v, 16); **ratio pontis**, the plan of the bridge; **rei militaris ratio**, military science (c. iv, 23); **omnibus rationibus**, in every way (c. v, 1); reason, **nec sat rationis in armis**; nor was there sufficient reason in (taking) arms (Verg. 310).

raucus, -a, -um, adj., hoarse.

rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war, uprising; **rebellione facta**, by a renewal of the war (c. iv, 30, 38).

recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., go back, withdraw.

recens, -tis, adj., fresh, late, recent.

receptus, -ūs, M., retreat; **expedītus receptus**, a convenient retreat (c. iv, 33).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, v. tr., take back, recover, win; **in fidem recipere**, to take under one's protection or to receive as a pledge of faith (c. iv, 22); **se recipere**, to retreat (c. iv, 2); **se a fuga recipere**, to recover from the flight (c. iv, 27); **in deditionem recipere**, to admit to a surrender.

recondō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., hide (far back).

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., refuse, decline, deny; often followed by **quin** or **quominus**.

recutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, v. tr., strike.

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., give back, restore.

redeō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, v. intr., go back, return.

reditus, -ūs, M., return.

redūcō, -ere, -duxī, ductum, v. tr., lead back.

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, v. tr., bring, carry back; **gratias referre**, to return thanks; **gratiam referre**, to requite, to repay; **ad suos referre**, to report to their people; **pedem referre**, to retreat (c. iv, 25).

reficiō, ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., repair, refit.

reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, v. tr., bend back.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, v. tr. and intr., flee back or away, retreat, escape: shrink back (Verg. 12).

refulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī, no sup., v. intr., shine out.

rēgīna, -ae, F., queen.

regiō, -ōnis, F., district, country.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., kingly, royal.

regnātor, -ōris, M., ruler.

regnum, -ī, N., kingdom (c. v. 20); **regnum civitatis**, sovereignty of the state (c. v, 6).

rējiciō, -jicere, -jecī, -jectum, v. tr., hurl back, drive back, repulse; **tempestate rejici**, to be driven back by the storm (c. v, 5).

rēligiō, -ōnis, F., religion; **religionibus impediri**, to be hampered by religious scruples (c. v, 6); **quae religio?** what object of religious awe (Verg. 151).

rēligiōsus, -a, -um, adj., holy, venerable.

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, v. tr., leave, abandon, leave behind; **relinquebatur ut**, the only course left was that (c. v, 19).

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining; **nihil reliqui est**, there is nothing left; **in reliquum tempus**, for all time to come; **reliquus exercitus**, the remainder of the army (c. iv, 22).

reluceō, -ēre, -luxī, no sup., v. intr., flash, gleam.

remaneō, -ēre, -mansī, mansum, v. intr., remain, await.

remeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., return.

remetior, -īrī, -mensus sum, v. dep., retrace.

rēmex, -igis, M., a rower.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. row.

remigrō, -āre, no perf., no sup., v. intr., depart, return.

remissus, -a, -um, adj., relaxed; **remissioribus frigoribus**, since the cold is less intense (c. v, 12).

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send back.

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, v. tr., remove, dismiss, get rid of.

rēmus, -ī, M., oar.

Rēmī, -ōrum, pl. M., the *Remi*, a powerful people of Gaul, whose capital was Durocortorum (now *Rheims*)

renovō, āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., renew.

renuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bring back word, report.

reor, rērī, ratus sum, v. dep., think.

repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, v. tr., drive back, repulse.

rependō, -ere, -dī, -sum, v. tr., pay back.

repente, adv., suddenly.

repentīnō, adv., suddenly, unexpectedly.

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected, hasty.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, v. tr., discover, find, ascertain.

repetō, -ere, -īvī or iī, -ītum, v. tr., reseek, seek anew.

repleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, v. tr., fill.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., carry back.

reposcō, -ere, no perf., no sup., v. tr., claim in return, exact.

reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, v. tr., check.

requiescō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, v. intr., rest.

requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, v. tr., seek to know, ask.

rēs, reī, F., matter, affair, (the meaning will depend on the context); **res militaris**, military science; **res novae**, a change in government, a revolution; **res publica**, the state, commonwealth, politics; **res divina**, a sacred rite; **res frumentaria**, supply of corn; **his rebus**, on these terms (c. iv, 28).

resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, no sup., v. intr., sit down, stay behind.

resistō, -ere, -stitī, no sup., v. intr., resist, oppose, withstand (with dative).

resolvō, -ere, -vī, solūtum, v. tr., unloose.

respiciō, spicere, -spexī, -spectum, v. tr., look back for or at.

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -sponsum, v. tr., reply, answer.

responsum, -ī, N., answer, rely.

respublica, reīpublicae, (for declension, H. L., 102, 5), state, commonwealth.

restat, restāre, no perf., no sup., impers., it remains (Verg. 142).

restinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctum, v. tr., put out.

restō, -āre, -stitī, no sup., v. intr., remain, am left.

retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, v. tr., restrain, detain, keep back.

retrahō, -ere, -traxī, -tractum v. tr., draw back, save, preserve.

revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, v. tr., turn back, return.

revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum, v. intr., return.

revinciō, -īre, -vinxī, -vinctum, v. tr., bind back.

revīsō, -ere, -vīsī, vīsum, v. tr., revisit.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call back, recall.

revolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtum, v. tr., roll back.

rex, rēgis, M., king.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhīpeūs, -ī, M., Rhipeus, a comrade of Aeneas.

rīpa, -ae, F., a bank.

rīvus, -ī, M., brook.

rōbur, -oris, N., oak.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., ask.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.

Rōmānī, -ōrum, M., pl., Romans.

roseus, -a, -um, adj., rosy.

rota, -ae, F., wheel.

Rūfus, -ī, M., Publius Sulpicius Rufus, one of Caesar's lieutenants (c. iv, 22).

ruīna, -ae, F., downfall.

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, v. tr., break.

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum, v. intr., rush, fall.

rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rursum, adv., back again, anew.

rursus: see **rursum**.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, M., Sabinus; Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. He was slain by the treachery of Ambiorix, 54 B.C.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., holy, sacred; as a noun, **sacra**, -ōrum, sacred rites (Verg. 132).

sacerdōs, -ōtis, M. or F., priest or priestess.

sacrāmentum, -ī, N., the military oath taken by a Roman soldier. The chief obligations were obedience to the commander, loyalty to the country, etc.

sācrātus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass., used as an adj., hallowed (Verg. 157, 165, 245).

sācrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., make holy, hallow.

saepe, adv., often; **minimē saepe,** very seldom; comp., **saepius;** sup., **saepissimē.**

saeviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. intr., be cruel, rage, be furious.

saevus, -a, -um, adj., cruel, fierce.

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.

salsus, -a, -um, adj., salt.

saltus, -ūs, M., leap (**salio**).

sālum, -ī, N., surf (of the sea).

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety, health.

sanctus, -a, -um, adj., sacred, solemn.

sanguineus, -a, -um, adj., bloody.

sanguis, -inis, M., blood.

saniēs, ēī, F., gore.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, healthy; **pro sano facere,** to act as a sane man (c. v, 7).

sarmentum, -ī, N., twig.

sat = satis (Verg. 103, 291).

sata, -ōrum, N. pl., perf. part. pass. of **sero;** crops.

satelles, -itis, M. or F., attendant, guard.

satiō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, satisfy.

satis, adv., enough; used as an indecl. neut. noun.; **satis militum,** enough of soldiers (c. v, 2); or as adv. limiting an adj.: **satis magnus,** very large (c. v, 21).

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, v. intr. with dative, satisfy; in pass., **satisfio.**

saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded.

saxum, -ī, N., a rock, stone.

Scaeus, -a, -um, adj., *Scaean;* used in the phrase *Scaeae portae*, the famous *Scaean* or *Western* Gates of Troy.

scāla, -ae, F., ladder.

scandō, ere, scandī, scansum, v. tr., climb, mount (Verg. 237).

scapha, -ae, F., boat, skiff.

scelerātus, -a, -um, adj., wicked.

scelus, -eris, N., wickedness, sin.

scīlicet, adv., doubtless, forsooth (**scire licet**).

scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, v. tr., cut, tear, destroy.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, v. tr., know.

scītor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. dep., seek to know, ask.

scrībo, ere, scripsī, scriptum, v. tr., write.

Scȳrius, -a, -um, adj., *of or belonging to Scyros*, an island east of Euboea.

scūtum, -ī, N., a shield (of oblong shape, while the *clipeus* was round).

se: see **sui.**

sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, crētum, v. tr., separate.

secō, -āre, -uī, -tum, v. tr., cut.

sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj., separate, secret, private.

sēcum, with him, with themselves.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., following, second, favorable.

secūris, -is, F., axe (acc. **securim**: Verg. 224).

sēcius, adj. (comp of **secus**); **nihilo secius,** less by nothing, nevertheless; **haud secus ac** = just as (Verg. 382).

secus, adv., otherwise, differently.

sed, conj., but, yet; **sed enim,** but indeed (Verg. 164).

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, v. intr., sit.

sēdēs, -is, F., seat, abode (Verg. 282, 437).

seges, -etis, F., crop, harvest.

segnitiēs, -ēī, F., slowness.

Segontiacī, -ōrum, M., pl., the *Segontiaci*, a British tribe belonging to Hampshire.

Segovax, -ācis, M., *Segovax*, one of the petty princes of Kent (c. v, 22).

sēmita, -ae, F., a path.

semper, adv., always.

senātus, -ūs, M., senate.

senectūs, -ūtis, F., old age.

senex, senis, M., an old man.

senior, -ōris (comp. of **senex,** older.

sententia, -ae, F., opinion, decision.

sentiō, sentīre, sensī, sensum, v. tr., think, know, observe.

sentis, -is, M., thorn, briar.

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, bury.

sēpēs, -is, F., hedge.

septem, card. num. adj., seven.

septentriōnēs, -um, the Seven Stars, the constellation of the Great Bear (Ursa Major); hence, the North.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., seventh.

septingentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., seven hundred.

sepulchrum, -ī, N., tomb (**sepelio**).

sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, v. tr. dep. follow, pursue; **aestus commutationem secutus**, following the turn of the tide (c. v, 8); **Caesaris fidem sequi**, to be loyal to Caesar (c. v, 20).

serēnus, -a, -um, adj., clear, bright.

sermō, -ōnis, M., talk, language, speech, discourse; **sermo Latinus**, the Latin language.

sērō, -ere, **sēvī**, **satum**, v. tr., sow, plant.

sēro, adv., late, too late.

serpens, -ntis, F., snake, serpent.

serpō, -ere, **serpsī**, **serptum**, v. intr., creep.

sērus, -a, -um, adj., late.

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (with dat.), be a servant, serve.

servans, -tis, adj. (with gen.), observant of; **servantissimus aequi**, most observant of right (Verg. 427).

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., keep, save, preserve; **servare ordines** to keep the ranks (c. iv, 26).

servus, -ī, M., slave.

sese, reduplicated form of **se** (see **sui**).

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., call aside.

seu: see **sīve**.

sexāgintā, card. num. adj., sixty.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., six hundred.

sī, conj., if, whether.

sībilus, -a -um, adj., hissing (Verg. 201).

sic, adv., thus, in this manner.

siccitās, -ātis, F., dryness, drought.

siccus, -a, -um, adj., dry, thirsty (Verg. 357).

sīdus, -eris, N., star, constellation.

Sigēus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to Sigeum, a promontory of the Troad.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., show, mean.

signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., mark.

signum, -ī, N., sign, signal.

silentium, -ī, N., silence.

sileō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr., be silent.

silva, -ae, F., wood, forest.

silvestris, -e, adj., wooded.

similis, -e, adj., like, similar (with dat. (H. L. 93, 3); comp. **similior**; sup., **simillimus**.

simul, adv., at the same time; **simul atque (ac)**, as soon as.

simulācrum, -ī, N., image.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., pretend (pretend that a thing is what it is not; **dissimulo**, pretend that a thing is not what it is).

sin, conj., but if.

sine, prep. (with abl.), without.

singillātim, adv., one by one, singly.

singulāris, -e, adj., extraordinary, single; **aliquos singulares**, some scattered soldiers (c. iv, 26); **singulari studio**, with especial zeal (c. v, 2).

singulī, -ae, -a, num. distrib. adj., one by one, one each, one apiece; **in singulos annos**, from year to year, *i.e.*, yearly (c. v, 22).

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; **sub sinistra relictus**, behind him on the left (c. v, 8).

sinistra, -ae, F. (sc. **manus**), left hand.

sinō, -ere, **sīvī**, **situm**, v. tr., let be, permit, allow.

Sinōn, -ōnis, M., *Sinon*, a Greek who induced the Trojans to admit the wooden horse into their city.

sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bend, writhe (Verg. 208).

sinus, -ūs, M., bay, gulf.

sistō, **sistere**, **stitī**, **statum**, v. intr., place.

sīve (seu), conj., or if; **sive...sive** or **seu**, whether...or.

socer, -erī, M., father-in-law.

socius, -ī, M., companion, ally, associate.

socius, -a, -um, adj., confederate; **socia agmina**, confederate bands (Verg. 371).

sōl, **sōlis**, M., sun; **sole oriente**, **solis ortu**, at sunrise; **sole occidente**, **solis occasu**, at sunset; **ad solis occasum**, to the West (c. v, 8).

soleō, **solēre**, **solitus sum**, v. intr., semi-dep., to be accustomed, be wont.

solidus, -a, -um, adj., solid, whole.

sollemnis, -e, adj., annual; **arae sollemnes,** customary altars (Verg. 202).

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., stir up, incite.

solum, -ī, N., ground.

sōlum, adv., alone, only, merely.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only, single.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, v. tr., loose, unbind; **solvere navem,** or **naves,** to set sail; **naves solverunt,** sc. **funes,** the ships set sail (c. iv, 28); **solvit se Teucria luctu,** the Trojan land releases itself from sorrow (Verg. 26).

somnus, -ī, M., sleep; **in somnis = in somniis,** in my dreams (Verg. 270).

sonitus, -ūs, M., a sound.

sonō, -āre -uī, -itum, v. intr., sound.

soror, -ōris, F., a sister.

sors, sortis, F., lot, fate.

sopor, -ōris, M., sleep.

sortior, -īrī, sortītus sum, v. dep., draw lots, draw by lot.

spargō, -ere, -sī -sum, v. tr., scatter.

Sparta, -ae; N. f.: the chief city of Laconia in the Peloponnesus, and home of Menelaus and Helen; *Sparta*, sometimes called *Lacedaemon.*

spatium, -ī, N., space, time.

speciēs, -ēī, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), appearance, form; sight (Verg. 407).

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., look, observe; **ad orientem solem spectat,** it faces the East (c. v, 13).

speculātor, -ōris, M., scout, spy.

speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj., scouting, spying; **navigia speculatoria,** despatch boats, rowed with a single bank of oars, generally ten in number on each side, and employed for reconnoitring purposes.

speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., watch.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr., hope, expect.

spēs, -speī (gen. and dat. pl., rare), F., hope; **in spem venire,** to have hopes, to entertain hopes.

spīra, -ae, F., coil.

spissus, -a, -um, adj., thick.

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., rob, plunder.

spolium, -ī, N., spoil, booty.

sponsa, -ae, F., betrothed.

spūmeus, -a, -um, adj., forming.

spūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., foam.

squālens, -ntis, adj., rough.

squāleō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr., be rough.

squāmeus, -a, -um, adj., scaly.

stabilitās, -ātis, F., firmness, steadiness (c. iv, 33).

stabulum, -ī, N., stall, stable.

statim, adv., instantly, at once, immediately.

statiō, -ōnis, F., outpost, picket, guard; **in statione esse,** to be on guard (c. iv, 32) = **in stationibus esse** (c. v, 15); **in stationem succedere,** to take their place on guard (c. iv, 32); anchorage (Verg. 23).

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, v. tr., decide, resolve (c. v, 7, 11); build (Verg. 150, 184, 295).

statūra, -ae, F., height, size.

stella, -ae, F., star.

sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, v. tr., lay low.

Sthenelus, -ī, M., *Sthenelus*, a leader of the Greeks.

stīpendium, -ī, N., pay, tax, tribute.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, v. intr., stand, stand firm (Verg. 52); **Palladis auxiliis semper stetit,** ever rested on the aid of Pallas (Verg. 163).

strepitus, -ūs,, M., noise, din.

strictus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. from **stringo,** drawn.

strīdō, -ere, strīdī, no sup., creak.

stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum, v. tr., draw, unsheath.

struō, struere, struxī, structum, v. tr., build.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. intr. (with dat.), be eager about, aim at; **novis rebus studere,** to aim at a change in the government.

studiōsē, adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, -ī, N., zeal, devotion; **summo studio,** with the greatest zeal, (c. v, 8).

stultē, adv., foolishly.

stultitia, -ae, F., foolishness.

stultus, -a, -um, adj., foolish.

stupeō, -ēre, stupuī, no sup., be amazed.

stuppeus, -a, -um, adj., hempen.

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, v. intr., recommend, advise (with dat.

sub, prep. (with acc. and abl.), beneath, under, near, just before, at the foot of; **sub sinistra,** on the left (c. v, 8); **sub bruma,** at the time of the winter solstice (c. v, 13).

subducō, -ducere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., draw up on shore; **navem subducere,** to beach a ship (c. v, 11).

subductiō, -ōnis, F., drawing up on shore, beaching a vessel.

subeō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, v. tr., come up, approach; **auxilio subeuntem,** coming up to aid (Verg. 216); **illa subit,** it approaches (Verg. 240); **ast alii subeunt,** but others come up (Verg. 467).

subjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., place near, expose; **hiemi navigationem subjicere,** to expose his voyage to the winter, *i.e.*, to run the risk of sailing in winter (c. iv, 36).

subjectus, -a, -um (perf. part. pass. of **subjicio**), adj., adjacent, near; **insulae subjectae,** islands lying near (c. v, 13); **subjectis flammis,** with flames placed beneath (Verg. 37).

subitō, adv., suddenly, quickly.

subitus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

sublābor, -lābī, lapsus sum, v. dep., slip down, sink.

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., supply (c. iv, 50).

submitto, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, v. tr., send secretly.

submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. v., dislodge, draw off.

suboles, -is, F., posterity, race.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, v. tr., dep., follow closely, follow.

subsidium, -ī, N., auxiliary troops reserve, aid; **ad omnes casus subsidia componere,** to make provision for all emergencies (c. iv, 31).

subsistō, -ere, -stitī, no sup., v. intr., halt, make a stand; **neque ancorae funesque subsistunt,** neither the anchors nor the cables hold out (c. v, 10); **substitit,** it halted (Verg. 243).

subsum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., be near; **aequinoctium subest,** the equinox is at hand (c. v, 23).

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, v. intr., approach, take the place of; **ad stationem succedere,** to take their place on guard (c. iv, 32).

successus, -ūs, M., success.

succīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, v. tr., cut down.

succīsus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **succido,** cut down.

succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, v. intr. (with dat., H. L. 229, 4), help, aid; **succurritis urbi incensae,** you are aiding a city in flames (Verg. 352); **succurrit** (Verg. 316) = **succurrit menti = occurrit menti,** the thought comes to my mind.

sūdes, -is, F., stake; **acutis sudibus praefixis,** with sharp stakes fixed in front (of the bank) (c. v, 18).

sūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., sweat.

sūdor, -ōris, M., sweat.

suffectus, -a, um, perf. part. pass. of **sufficiō,** suffused (Verg. 210).

sufferō, -ferre, sustulī, sublātum, v. tr., bear, endure.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., to tinge.

suī, reflex. pro., of himself, herself, itself.

sulcus, -ī, M., furrow.

sulfur, -uris, N., brimstone, sulphur.

Sulpicius, -ī, M., Sulpicius: a Roman nomen (see **cognomen**); Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul (c. iv, 22).

sum, esse, fuī, v. intr., be.

summa, -ae, F., total, whole; general administration, control; **summa imperii bellique administrandi permissa,** the supreme command in conducting the war being entrusted (c. v, 11).

summoveō: see **submoveō.**

summus, -a, -um, adj., highest, greatest, very great, chief (superl. of **superus**); **summus mons,** the top of the mountain; **summa res,** a most important matter; **summis copiis,** with their entire forces (c. v, 17); **summa ab arce,** from the top of the citadel (Verg. 41); **summa dies,** the last day; **summa = suprema** (Verg. 324).

sūmō, sūmere, sumpsī, sumptum, v. tr., take, assume; **poenas sumere,** to exact a penalty (Verg. 103).

super, prep. (with acc. and abl., above; **et super,** and further (Verg. 71); **super his (dictis),** moreover with these (words), (Verg. 348).

superbus, -ā, -um, adj., proud, haughty.

superior, -us, (comp. of **superus**), higher, previous; **nocte superiore,**

on the previous night (c. v, 10); **superiore aestate**, in the preceding summer (c. iv, 21; v. 8), **superius tempus**, former time (c. iv, 22; v. 11); **superiore anno**, in the previous year (c. iv, 38); **in loca superiora**, up the country, c. v, 8); **locus superior**, a height (c. v, 9).

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., conquer, defeat; **superare undas**, rise above the waves (Verg. 207); mount (Verg. 302).

supersum, -esse, -fuī, v. intr., remain, survive; **neque multum aestatis superest**, and not much of the summer is left (c. v, 22).

superus, -a, -um, adj., high (comp., **superior**; sup., **suprēmus**, or **summus**); **superi, -orum**, those above, the gods (Verg. 141).

supplex, -icis, adj., suppliant.

supplicātiō, ōnis, F., thanksgiving.

suprā, prep. (with acc.) and adv., above, over.

surgō, -ere, surrexī, surrectum, v. intr., rise.

suscitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., stir up.

suspectus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **suspicio**, suspected.

suspensus, -a, -um, adj., in doubt.

suspīciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion; **in suspicionem venire**, to be suspected; **neque ulla belli suspicione interposita**, and no suspicion of war having arisen (c. iv, 32).

suspiciō, -ere, suspexī, suspectum, v. tr., suspect.

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., suspect, distrust.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, v. tr., withstand (c. iv, 37); check, rein in (c. iv, 33); hold one's ground (c. iv, 32).

suus, -a, -um, reflexive, adj. pro., his, her, its, their.

T

T.=Titus, a Roman **praenomen**: see **cognomen**.

tabulātum, -ī, N., storey, floor.

taceō, -ēre -uī, -ītum, v. tr. and intr., be silent; pass over in silence.

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., silent.

tactus, -ūs, M., touching, touch.

tālea, -ae, F., bar; **taleae ferreae**, iron bars (c. v, 12).

tālis, -e, adj., such.

tam, adv., so (before adverbs and adjectives); **tam . . . quam . .**, as much . . . as.

tamdiū, adv., so long.

tamen, adv., yet, still, for all that, however, nevertheless.

Tamesis, -is (acc. **Tamesim**), M., the Thames.

tandem, adv., at length, finally; in questions, pray? now? as **quis tandem?** who, pray?

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum, v. tr., touch, border on.

tantō, adv. of comparison, by so much; with comparatives, **tanto brevior**, so much the shorter.

tantulus, -a, -um, adj., so very small, so slight, so trifling; **has tantularum rerum occupationes**, this business consisting of such trifles (c. iv, 22).

tantum, adv., only, so much, so far, merely.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great, so large, such; **tanto spatio**, so far (c. iv, 35).

tardē, adv., slowly.

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow.

taurus, -ī, M., bull.

Taximagulus, -ī, M., Taximagulus, one of the petty kings of Kent (c. v, 22).

tectum, -ī, N., house.

tectus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **tego**, shut up; **tectus**, shutting himself up in his tent (Verg. 126).

tegō, tegere, texī, tectum, v. tr., cover; **si qua tegunt**, if anything they conceal (Verg. 159); protect, **nec Apollinis infula texit**, nor did the fillet of *Apollo* protect thee (Verg. 430).

tellūs, -ūris, F., land.

tēlum, -ī, N., weapon, dart.

temerē, adv., at random, without a purpose (c. iv, 20).

tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole (of a chariot).

temperantia, -ae, F., self-control, moderation.

temperātus, -a, -um, adj., temperate, mild; **loca sunt temperatiora**, the climate is milder (c. v, 12).

temperō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, v. tr. and intr., with acc., rule, manage; with dat., restrain.

tempestās, -ātis, F., weather; **idonea ad navigandum tempestas**, weather suitable for sailing (c. iv, 23;) so, iv, 36; v, 7; storm (c. iv, 28, 29, 34;) **rejici tempestate**, to be driven back by a storm (c. v, 5).

templum, -ī, N., temple.

temptō (or **tentō**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr., try, attempt (Verg. 176, 334).

tempus, -oris, N., time, season, occasion; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future; **omni tempore**, always; **tempus ducere**, to protract the time; **tempore dato**, at an appointed time; **ad tempus**, at a moment's notice (c. iv, 23); **pro tempore et pro re**, suited to the time and conditions (c. vi, 8); temples (of the head); **circum tempora**, around my temples (Verg. 133).

tenebrae, -ārum, F. pl., darkness.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum (or **tensum**), v. tr., stretch; **tendens lumina**, raising her eyes (Verg. 405); **tendit divellere**, he strives to undo (Verg. 220); **ad litora tendunt**, make for the shore (Verg. 205).

Tenedos, -ī, F., *Tenedos*, an island near Troy.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum, v. tr., hold, possess; **navem tenere in ancoris**, to keep a ship at anchor; **cursum tenere**, to hold on its course (c. iv, 26; iv, 28); **vento teneri**, to be kept back by the wind (c. iv, 22); **teneor patriae nec legibus ullis**, nor am I bound by any laws of my native land (Verg. 159).

tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender.

tenuis, -e, adj., thin, weak.

tenus, prep., with abl. (placed after the noun), as far as.

ter, num. adv., thrice.

terebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bore through.

tergum, -ī, N., back; **a tergo**, in the rear; **post tergum**, behind the back; **terga vertere**, to flee (c. iv, 35; 37).

ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., three each, three apiece.

terra, -ae, F., land, earth, country.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., frighten, terrify, alarm.

terrestris, -e, adj., of or belonging to land; **exercitus terrestris**, land army, opposed to **exercitus navalis**, sea forces.

territō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., terrify, frighten.

terror, -ōris, M., fear, dread: **ipso terrore**, by the sheer terror (c. iv, 38).

testor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. dep., call to witness.

testūdō, inis, F., a tortoise, a covering formed by the shields of the soldiers held above their heads so as to ward off the weapons hurled by the enemy; so called from the fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell. The term was also applied to the different kinds of sheds under which the soldiers worked when attacking a town.

Teucer, -crī, M., *Teucer*, king of Troy, ancestor of Priam.

Teucrī, -ōrum, M. pl., *Trojans*.

Teucria, -ae, F., *land of Teucer, i.e., Troy*.

texō, -ere, -uī, textum, v. tr., weave.

thalamus, -ī, M., bedchamber.

Thessandrus, -ī, M., *Thessandrus*, one of the Greek heroes in the wooden horse.

Thoās, -antis, M., *Thoas*, one of the Greeks in the wooden horse.

Thȳbris (Tybris), **-is** or **idis**; M., old name for the *Tiber*, a river in Italy on which Rome is situated.

Thymoetēs, -ae, M., *Thymoetes*, a Trojan who was the first to counsel that the wooden horse be brought within the city.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no sup., v. tr. and intr., fear, be afraid.

timor, -ōris, M., fear, dread.

Titūrius, -ī, M., *Titurius*; see **Sabinus**.

Titus, -ī, M., *Titus;* see **Labienus**.

tōlerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., bear, support.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, v. tr., lift, raise, carry away, destroy; **ancoram tollere**, to weigh anchor (c. iv, 23).

tormentum, -ī, N., military engine for throwing missiles against the enemy.

torrens, -ntis, M., torrent.

torus, -ī, M., couch.

tot, indecl. adj., so many; **tot...quot**, as many as.

totiens, adv., so many times.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, all.

trabs, trabis, F., beam, timber.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., hand over, give over, deliver, surrender; hand down to posterity; **traditur**, it is said; **traditum est**, the tradition is.

trāducō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum, v. tr., lead across, or over.

trahō, -ere, traxī, tractum, v. tr., draw, drag; **vitam trahere**, to drag out one's life (Verg. 92, 403).

trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., throw across, lead across, pierce.

trājectus, **-ūs**, M., passage, distance, across.

tranquilitās, **-ātis**, F., calm weather; **summa tranquillitas**, a dead calm (c. v, 23).

tranquillus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., calm.

trans, prep. (with acc.), across, over, on the other side, beyond.

transeō, **-īre**, **iī (īvī)**, **-itum**, v. tr., cross over, cross.

transferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, v. tr., bear or carry across; **summam imperii transferre**, to transfer the supreme power.

transgredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum**, v. tr., pass over, cross.

transigō, **-ere**, **-ēgī**,**-actum**, v. tr., pass through; **tempus transigere**, to pass the time.

transitus, **-ūs**, M., a going or crossing over, passing, crossing.

transjectus, **-ūs**, M., passage, distance across (c. v, 2).

transmissus, **-ūs**, M., passage (c. v, 13).

transportō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., carry over, transport.

Transrhēnānī, **-ōrum**, pl. M., those living across the Rhine (c. v, 2).

Trebōnius, **-ī**, M., *Trebonius*; Caius Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, card. num. adj., three hundred.

tremefactus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., dismayed.

tremens, **-tis**, adj., trembling.

tremendus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., terrible.

tremō, **-ere**, **-uī**, no sup., v. intr., tremble, quiver.

tremor, **-ōris**, M., trembling, fear.

trepidō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. intr., tremble much; hasten.

trepidus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., alarmed.

trēs, **tria**, card. num. adj., three.

Trevirī, **-ōrum**, pl., M., *the Treviri*, a people of Gallica Belgica, who dwelt between the Meuse and the Rhine; their capital was Augusta Trevirorum, now *Trèves*.

tribūnus, **-ī**, M., a commander of a tribe; hence, one of military officers, six in number, attached to each legion.

tribuō, **-ere**, **-ī**, **tribūtum**, v. tr., give, show.

tribūtum, **ī**, N., tribute, tax.

tridens, **-tis**, M., trident.

trīduum, **-ī**, N., space of three days; **tridui via**, a three days' march.

trīgintā, card. num. adj., thirty.

Trīnobantēs, **-um**, pl., M., *the Trinobantes*, a people of Britain who occupied Essex and part of Suffolk.

tripertītō, adv., in three divisions.

triplex, **-plicis**, adj., threefold, triple.

triquetrus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., three-cornered, triangular.

tris, num. adv., thrice.

tristis, **-e**, adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

trisulcus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., three-forked.

tristitia, **-ae**, F., sadness.

Trītōnia,**-ae**, F., *Tritonia* or *Minerva*.

Trītōnis, **-idis**, adj., *Tritonian*, an epithet of Minerva, who was also called Tritonia.

triumphus, **-ī**, M., triumph.

Trōēs, **-um**, pl., *The Trojans*.

Trōja, **-ae**, F., *Troy*.

Trōjānus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *Trojan*.

tropaeum, **-ī**, N., trophy, *i.e.*, a memorial or monument of victory; hence victory.

Trōs, **Trōis**, M., *Tros*, a king of Troy.

trucīdō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., butcher, slaughter.

truncus, **-ī**, M., trunk, body without limbs.

tū, **tuī**, pl. **vos**, thou, you.

tuba, **-ae**, F., trumpet (with a straight tube).

tueor, **tuērī**, **tuitus sum**, v. dep., preserve, defend, protect.

tum, adv., then.

tumens, **-tis**, adj., swelling.

tumeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, no sup., swell.

tumidus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., swelling.

tumultus, **-ūs**, M., disturbance, disorder.

tumulus, **-ī**, M. mound.

tunc, adv., then, at that time.

turba, **-ae**, F., crowd, throng.

turbātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., alarmed.

turbō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr., disturb.

turbō, **-inis**, M., whirlwind.

turma, **-ae**, F., a troop of 30 cavalry; the cavalry (**ala**) of the legion was divided into 10 **turmae**.

turpis, -e, adj., base, disgraceful.

turris, -is, F., tower.

tūtē, adv., in safety, safely.

tutor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, v. dep., protect.

tūtus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., safe, secure.

tuus, **-a**, **-um**, pro. adj., thy, your.

Tȳdīdēs, **-ae**, M., *son of Tydeus*, an epithet of Diomede, one of the Greek warriors at the siege of Troy.

Tyndaris, **-idis**, F., *daughter of Tyndarus*, an epithet of Helen, wife of Menelaus: (see **Helena**).

U

ubi, adv., where, when; **ubi primum**, as soon as.

ubīque, adv., everywhere.

Ūcalegōn, **-ontis**, M., *Ucalegon*, a Trojan (Verg. 312).

ulciscor, **ulciscī**, **ultus sum**, v. tr. dep., avenge, punish.

Ulixēs, **-is** or **-ī**, M., *Ulysses*, king of Ithaca, noted among the Greeks for his cleverness in strategy. His wanderings on his return home after the fall of Troy form the subject of Homer's Odyssey, upon which much of the Aeneid is modelled. He is always referred to by Vergil as a type of Greek cunning.

ullus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., any.

ulterior, **-ius**, comp. adj., further, beyond, more remote; sup., **ultimus**.

ultimus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., farthest, most distant.

ultor, **-ōris**, M., an avenger.

ultrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), beyond, on the other side; **ultra fidem**, beyond belief.

ultrō, adv., of one's own accord; without provocation; **bellum ultro inferre**, to make war without provocation (c. iv, 13); voluntarily (Verg. 59).

ultus, **-a**, **-um**, perf. part. of **ulciscor**, having avenged.

ululō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. intr., howl.

umbō, **ōnis**, M., boss (of a shield).

umbra, **-ae**, F., shade.

umerus, **-ī**, M., shoulder, arm.

umidus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., moist, dewy.

ūnā, adv., along with; usually with **cum**; **una cum his legatis**, along with these envoys (c. iv, 26); **una cum ceteris**, along with the others (c. v, 6).

unda, **-ae**, F., wave.

unde, adv., from which place, whence.

undique, adv., from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.

undō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. intr., rise in waves, swell.

ūniversus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., whole, all (in a body).

unquam, adv., ever, at any time; **non unquam = nunquam** (Verg. 247).

ūnus, **-a**, **-um**, card. num. adj., one, alone; **uno tempore**, at one and the same time; **omnes ad unum**, all to a man; **hoc unum**, only this (c. iv, 26); **justissimus unus**, above all others the most just (Verg. 426).

urbis, F., city.

urgeō, **-ēre**, **ursī**, no sup., v. tr., press hard.

ūrō, **-ere**, **ussī**, **ustum**, v. tr., burn.

usquam, adv., anywhere.

usque, adv., right on, ever.

ūsus, **-ūs**, M., use, experience, practice, advantage; **ratio atque usus belli**, theory and practice of war, *i.e*, the systematic practice of war; **magno usui sibi esse**, to be of great advantage to him (c. iv, 20); **usus belli**, skill in war (c. iv, 20); **ex usu**, of advantage (c. v, 6); **pervius usus**, a connecting passage (Verg. 453).

ut (or **uti**), conj., that, in order that (Final; H. L. 197, 2); that, so that (Consecutive; H. L. 203, 1); that (in Substantive clauses; H. L. 240, 2); that not (with verbs of fearing; H. L., 243, 2); when (H. L., 259, 4).

uter, **utra**, **utrum**, interrog. pro., which of two?

uterque, **utraque**, **utrumque**, adj. pro., each (of two), both: **ex utraque parte**, on both sides; **in utrumque paratus**, ready for either result (Verg. 61).

uterus, **-ī**, M., belly, womb.

utinam, adv., O that (H. L., 193, 3).

ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, v. intr. dep. (with abl., H. L., 136, 8), use, employ, enjoy; **alacritate uti**, to show dash (c. iv., 24).

utrimque, adv., from or on both sides.

utrīque, pl. of **uterque**.

utrum, conj., whether; **utrum... an**, whether...or; often not translated in direct questions.

uxor, **-ōris**, F., wife.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty.

vādō, -ere, no pf., no sup., v. intr., go, advance.

vadum, -ī, N., ford.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr., dep., wander; **ea fāma vagatur**; that report spreads (Verg. 19).

valens, -tis (pres. part. of **valeo** used as an) adj., powerful.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. intr., be powerful, strong; have power or influence; **longe plurimum valet**, is by far the most powerful (c. v, 3); **quam plurimum valere**, to be as powerful as possible (c. v, 4); avail (Verg. 492).

validus, -a, -um, adj., strong.

vallis, -is, F., valley.

vallum, -ī, N., rampart, breastwork of a camp.

vānus, -a, -um, adj., empty, vain.

varius, -a, -um, adj., different, changing.

vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., lay waste, devastate.

vastus, -a, -um, adj., vast.

vātēs, -is, M. or F., a soothsayer, prophet.

-ve, enclitic conjunction, or; giving a choice between two or more things.

vectīgal, -ālis, N., tax, toll, revenue.

vectōrius, -a, -um, adj., adapted for carrying; **navigium vectorium**, a transport ship.

vehiculum, -ī, N., a carriage.

vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, v. tr., bear, carry, convey.

vel, conj., or; **vel...vel**, either... or; with sup., even, indeed; **vel optimus**, the very best.

vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsum, v. tr., pluck.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., cover, veil.

vēlum, -ī, N., sail; **dare vela ventis**, to set sail.

velut, adv., just as; **velut sī**, just as if.

vendō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr., sell, offer for sale; pass., **vèneo** (which see).

venenum, -ī, N., poison.

vēneō, -īre, iī (īvī), -itum, v. pass. (see **vendo**), be sold.

veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr., adore, worship.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of or belonging to the Veneti*, a tribe on the west coast of France, north of the Loire, in the vicinity of the bay of Quiberon. Caesar subdued them 54 B.C.

venia, -ae, F., favor, forgiveness.

veniō, -venīre, vēnī, ventum, v. intr., come; **est ventum** (=**venerunt**), they came (c. iv, 28).

venter, -tris, M., belly; hunger (Verg. 356).

ventūra, -ōrum, neut. pl. fut. part. act., coming events.

ventus, ī, M., wind; **dare vela ventis**, to set sail.

vēr, vēris, N., spring; **primo vere**, at the beginning of spring; **extremo vere**, at the end of spring.

verbum, -ī, N., word; in pl., conversation.

vērē, adv., truly, in truth (comp., **verius**; sup., **verissime**).

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, v. tr., dep., fear, dread; **navibus veritus**, fearing for the safety of the ships (c. v, 9).

vergō, -ere, no perf., no sup., v. intr., incline, slope; **ad septentriones vergit**, it has a northerly slope (c. iv, 20).

vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, indeed.

versātus, perf. part. dep., **versor**, skilled in (Verg. 62).

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., turn often, change.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr., dwell in, be occupied with, engaged in.

vertex, -icis, M., top, head.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, v. tr., turn, change; **terga vertere**, to turn their backs, flee (c. iv, 35).

vertor, vertī, vertī, versum, v. semi-dep., turn, change (Verg. 250).

vērum, adv., see **vero**.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.

vescor, vescī, no perf. or sup., intr. dep. (with abl.), feed, live upon.

vesper, -eris (or **-erī**), M., evening; **vespere**, or **vesperi**, in the evening.

Vesta, -ae, F., *Vesta*, the Roman goddess of the hearth and home.

vester, -tra, -trum, adj. pro., your, yours.

vestibulum, -ī, N., porch, entrance (Verg. 469).

vestīgium, -ī, N., footstep, track,

vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr., clothe, dress; **pellibus vestiri**, to clothe oneself in skins (c. v, 14).

vestis, -is, F., dress.

veterānus, -a, -um, adj., old; as a noun, **veterānī, -ōrum**, pl. M., veteran troops (scil. **milites**).

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, v. tr., forbid.

vetus, -eris, adj., old, ancient; no comp.; sup., **veterrimus**.

vetustus, -a, -um, adj., ancient, old.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., harass, plunder, waste.

via, -ae, F., way, road, journey; **tridui via**, a journey of three days.

vibrans, -tis, adj., quivering.

vibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., shake.

vīcies, num. adv., twenty times.

vīcīnus, -ī, M., neighbor.

vicis (genitive), **vicim, vice**, F. (no nom. sing.), change; **vices vitavisse Danaum**, to have avoided the onsets of the Greeks (Verg. 433).

victor, -ōris, M., victor, conqueror; as an adj., victorious.

victōria, -ae, F., victory.

victus, -a, -um, perf. part. pass. of **vinco**, conquered.

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, v. tr., see; **videor, vidērī, vīsus sum**, intr. dep., seem, appear.

vigeō, vigēre, no perf., no sup., be vigorous, thrive, flourish.

vigil, -is, M., watchman, guard.

vigilia, -ae, F., watch, guard. The Romans had four night watches: **prima vigilia**, from 6 p.m. to 9 p.m.; **secunda vigilia**, from 9 p.m. to 12 p.m.; **tertia vigilia**, from 12 p.m. to 3 a.m.; **quarta vigilia**, from 3 a.m. to 6 a.m.; **secundā initā vigiliā**, at the beginning of the second watch (c. v, 23).

vīgintī, card. num. adj., twenty.

vīmen, -inis, N., twig, osier.

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, v. tr., bind.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, v. tr., conquer.

vinculum, -ī, N., chain; **in vincula conjicere**, throw into prison.

vīnum, -ī, N., wine.

violābilis, -e, adj., that may be profaned; **non violabile**, inviolable (Verg. 153, 189).

vir, virī, M., man, husband.

virga, -ae, F., twig.

virgineus, -a, -um, adj., of a maiden, virgin (Verg. 168).

virgō, -inis, F., maiden; **Priameia virgo**, virgin daughter of Priam =*Cassandra* (Verg. 403).

virtūs, -ūtis, F., manliness, virtue, courage, bravery (c. iv, 21).

vīs, vīs, F., strength, power, **vim facere**, to offer violence; **vi** or **per vim expugnare**, to take by storm; **vim sustinere**, to withstand an attack; **vim facere**, to offer resistance (c. v, 7); endurance (c. v, 8); plural, strength (Verg. 50).

vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsum, v. tr., go to see, visit.

vīsus, -ūs, M., sight.

vīta, -ae, F., life.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., avoid, shun.

vitrum, -ī, N., woad; a plant known to botanists as **Isatis tinctoria**, which produced a blue dye. Till the introduction of indigo in the 17th century it was largely cultivated.

vitta, -ae, F., fillet.

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., abuse, revile.

vīvō, vīvere, vixī, victum, v. intr., live; **lacte et carne vivunt**, they live on milk and flesh (c. v, 14).

vīvus, -a -um, adj., alive, living.

vix, adv., hardly, scarcely.

vōciferor, ārī, ātus sum, v. dep., cry aloud, (**vox, fero**).

vocō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, v. tr., call, summon.

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., fly, hasten.

volō, velle, voluī, no sup., irregular verb, intr., be willing, wish, desire.

volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr., flit about.

volucer, -cris, -cre, ad., swift.

volūmen, -inis, N., fold.

voluntās, ātis, F., good will; **in se voluntas**, his good will towards himself (Caesar), (c. v, 4).

voluptās, -ātis, F., pleasure; **animi voluptatisque causā**, for sentiment and pleasure (c. v, 12).

Volusēnus, -ī, M., *Volusenus;* Caius Volusenus Quadratus, a military tribune in Caesar's army.

vōtum, -ī, N., vow; or=**votum esse**, that it had been vowed (Verg. 17).

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, v. tr., vow.

volvō, -ere, **volvī**, **volūtum**, v. tr., roll.

vōs: see **tu**.

vox, **vōcis**, F., voice; **magnā voce**, in a loud voice (c. iv, 25); **voces ambiguae**, dark sayings (Verg. 98); **rumpit vocem**, he breaks silence (Verg. 129).

Vulcānus, -ī, M., *Vulcan*, the Fire-god of the Romans, hence, fire.

vulgō, (abl. of **vulgus** used as an) adv., generally, commonly.

vulgus, -ī, N. (rarely M.), common people, multitude.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., wound, hurt.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound; **paucis vulneribus acceptis**, with slight loss (c. v, 10).

vultus, -ūs, M., expression, countenance.

Z

Zephyrus, -ī, M., *Zephyrus, the west wind.*

Chapters in Caesar emphasizing
differences in structure of
Latin

IV 22, 23, 24, 26, 29. 30. 32
33.

V 2, 3. 6. 7, 8, 15, 16. 19, 22

Portions of Aeneid I — 505
worthy of special study

Introduction 1 — 13

Laocoon Episode 41 — 56

& 199 — 233

Character portrait of Sinon
especially in his speeches

77 — 145

apparition of Hector 267 — 297

Dramatic scene in the

last struggle.

318 – 335

346 – 360

375 – 386

438 – 468

469 – 485

(6). The similes in the last 200 lines

[illegible] — [illegible] [illegible] called the [illegible] — ([illegible] [illegible])

PA
2095
H45

Henderson, John
New first Latin reader

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY